

ARTISAN®
TECHNOLOGY GROUP

Your **definitive** source for quality pre-owned equipment.

Artisan Technology Group
(217) 352-9330 | sales@artisantg.com | artisantg.com

Full-service, independent repair center
with experienced engineers and technicians on staff.

We buy your excess, underutilized, and idle equipment
along with credit for buybacks and trade-ins.

Custom engineering
so your equipment works exactly as you specify.

- Critical and expedited services
- In stock / Ready-to-ship
- Leasing / Rentals / Demos
- ITAR-certified secure asset solutions

Expert team | Trust guarantee | 100% satisfaction

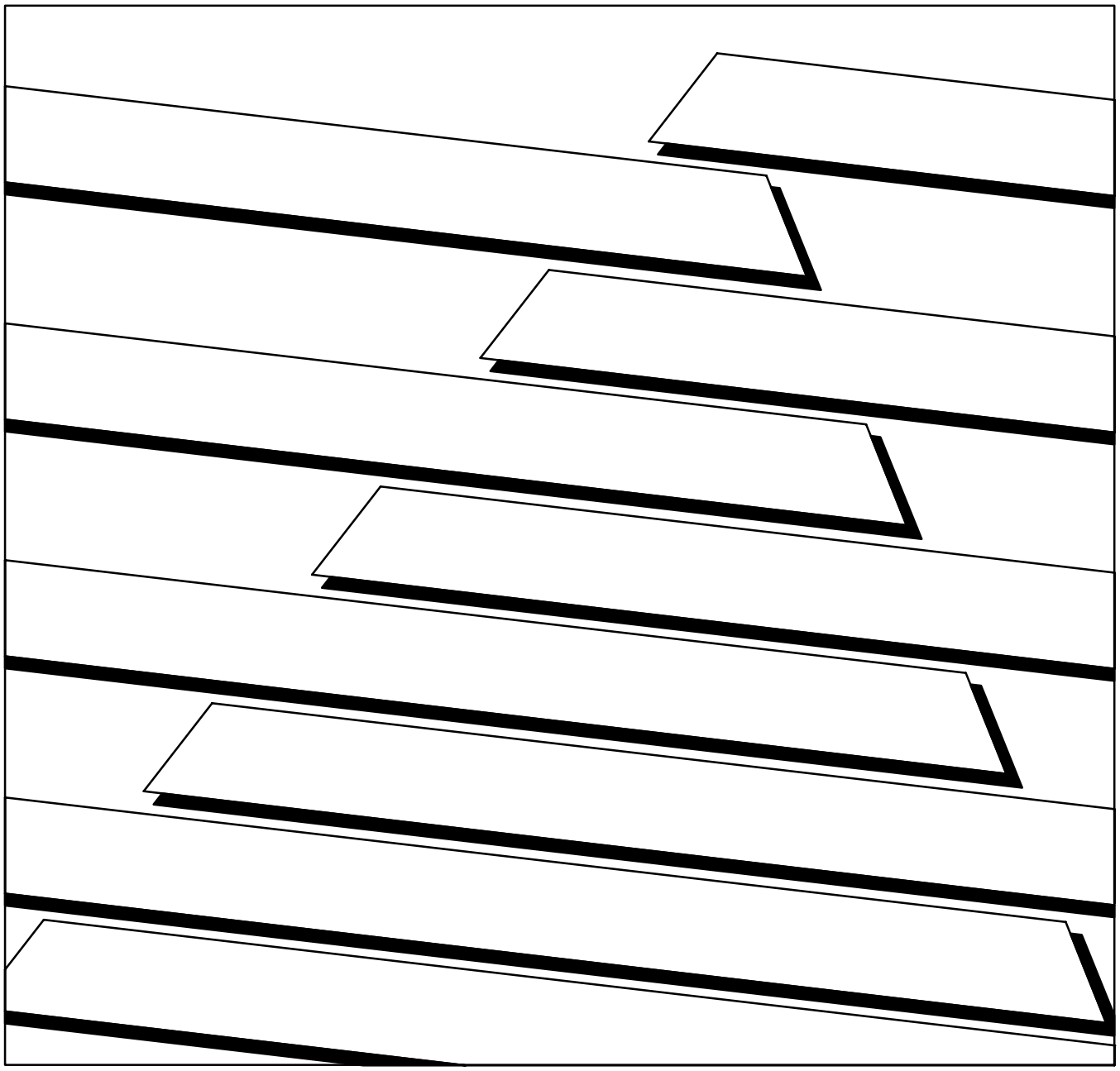
All trademarks, brand names, and brands appearing herein are the property of their respective owners.

Find the *Rockwell / Allen-Bradley 1772-LSP* at our website: *Click HERE*

ALLEN-BRADLEY

PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller

Programming and Operations Manual



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Important User Information

Because of the variety of uses for this equipment and because of the differences between this solid state equipment and electromechanical equipment, the user of and those responsible for applying this equipment must satisfy themselves as to the acceptability of each application and use of the equipment. In no event will Allen-Bradley Company, Inc. be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the use or application of this equipment.

The illustrations, charts, and layout examples shown in this manual are intended solely to illustrate the text of this manual. Because of the many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Allen-Bradley Company, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for actual use based upon the illustrative uses and applications.

No patent liability is assumed by Allen-Bradley Company, Inc. with respect to use of information, circuits, equipment or software described in this text.

Reproduction of the contents of this manual, in whole or in part, without written permission of the Allen-Bradley Company, Inc. is prohibited.

© 1988 Allen-Bradley Company, Inc.
PLC is a registered trademark of Allen-Bradley Company, Inc.



WARNING: Warnings tell readers where people may be hurt if procedures are not followed properly.



CAUTION: Cautions tell them where machinery may be damaged or economic loss can occur if procedures are not followed properly.

A Warning or Caution alerts you to:

- a possible trouble spot
- what causes the trouble to occur
- the result of an improper action
- how to avoid the situation

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table of Contents

Introduction 1-1

1.0 Introduction to This Manual 1-1
1.1 General 1-1
1.2 Capabilities 1-3
1.2.1 Complementary I/O 1-4
1.2.2 Data Highway Compatibility 1-4
1.2.3 Industrial Terminal Compatibility 1-4
1.3 Additional Publications 1-5
1.4 Terms Used in This Manual 1-6

Hardware Considerations 2-1

2.0 General 2-1
2.1 Mode Select Switch 2-1
2.2 Memory Write Protect 2-2
2.3 Run-Time Errors 2-3
2.4 Processor Diagnostic Indicators 2-4
2.5 Power-Up Recovery 2-5
2.6 Switch Group Assembly 2-5
2.6.1 Last State Switch 2-6
2.6.2 I/O Rack Number 2-6
2.7 Industrial Terminal 2-7
2.8 Local System Structure 2-7
2.9 Remote System Structure 2-8
2.10 Local/Remote System Structure 2-9
2.11 Hardware Addressing Modes 2-10
2.12 Auxiliary Power Supplies 2-10
2.12.1 1771-P2 Auxiliary Power Supply 2-10
2.12.2 1777-P2 Auxiliary Power Supply 2-11
2.12.3 1771-P3, -P4, and -P5 Slot Power Supplies 2-11
2.12.4 1771-P7 Power Supply 2-11
2.12.5 1771-PSC Power Supply Chassis 2-11

Data Table 3-1

3.0 General 3-1
3.1 Memory Structure 3-1
3.2 Memory Organization 3-2
3.2.1 Data Table 3-2
3.2.2 User Program 3-16
3.2.3 Message Storage Area 3-17
3.3 Hardware/Program Interface 3-17
3.3.1 Image Tables 3-17

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.3.2 Instruction Address 3-18
3.3.3 Fundamental Operation 3-21
3.4 Data Table Documentation Forms 3-23
3.4.1 Data Table Word Map (1024 Word) 3-23
3.4.2 Data Table Map (128 Word) 3-24
3.4.3 Data Table Word Assignments (64 Word) 3-25
3.4.4 Data Table Bit Assignments 3-26
3.4.5 Sequencer Table Bit Assignments 3-27
3.4.6 I/O Assignments 3-28
3.4.7 Timer/Counter Assignments 3-29
3.4.8 Data Storage Assignments 3-29

Introduction to Programming 4-1

4.0 General 4-1
4.1 Notational Conventions 4-1
4.2 Ladder Diagram Logic 4-2
4.3 Relay-Type Instructions 4-3
4.3.1 Examine Instructions 4-3
4.3.2 Output Instructions 4-5
4.3.3 Branch Instructions 4-9
4.3.4 Ending a Program 4-12
4.3.5 Programming Relay-Type Instructions 4-13
4.4 Operating Instructions 4-14
4.4.1 Addressing 4-15
4.4.2 Help Directories 4-15
4.4.3 Searching 4-16
4.4.4 Editing 4-19
4.4.5 On-Line Programming 4-23
4.4.6 Clearing Memory 4-30
4.5 Program Recommendations 4-32

Timer and Counter Instructions 5-1

5.0 General 5-1
5.1 Timer Instructions 5-2
5.1.1 Timer On-Delay Instruction 5-3
5.1.2 Timer Off-Delay Instruction 5-5
5.1.3 Retentive Timer Instruction 5-6
5.1.4 Retentive Timer Reset Instruction 5-8
5.1.5 Timer Accuracy for 10ms Timers 5-8
5.2 Counter Instructions 5-8
5.2.1 Up-Counter Instruction 5-9
5.2.2 Counter Reset Instruction 5-11
5.2.3 Down-Counter Instruction 5-12
5.2.4 Scan Counter Instruction 5-13
5.3 Cascading Timers or Counters 5-14

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5.4 Programming Timer and Counter Instructions 5-14
5.5 Scan Time and Instruction Execution Times 5-17
5.5.1 Scan Time 5-17
5.5.2 Program for Determining Scan Time 5-18
5.6 Instruction Execution Time 5-19
5.6.1 Relay Type, Timer and Counter, Data Manipulations, Arithmetic, Output Override and I/O Update, Jump, and Subroutine Instructions 5-19
5.6.2 Word-to-File, Sequencers, FIFO, Word and Bit Shifts, File Diagnostic, File Search, and Block Transfer Instructions 5-20
5.6.3 File-to-File Move and File Complement 5-22
5.6.4 Logic Instructions File-to-File AND, OR, XOR 5-23

Data Manipulation Instructions 6-1

6.0 General 6-1
6.1 Data Transfer Instructions 6-2
6.1.1 Get Instruction 6-2
6.1.2 Put Instruction 6-3
6.2 Data Comparison Instructions 6-4
6.2.1 Les and Equ Instructions 6-4
6.2.2 Get Byte and Limit Test Instructions 6-7
6.2.3 Get Byte–Put Instruction 6-8
6.3 Programming Data Manipulation Instructions 6-9
6.4 Arithmetic Instructions 6-11
6.4.1 Add Instruction 6-12
6.4.2 Subtract Instruction 6-13
6.4.3 Multiply Instruction 6-14
6.4.4 Divide Instruction 6-14
6.5 Programming Arithmetic Instructions 6-15
6.6 BCD to Binary Conversion 6-16
6.6.1 Programming a BCD to Binary Conversion Instruction 6-17
6.7 Binary-to-BCD Conversion 6-18
6.7.1 Programming a Binary-to- BCD Conversion Instruction 6-18

Output Override and I/O Update Instructions 7-1

7.0 General 7-1
7.1 Output Overrides 7-1
7.2 I/O Updates 7-3
7.2.1 Scan Sequence 7-3
7.2.2 Immediate Input Instruction 7-5
7.2.3 Immediate Output Instruction 7-6
7.3 Programming Immediate I/O Instructions 7-8
7.4 Remote Fault Zone Programming 7-9
7.4.1 Dependent Programming 7-12

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

7.4.2 Independent Programming 7-13
7.5 I/O Update Times 7-15
7.5.1 Local Systems 7-15
7.5.2 Remote Systems 7-15
7.6 Watchdog Timer 7-16

Peripheral Functions 8-1

8.0 General 8-1
8.1 Communication Rate Setting 8-1
8.2 Contact Histogram 8-2
8.3 Digital Cassette Recorder 8-4
8.3.1 Dumping Memory Content to Cassette Tape 8-4
8.3.2 Loading Memory from Cassette Tape 8-4
8.3.3 Verification 8-5
8.3.4 Program Verification 8-5
8.3.5 Displaying and Locating Errors 8-6
8.4 Data Cartridge Recorder 8-6
8.4.1 Dumping Memory Content onto Data Cartridge Tape 8-6
8.4.2 Loading Memory from a Data Cartridge Tape 8-7
8.4.3 Data Cartridge Verification 8-8
8.5 Ladder Diagram Dump 8-8
8.6 Total Memory Dump 8-8

Report Generation 9-1

9.0 General 9-1
9.1 Report Generation Commands 9-3
9.1.1 Message Control Word File – MS, 0 9-4
9.1.2 Message Store – MS 9-5
9.1.3 Message Print – MP 9-6
9.1.4 Message Report – MR 9-7
9.1.5 Message Delete – MD 9-7
9.1.6 Message Index – MI 9-7
9.1.7 Control Codes and Special Commands 9-7
9.2 Manually Initiated Report Generation 9-11
9.3 Automatic Report Generation 9-12
9.3.1 Messages 1-6 9-13
9.3.2 Additional Messages 9-13
9.3.3 Example Programming 9-14

Block Transfer 10-1

10.0 General 10-1
10.1 Basic Operation 10-1
10.2 Block Transfer Instructions 10-4
10.2.1 Data Address and Module Address 10-4

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.2.2 Block Length 10-5
10.2.3 File Address 10-5
10.2.4 Enable Bit and Done Bit 10-6
10.3 Instruction Notes for Block Transfer Read and Write Instructions 10-6
10.4 Causes of Run-Time Errors 10-6
10.5 Programming Block Transfer Read and Write Instructions . . . 10-6
10.6 Multiple Reads of Different Block Lengths from One Module . . 10-8
10.7 Defining the Block Transfer Data Address Area 10-11
10.8 Buffering Data 10-12
10.9 Bidirectional Block Transfer 10-14
10.9.1 Operation 10-14
10.9.2 Data Address and Module Address 10-17
10.9.3 File Address 10-17
10.9.4 Block Length 10-17
10.9.5 Programming Considerations 10-18

Jump Instructions and Subroutine Programming 11-1

11.0 General 11-1
11.1 Jump Instruction 11-1
11.1.1 Programming Jump/ Subroutine Instructions 11-3
11.1.2 Multiple Jumps to the Same Label 11-3
11.2 Label Instruction 11-6
11.3 Jump to Subroutine Instruction 11-7
11.3.1 Subroutine Area 11-10
11.3.2 Nested Subroutines 11-11
11.3.3 Recursive Subroutine (Looping) Calls 11-12
11.3.4 Subroutine Programming Considerations 11-12
11.4 Return Instruction 11-14

Data Transfer File Instructions 12-1

12.0 General 12-1
12.1 File Concepts 12-1
12.1.1 File Definition 12-1
12.1.2 File Planning 12-2
12.1.3 File Instructions 12-2
12.1.4 Programming File Instructions 12-11
12.1.5 File Instruction Run-Time Error 12-12
12.2 File-to-File Move 12-12
12.2.1 Programming File-to-File Move Instructions 12-14
12.3 File-to-Word Move 12-15
12.3.1 Programming File-to-Word Move Instructions 12-16
12.4 Word-to-File Move 12-18
12.4.1 Programming Word-to-File Move Instructions 12-19
12.5 Data Monitor Mode 12-21

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

12.5.1 Accessing the Data Monitor Mode 12-21
12.5.2 Data Monitor Display 12-24
12.5.3 Cursor Controls 12-25
12.5.4 Data Monitoring Procedures 12-26
12.5.5 Entering and Changing Data 12-27

Shift Register Instructions 13-1

13.0 General 13-1
13.1 Shift File Up 13-2
13.1.1 Programming Shift File Up Instruction 13-3
13.2 Shift File Down 13-5
13.2.1 Programming Shift File Down Instruction 13-5
13.3 FIFO Load and FIFO Unload 13-6
13.3.1 Programming FIFO Load and FIFO Unload Instruction 13-8

Bit Shifts 14-1

14.0 General 14-1
14.1 Bit Shift Left 14-1
14.1.1 Programming Bit Shift Left Instruction 14-3
14.2 Bit Shift Right 14-5
14.2.1 Programming Bit Shift Right Instruction 14-6
14.3 Examine Off Shift Bit 14-6
14.3.1 Programming Examine Off Shift Bit Instruction 14-6
14.4 Examine On Shift Bit 14-8
14.4.1 Programming Examine On Shift Bit Instruction 14-8
14.5 Set Shift Bit 14-9
14.5.1 Programming Set Shift Bit Instruction 14-9
14.6 Reset Shift Bit 14-10
14.6.1 Programming Reset Shift Bit Instruction 14-11

Sequencer Instructions 15-1

15.0 General 15-1
15.1 Sequencer Output Instruction 15-3
15.1.1 Sequencer Output Analogy 15-3
15.1.2 Operation of the Sequencer Output Instruction 15-4
15.1.3 Masking Output Data 15-5
15.1.4 Instruction Overview 15-6
15.1.5 Programming the Sequencer Output Instruction 15-6
15.2 Sequencer Input Instruction 15-10
15.2.1 Operation of the Sequencer Input Instruction 15-10
15.2.2 Masking Input Data 15-10
15.2.3 Instruction Overview 15-10
15.2.4 Programming the Sequencer Input Instruction 15-11
15.3 Sequencer Load Instruction 15-13

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.3.1 Operation of the Sequencer Load Instruction 15-13
15.3.2 Instruction Overview 15-14
15.3.3 Programming the Sequencer Load Instruction 15-14

File Logic Instructions 16-1

16.0 General 16-1
16.1 File-to-File Logic Instructions 16-1
16.1.1 File-to-File AND 16-2
16.1.2 File-to-File OR 16-4
16.1.3 File-to-File XOR 16-5
16.1.4 File Complement 16-6
16.2 Word-to-File Logic Instructions 16-8
16.2.1 Word-to-File AND 16-9
16.2.2 Word-to-File OR 16-11
16.2.3 Word-to-File XOR 16-12

File Search and File Diagnostic Instructions 17-1

17.0 General 17-1
17.1 File Search 17-1
17.2 File Diagnostics 17-4

Troubleshooting Aids 18-1

18.0 General 18-1
18.1 Bit Manipulation and Monitor 18-2
18.1.1 Bit Manipulation 18-2
18.1.2 Bit Monitor 18-3
18.2 Force On and Force Off Functions 18-3
18.3 Forced Address Display 18-4
18.4 Temporary End Instruction 18-5
18.5 ERR Message for an Illegal OP Code 18-5

Special Programming Techniques 19-1

19.0 General 19-1
19.1 One Shot 19-1
19.1.1 Leading Edge One-Shot 19-1
19.1.2 Trailing Edge One-Shot 19-2

Addressing A-1

A.0 Appendix Objectives A-1
A.1 Addressing Your Hardware A-1
A.2 Addressing Modes A-2
A.2.1 2-Slot Addressing A-3
A.2.2 1-Slot Addressing A-8

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

A.2.3 1/2-Slot Addressing A-11
A.3 System Configurations A-16

Number Systems B-1

B.0 General B-1
B.1 Decimal Numbering System B-1
B.2 Octal Numbering System B-2
B.3 Binary Numbering System B-3
B.3.1 Binary Coded Decimal B-4
B.3.2 Binary Coded Octal B-5
B.4 Hexadecimal Numbering System B-6

Programming .01-Second Timers C-1

C.0 Introduction C-1
C.1 Time Base Selection C-1
C.2 Timer Accuracy C-2
C.3 10-Msec Timers – Typical Applications C-4
C.4 Hardware/Processor Considerations C-5
C.5 10-Msec Timers – Programming Techniques C-5
C.5.1 Scan Time C-6
C.5.2 Program Execution C-6
C.5.3 Programming Compensation C-7
C.6 Program Scan-Time Computation C-9

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 1

Introduction

1.0 Introduction to This Manual

This manual presents the information you need to program and operate your Allen-Bradley PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller.

After reading this manual, you should be able to:

- establish system configurations consisting of:
  - scanners
  - interface modules
  - input modules
  - output modules
  - power supplies
- program:
  - timers
  - counters
  - extended arithmetic functions
  - relay-type functions
  - and data transfer, for a few examples.

This manual is your entry into understanding the PLC-2/30 programmable controller.

To find what the topics are in the individual chapters — **Use the Table of Contents.**

To get an overview of what that chapter presents — **Look in the "General" section of each chapter.**

To get a better understanding of slot addressing — **Use the Appendix.**

To find where a specific item is located in the text — **Use the Index.**

1.1 General

The PLC-2/30 programmable controller consists of:

- The 1772-LP3 processor
- An I/O structure (I/O chassis containing I/O modules)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

With a user-written program and appropriate I/O modules, the PLC-2/30 programmable controller can be used to control many types of industrial applications such as:

- Process control
- Material handling
- Palletizing
- Measurement and gauging
- Pollution control and monitoring

The 1772-LP3 processor has a read/write CMOS memory that stores user program instructions, numeric values and I/O device status. The user program is a set of instructions in a particular order that describes the operations to be performed and the operating conditions. It is entered into memory, rung by rung, in a ladder diagram and functional block display format from the keyboard of a 1770-T3 or 1784–T50 terminal. The ladder diagram symbols closely resemble the relay symbols used in hardwired relay control systems. The functional block displays are an easy method of programming and monitoring advanced instructions.

During program operation, the PLC-2/30 processor continuously monitors the status of input devices and, based on user program instructions, either energizes or de–energizes output devices. Because the memory is programmable, the user program can be readily changed if required by the application.

The PLC-2/30 processor's functions include:

- Relay-type functions (Examine On, Examine Off, Output Energize, Output Latch, Output Unlatch and Branching)
- Complete forced I/O
- Data transfer
- Data comparison
- Three-digit, four-function arithmetic (+, –, ×, :–) :–:–
- Timing functions: On-Delay and Off-Delay, Retentive and Nonretentive with time bases of 1.0, 0.1 and 0.01 seconds (timing range 0.02 to 999 seconds).
- Bidirectional counting (up or down) with a range of 0 to 999 counts.
- Self-monitoring/diagnostic capabilities
- Expandable data table
- Memory capacity of 16,256 words
- 896 I/O device capacity is available in local or remote configurations.
- 896 inputs and 896 outputs when used with specific configurations.
- Memory write protect
- Program control instructions
  - Jump
  - Subroutines

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- Functional Block Instructions
  - Shift Register instructions
  - File-to-File and Word-to-File Logic instructions
  - File-to-File, Word-to-File and File-to-Word transfer instructions
- Binary to BCD and BCD to Binary conversions
- On-line programming
- Data Highway and Data Highway II compatible
- Sequencers
- Contact histogram
- Report generation

1.2 Capabilities

The data table for the 1772-LP3 processor can be expanded to 8,064 words with an 8K memory or to 8,192 words with a 16K memory. However, an 8,064 word data table is impractical with an 8K memory since there would be nothing available for the user program.

You can expand the data table from the default size of 128 words (1 rack) to 256 words (2 racks, word address 377_8) in 2-word increments. From word address 400_8 on, the data table must be expanded in 128-word sections. The I/O image tables, therefore, can be configured in size from 1 to 7 I/O racks. Each rack added, above one, increments by 10_8 the first available address for timers and counters. Table 1.A lists the first available timer/counter address when different numbers of racks are selected.

In addition, the processor can control up to 896 inputs and 896 outputs for a total of 1,792 I/O points in a remote system of seven 128 I/O racks (Table 1.A).

Table 1.A
PLC-2/30 Processor Capabilities (Cat. No. 1772-LP3)

#I/O Racks	Max. I/O Points[1] (decimal)	First Available T/C Address (octal)
1	128	020
2	256	030
3	384	040
4	512	050
5	640	060
6	768	070
7	896	200

[1] Without complementary I/O. With complementary I/O, maximum I/O points is double the tabulated number up to 1,792.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

1.2.1 Complementary I/O

When using a 1772-SD2 remote I/O scanner/distribution panel, the I/O device capacity can be increased from 896 to 1,792 I/O. The increase is accomplished through configuration of the racks and programming. For more information, refer to the Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution Panel Product Data (publication 1772-2.18).

1.2.2 Data Highway Compatibility

With the proper interface module, the PLC-2/30 processor can be connected to the Allen-Bradley Data Highway or other industry standard buses. Table 1.B lists several "from-to" possibilities and the Allen-Bradley module used to accomplish that function.

Table 1.B
Interface Modules

Interface Locations –		
From:	**To:**	**Interface Module**
PLC-2/30	Data Highway	1771-KA2
PLC-2/30	Data Highway II	1779-KP2 1779-KP2R
PLC-2/30	RS-232	1771-KG 1771-KGM 1771-KH
Data Highway	Non A-B[1]	1771-KE 1771-KF 1770-KF2
Data Highway	Fisher Provox	1771-KX1
Data Highway II	Non A-B[1]	1779-KFL 1779-KFM

[1] Non Allen-Bradley implies using Data Highway or Data Highway II to communicate with industry standard devices. See the individual product brochures for specific connectivity information.

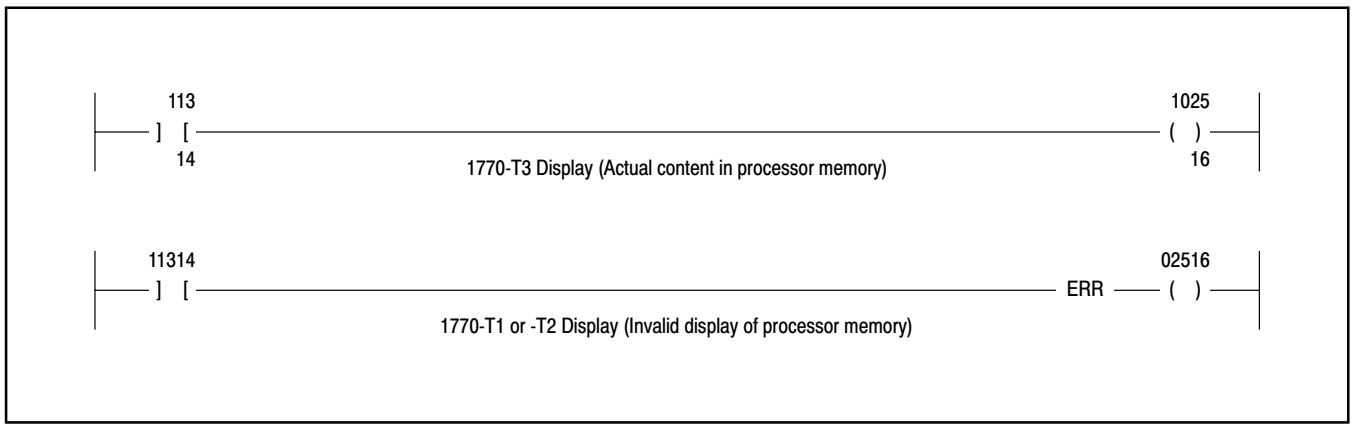
1.2.3 Industrial Terminal Compatibility

Industrial Terminals (cat. no. 1770-T1 or -T2) can be used on a limited basis to program a PLC-2/30 programmable controller. Be aware that only features supported by these terminals may be entered. The 1770-T3 and 1784-T50 terminals provide full PLC-2/30 capability. Refer to the Industrial Terminal System User's Manual (publication 1770-6.5.3 or 1784-6.5.1) for details.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

WARNING: Do not use a 1770-T1 or 1770-T2 industrial terminal to edit or change a program or data table values in PLC-2/30 memory that were generated using a 1770-T3 industrial terminal. Block instructions and instructions with word addresses 4008 or greater will not be displayed properly (Figure 1.1). The ERR message may appear randomly in the user program at instructions and addresses that the -T1 and -T2 industrial terminals are not designed to handle. Changes to the user program and/or data table with a -T1 or -T2 terminal could result in unpredictable machine motion with possible damage to equipment and/or injury to personnel.

Figure 1.1
ERR Message for Invalid Display of Processor Memory



1.3 Additional Publications

Additional information regarding PLC-2/30 programmable controller components is available in:

- PLC-2/20, PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller Assembly and Installation Manual (publication 1772-6.6.2) contains necessary information on installation, assembly, maintenance and troubleshooting.
- Appendix C, Programming 0.01-Second Timers with the Mini-PLC-2 Programmable Controller.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

1.4
Terms Used in This Manual

We use the following terms to describe the various parts of your PLC-2/30 system.

Chassis — a hardware assembly used to house PC devices such as I/O modules, adapter modules, processor modules, power supplies and some processors (PLC-2/02, -2/16 and -2/17, for example).

I/O Group — The logical assignment of a specific input image table word and its companion output image table word to a rack location. For example: address 123 indicates an input module in rack 2, I/O group 3. This applies to all addressing modes.

Rack — an I/O addressing unit that corresponds to 8 input image table words and 8 output image table words (128 input and 128 output terminals).

Rack Fault — 1) The condition that occurs because of a loss of communication between the processor and remote I/O chassis; 2) any diagnostic indicator that lights up to signal a rack fault.

Slot — 1) The physical location where each module is placed within a chassis; 2) a part of the Rack-Group-Slot addressing information for intelligent I/O modules.

Slot Addressing — a method of assigning one input and one output image table word to two slots, one slot, or one-half of a slot. (Appendix A is an in-depth discussion on this topic.)

Slot Pair — two adjacent slots that can share image table words. Slot pairs are: slots 0 and 1, 2 and 3, 4 and 5, and 6 and 7. (See Appendix A)

These and other terms are defined in Programmable Controller Terms (publication no. PCGI–7.2).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 2

Hardware Considerations

2.0 General

This chapter describes only those hardware items required when programming or operating the PLC-2/30 programmable controller. For more complete hardware information, refer to the PLC-2/20, PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller Assembly and Installation Manual (publication no. 1772-6.6.2).

2.1 Mode Select Switch

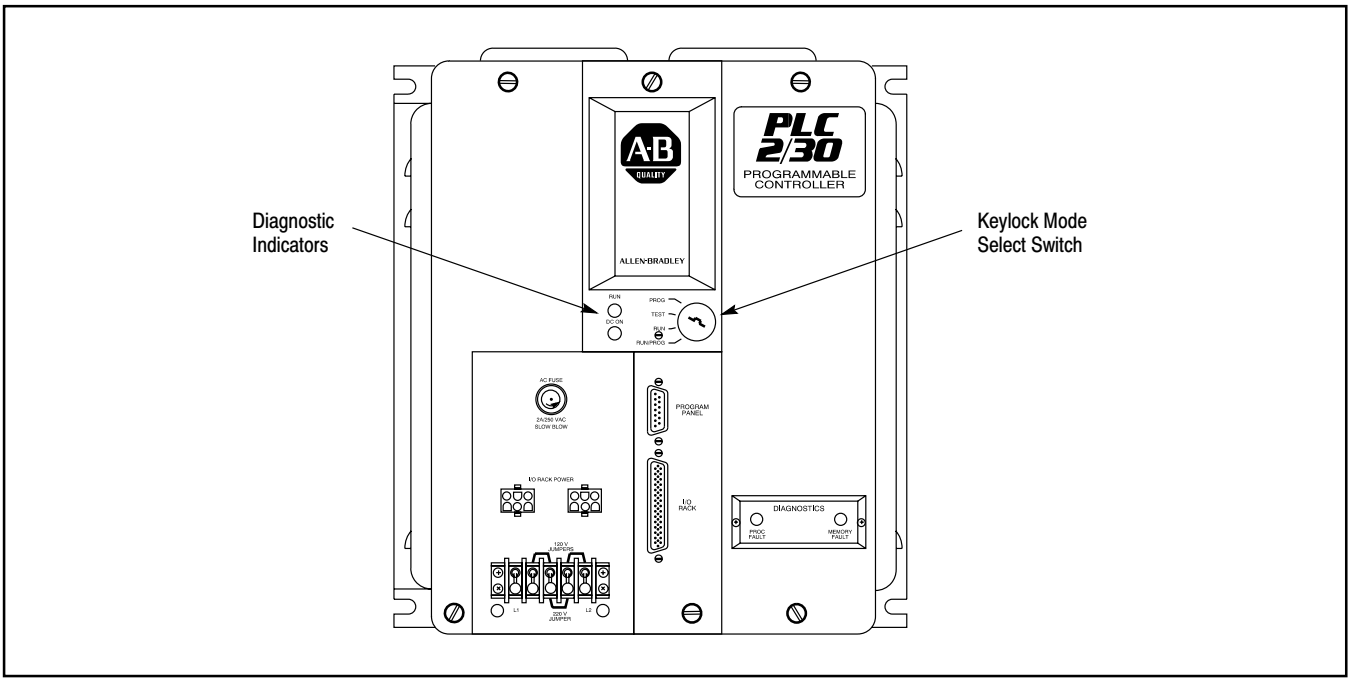
A four-position mode select switch (Figure 2.1) is located on the front of the processor. You can select one of four positions with this switch:

- PROG — This switch position places the processor in the program mode. It is used when instructions are entered into memory. They can be entered from an industrial terminal, a 1770-SA digital cassette recorder or a 1770-SB data cartridge recorder. All outputs are disabled when the switch is in this position.
- TEST — This switch position places the processor in the test mode. The user program is tested under simulated operating conditions without actually energizing any output devices. All outputs are disabled in this switch position.
- RUN — This switch position places the processor in the run mode. The user program will be executed and outputs are controlled by the program. Changes to the user program or data table are not permitted in this switch position.
- RUN/PROG — This switch position places the processor in the run/program mode. The processor functions as it does in the RUN position. In this position, you can cause the processor to go into the program or test mode without having to turn the switch to that position. On-line changes to the program and/or data table are allowed in this position with 1770-T3 or 1784-T50 industrial terminals.

The key can be removed from the processor in any of the four switch positions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 2.1
PLC-2/30 Processor

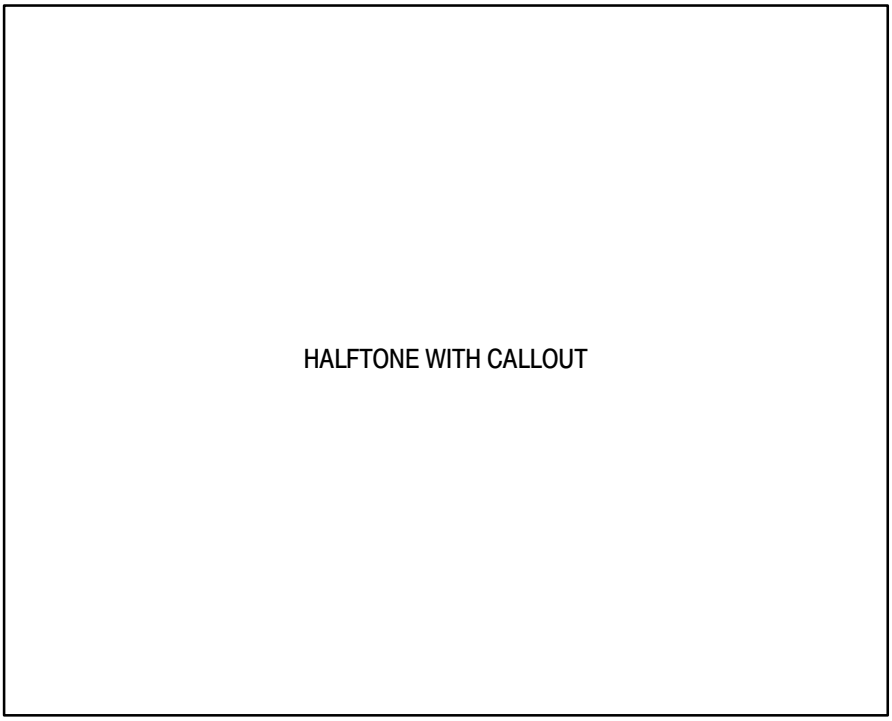


2.2
Memory Write Protect

When the memory write protect jumper (Figure 2.2) is removed from a 1772-LH processor interface module, data table values can be changed between word addresses 010_8 and 377_8. These values can be changed only when the processor is in the program mode or in the run/program mode using on-line data change.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 2.2
Memory Write Protect Jumper



The remaining words in memory from 400_8 to the end of memory, including data table and user program, are protected and cannot be altered by programming. The memory write protect feature guards against unintentional changes to processor memory.

2.3 Run-Time Errors

The processor and an industrial terminal can diagnose certain errors occurring during the execution of the user program which result from improper programming techniques. For example, it is possible to program a series of instructions which require the processor to perform an operation which it cannot do or perform an operation which is defined as illegal (such as jump to a label that is not located closer to the end of program; i.e., a jump backwards). These errors become apparent only while the program is being executed, so are termed run-time errors. If a run-time error occurs, the processor halts program execution and the PROCESSOR FAULT indicator illuminates.

The first step in diagnosing run-time errors is to connect the industrial terminal. It will display the message run-time error in the initial mode select display. If the industrial terminal is already connected at the time that a run-time error occurs, the ladder diagram is replaced by the mode select display containing the error message. Run-time errors can be detected by the industrial terminal when the processor is in either of two

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

modes, program or remote program. (If the keyswitch is in RUN/PROGRAM position, the industrial terminal automatically puts the processor into remote program mode. If the keyswitch is in the RUN position, or when it is connected to the processor through the 1771-KA2 communications adapter module, you must manually change the keyswitch to the PROGRAM position).



WARNING: Forces are immediately removed if a Run-time error occurs.

After returning the industrial terminal display to ladder diagram mode by pressing [1][1] in mode selection operation, the industrial terminal displays the instruction that caused the error with a message describing the run-time error.

After you have corrected the run-time error by editing the user program, the processor can be restarted by switching to the run or run/program mode.

2.4 Processor Diagnostic Indicators

Five indicators are located on the front of the processor (Figure 2.1). You should become familiar with these indicators.

- MEMORY FAULT — Illuminates when an error in the parity of data retrieved from memory is detected. Changing the mode select switch to the PROG position or cycling line power may clear this fault condition. Reloading the program may also clear the fault.
- BATTERY LOW — When the batteries for memory back-up are low, this red indicator flashes on and off. Alkaline batteries will continue to back up memory for about one week after the BATTERY LOW indicator begins to flash. Lithium batteries have a longer life, but are essentially dead when the indicator flashes. Regular replacement of the batteries is recommended: for alkaline, every 6 to 12 months; for lithium, every 2 years. (See the Assembly and Installation manual for replacement details, publication no. 1772-6.6.2.)

  The low battery bit, bit 027/00, will cycle on and off when a low battery voltage condition is detected and the mode select switch is not in the PROG position. Programming techniques can be used to examine this bit and to control some type of alerting device when a low battery condition exists.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- PROCESSOR FAULT — Illuminates when the logic circuits controlling the processor scan fail or if processor error or run-time errors occur which cause the processor to halt operation.

  If the processor fault is a run-time error, the industrial terminal will display RUN TIME ERROR when the keyswitch is in the PROGRAM or RUN/PROGRAM position.

- RUN — Illuminates when the processor is in the run or run/program mode. It also indicates that outputs are being controlled by user program.

- DC ON — Illuminates when the 5.1V DC line to the logic circuitry in the processor memory and I/O modules is satisfactory.

2.5 Power-Up Recovery

When local I/O racks are powered by 1771-P3, -P4, -P5 or -P7 power supplies, the processor control module (Cat. No. 1772-LG) may experience a problem with these racks.

Upon recovery from a power lock (momentary or otherwise), processors in the RUN or TEST mode attempt to read the local racks before the power supplies are ready. This leads to a processor fault. The fault may be identified by the conditions of the indicators:

	Indicators	
1772-LG Module	**RUN**	**PROC FAULT**
Series A, Rev. L	OFF	ON
Series A, Rev. K or earlier	OFF	OFF

If the problem occurs, put the keyswitch in the program load position, then return to RUN, or cycle power to the processor.

2.6 Switch Group Assembly

A switch group assembly is located on the I/O chassis backplane. It is used to control output behavior when a fault occurs, to identify the I/O rack number for local systems and to identify the addressing mode for remote systems.

The switch and its functions, when used in local racks, are shown in Figure 2.3. In this setup, the PLC-2/30 is communicating with the I/O chassis through a 1771-AL Local I/O Adapter module.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

When using remote I/O (the 1772-SD2 scanner and the 1771-ASB remote I/O Adapter), these switches will be set according to the adapter module's requirements.

2.6.1 Last State Switch

The last state switch (switch no. 1) on the 1771 I/O chassis must be properly set. ON indicates that the outputs are left in their last state when a fault is detected. Machine operation can continue after fault detection. OFF indicates that the outputs are de-energized when a fault is detected. In addition, in remote systems, the switches on the 1772-SD2 Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution panel and the 1771-ASB Remote I/O Adapter must be properly set. Refer to publications 1772-2.18 and 1771-6.5.37, respectively, for information on their switch settings.



WARNING: Switch No. 1 of the 1771 I/O chassis should be set to OFF for most applications. This allows the processor to turn controlled devices off when a fault is detected. If this switch is set to ON, machine operation can continue after fault detection. Damage to equipment and/or injury to personnel could result.

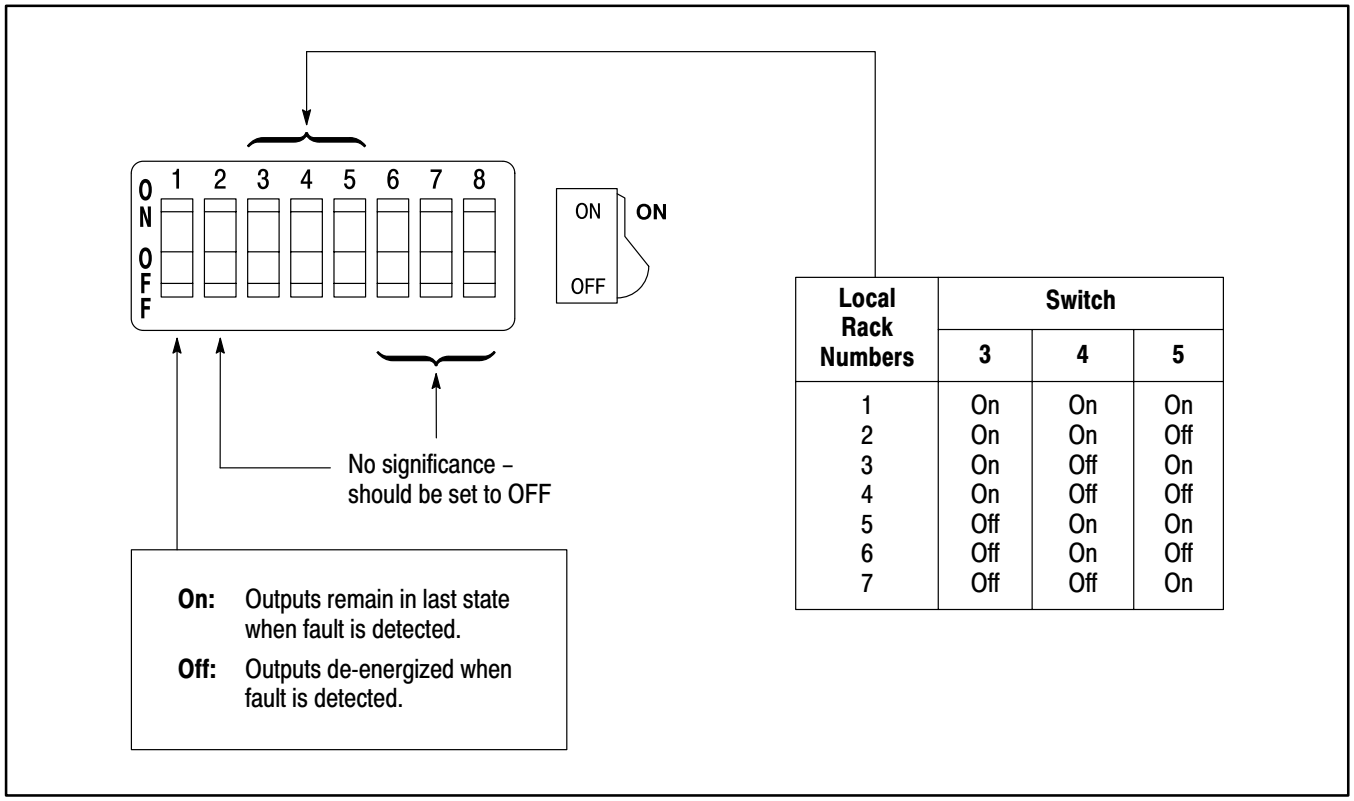
2.6.2 I/O Rack Number

The setting of switches 3, 4 and 5 determines the I/O data table and program address of the modules in this chassis — this is the local rack number.

Improper setting of these switches will result in misdirected communications between processor and the desired I/O rack.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 2.3
1771 I/O Chassis Backplane Switch Settings for Local I/O Systems



Local Rack Numbers	Switch		
	3	4	5
1	On	On	On
2	On	On	Off
3	On	Off	On
4	On	Off	Off
5	Off	On	On
6	Off	On	Off
7	Off	Off	On

2.7 Industrial Terminal

The 1770-T3 and 1784-T50 industrial terminals are the primary programming terminals for the PLC-2/30 programmable controller. They are used to load, edit, monitor and troubleshoot the user's program in the PLC-2/30 memory.

For detailed information about the 1770-T3 Industrial Terminal, refer to the Industrial Terminal System User's Manual, publication no. 1770-6.5.3.

For detailed information about the 1784-T50 Industrial Terminal, refer to the Industrial Terminal T50 User's Manual, publication no. 1784-6.5.1.

2.8 Local System Structure

A local system has the processor and each I/O chassis within 3-6 cable feet of each other. Up to 7 local I/O racks may be assigned.

For proper transmission of data between the PLC-2/30 processor and local bulletin 1771 I/O modules, the I/O chassis must contain a local I/O Adapter Module (Cat. No. 1771-AL). The local adapter module must be installed in each I/O chassis used with the processor. Diagnostic indicators

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

on the front panel of the local adapter module aid in troubleshooting. These indicators are:

ACTIVE — Illuminates when proper communication is established between the processor and the I/O chassis. It also indicates that DC power is properly supplied to the I/O chassis. It is normally on.

RACK FAULT — Illuminates when I/O data is not in the proper format. It is normally off.

Possible causes of a rack fault are:

- Data parity error on address or control lines
- Missing terminator plug
- Disconnected/broken communications cable
- No power at the processor.

An I/O Interconnect cable is required to connect between the PLC-2/30 and local I/O rack adapter modules. It is available in two sizes:

3 ft. I/O Interconnect cable (.92m)	1777–CA
6 ft. I/O Interconnect cable (1.85m)	1777-CB

I/O Cable Terminator Plug 1777-CP
(used to “close” the I/O interconnect cable link at the last I/O adapter module)

2.9 Remote System Structure

A remote system allows the processor and the I/O chassis to be separated by up to 10,000 cable feet (approx. 3,048 meters). Up to 7 remote I/O racks may be assigned.

Proper transmission of data between the PLC-2/30 processor and remote bulletin 1771 I/O modules requires a 1772-SD2 Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution Panel plus a 1771-ASB Remote Adapter in each I/O chassis. Connection between the PLC-2/30 processor and the 1772-SD2 is through a 1772-CS interconnect cable. Connection from the 1772-SD2 to a 1771-ASB Remote I/O Adapter and from one remote I/O adapter to another is through 1770-CD twinaxial interconnect cable.

The front of the 1772-SD2 distribution panel has eight bicolor red/green LED indicators. If the I/O chassis is used and serial communication is valid, the RACK STATUS LED will be green. If the I/O chassis is not used, the LED is off. For an I/O rack fault condition, the corresponding RACK STATUS LED will be red. The rack 0 indicator will also go to red if there is a dependent I/O fault.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Three diagnostic indicators are located on the front of the 1771-ASB adapter. These indicators are:

ACTIVE — Illuminates when proper communications have been established between the 1772-SD2 distribution panel and the 1771-ASB adapter, DC power is properly supplied to the I/O chassis and 1771-ASB adapter is actively controlling the I/O. The ACTIVE indicator is normally on.

ADAPTER FAULT — Illuminates when the module is not operating properly. It tells you that a fault has been detected and that the I/O chassis has responded in the manner selected by the last state switch. When this indicator is on, the other indicators are no longer valid. the ADAPTER FAULT indicator is normally off.

I/O RACK FAULT — Illuminates when a fault has been detected at the 1771-ASB adapter, the I/O chassis, or the logic side of the I/O modules. The I/O RACK FAULT is normally off.

NOTE: For a full listing of the possible combinations of these indicators (on, off or blinking), see the 1771-ASB User's manual (publication no. 1771-6.5.37).

2.10 Local/Remote System Structure

A local/remote system has both nearby (3-6 cable-ft) and remote (up to 10,000 cable-ft) I/O chassis. Up to 2 local and 5 remote racks may be assigned.

The PLC-2/30 processor system can also be configured with a combination of local and remote I/O chassis. Each local chassis must have a 1771-AL Local I/O Adapter module. And as previously stated, communication with the remote chassis (one or more) requires a 1772-SD2 Remote Distribution panel and one 1771-ASB Remote I/O Adapter in each chassis.

The 1772-SD2 distribution panel may be connected directly to the processor interface module or up to two local I/O chassis may precede it. Connection to the preceding local I/O chassis is made with a 1772-CS interconnect cable.

NOTE: The 1772-SD2 must not be more than 10 cable feet from the PLC-2/30 processor module.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

CAUTION: For proper system data communications, a local/remote system structure with 2 local racks, you must use a 1777-CA cable (3 ft./.92m) between the processor and the two local racks. You must also use the 1772-CS cable (3 ft./.92m) from the second local rack to the distribution panel.

2.11 Hardware Addressing Modes

The term "addressing mode" refers to the method of hardware addressing within individual I/O chassis. Appendix A, Hardware Addressing, provides a complete presentation on 2-slot, 1-slot and 1/2-slot addressing. In general:

- Local I/O chassis that are communicating through a 1771-AL Local I/O Adapter module can only be 2-slot addressed.
- Remote I/O that are communicating through a 1771-ASB Series A Remote I/O Adapter module can be addressed in either 2-slot or 1-slot modes.
- Remote I/O that are communicating through a 1771-ASB Series B Remote I/O Adapter module can be addressed in either 2-slot, 1-slot or 1/2-slot modes.

  NOTE: Processor-to-I/O chassis communication requires the setting of I/O chassis backplane switches. See the 1771-ASB Remote I/O Adapter manual (publication no. 1771-6.5.37) for this information.

2.12 Auxiliary Power Supplies

The Series C programmable controller's power supply provides 4 amperes of current to power local I/O chassis or the 1772-SD2 distribution panel. When the total output current required to power these modules exceeds the supply, or a core memory is issued, an auxiliary power supply must be used. The total output current must not exceed the rating of the auxiliary power supply.

2.12.1 1771-P2 Auxiliary Power Supply

The 1771-P2 power supply provides 6.5 amperes to power one bulletin 1771 I/O chassis with a maximum 128 I/O. This includes the adapter and the I/O modules in the chassis.

This power supply may be operated from either a 120 or a 220/240V AC source.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2.12.2 1777-P2 Auxiliary Power Supply

The 1777-P2 Series C power supply provides 9 amperes to power one or two bulletin 1771-I/O chassis. This includes the I/O adapter and the I/O modules in each chassis. The power supply must be used to power the 1772-SD2 distribution panel when the PLC-2/30 processor contains a core memory module.

This power supply may be operated from either a 120 or a 220/240V AC source.

2.12.3 1771-P3, -P4, and -P5 Slot Power Supplies

These power supply modules provide 5V DC for an I/O chassis. The -P3 and the -P4 operate on 120V AC; the -P5 operates on 240V DC. The -P3 supplies up to 3 amperes to an I/O chassis; the -P4 and -P5 supply up to 8 amperes to an I/O chassis.

You may place one of these modules in any slot of a Series B 1771 Universal I/O chassis except the adapter/processor slot. Follow the recommendation of the Power Supply Considerations section of publication no. 1771-2.111 when locating these modules in a 1771 Series B I/O chassis.

Full specifications are in publication no. 1771-2.111.

2.12.4 1771-P7 Power Supply

The 1771-P7 power supply provides 16 amperes to power one bulletin 1771 I/O chassis. This includes the adapter and the I/O modules in the chassis.

This power supply may be operated from either a 120 or a 220/240V AC source.

NOTE: The 1771-P7 power supply may not be used in conjunction with a slot power supply.

2.12.5 1771-PSC Power Supply Chassis

The 1771-PSC provides 4 slots for mounting modular power supplies to provide up to 16 amperes to a 1771 Series B Universal I/O chassis. It can also be used to mount communication modules that need only +5V DC and a processor enable signal.

The power supply chassis may be mounted separately (when used with communications modules) or mounted directly to 1771-A1B, A2B or A4B I/O chassis (when supplying additional backplane current and/or when supporting communications modules).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 3

Data Table

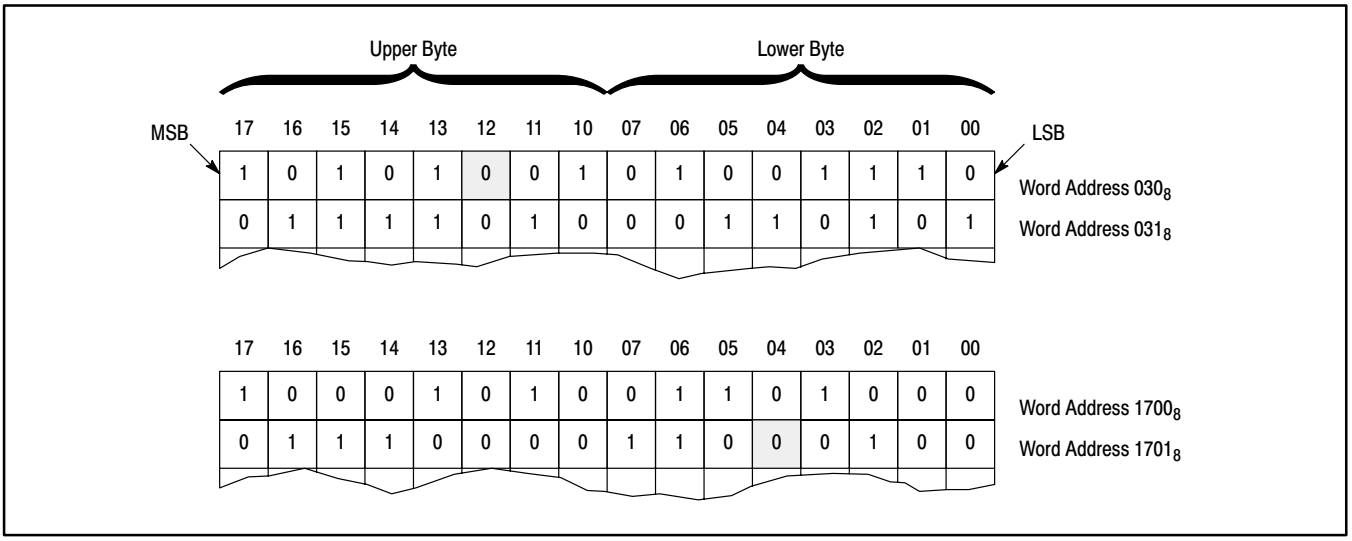
3.0 General

This chapter introduces concepts and terminology necessary for a general understanding of programmable controller memory. It explains the memory organization of the PLC-2/30 programmable controller.

3.1 Memory Structure

The memory of the processor can be thought of as a large arrangement of storage points, each called a BInary digiT, or bit (Figure 3.1). A bit is the smallest unit of information a memory is capable of retaining. Information stored in each bit is represented as a 1 or 0. When a bit is on, it is represented by a logic 1. When a bit is off, it is represented by a logic 0.

Figure 3.1
Memory Word Structure



Each bit in a word is identified by a two-digit number using the octal numbering system. Memory bits are numbered 00 through 07 and 10 through 17, with the least significant bit (LSB = 00_8) at the right and the most significant bit (MSB = 17_8) at the left.

A group of 8 bits forms a single byte. A byte is defined as the smallest complete unit of information that can be transmitted to or from the processor at a given time.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

A group of 16 bits makes up a word. This word can be thought of as being made up of two 8-bit bytes; a lower byte and an upper byte.

Because of its function in memory, one PLC-2/30 word may also be thought of as a memory location: when a word is being used, an actual physical location in memory is being accessed.

A specific bit in memory can be identified by combining the word address and bit number to form the bit address, such as 030/12 or 1701/04. The bit address is shown by writing the word address above the instruction and the bit number below it.

3.2 Memory Organization

The processor can have a memory capacity of up to 16,256 words. These memory words are organized by their word address and are divided into three major areas (Figure 3.2):

- Data table
- User program
  - Main Program
  - Subroutine Area
- Message Storage Area

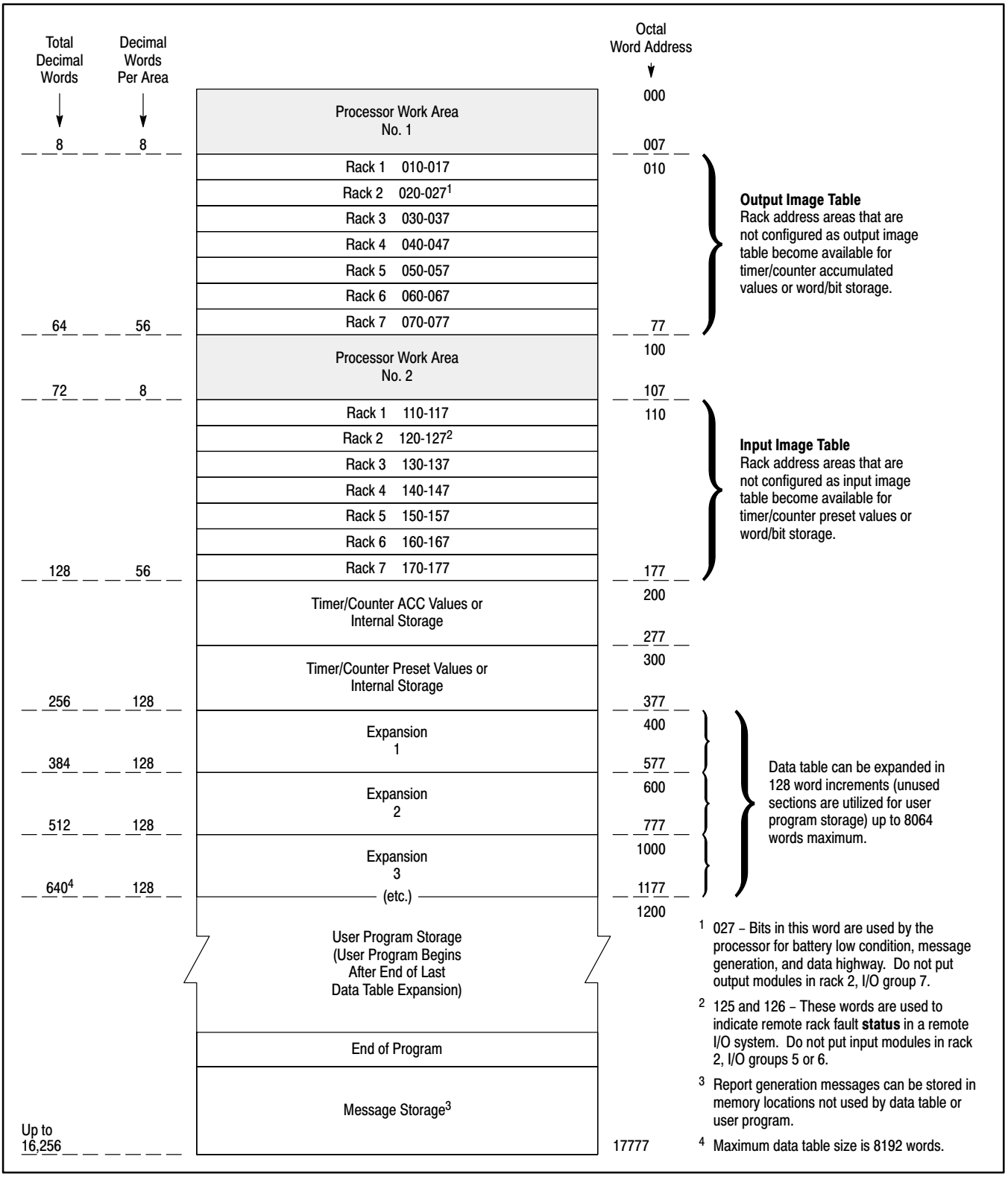
All input/output status and user program instructions are stored in one of these parts (Figure 3.2).

3.2.1 Data Table

Data table words, and/or the 16 bits in each word, are controlled and utilized directly by the processor. The processor uses the status of input devices and the control logic established in the user program to determine the status of output devices. Transfer of input data from input devices and transfer of output data to output devices occurs during the I/O scan. If the output instruction's status changed in the program, the actual output device's on/off status is updated during the I/O scan to reflect this change.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.2
PLC-2/30 Memory Organization (Expanded Data Table)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The first 128 words of the memory are set aside for data table storage. This number includes 32 words for I/O image tables (i.e., 2 full racks), 16 words for processor work areas and 80 words for timers/counters. If timers/counters are not required, you can reduce the data table to 48 words. Expansion is in increments of two words until a table of 256 is reached, and then in increments of 128 words. The data table can be adjusted to accommodate the full I/O capacity of the PLC-2/30 processor.

NOTE: The data table expansion capability should be utilized practically. The user should allow sufficient room for both data table and user program.

When the data table is set to 256 words, up to 112 timer/counter instructions can be programmed or 224 storage words are available. Users can also tail or data table input/output capacity in increments of 128 I/O up to 896 I/O.

The function of the data table may be explained in relation to inputs and outputs. Discrete input and output modules cannot store information. Discrete input and output modules cannot store information. They contain interface circuits only. Input/output status information (on/off) is actually stored in memory areas called I/O image tables. An image is defined as an exact duplicate array of information, that is, the states stored in a different medium.

Data Table Areas

The data table of the PLC-2/30 programmable controller can be divided into six distinct areas, assuming default data table size has not been changed (Figure 3.3). These areas are:

- Processor work area 1
- Output image table
- Timer/counter accumulated values or bit/word storage
- Processor work area 2
- Input image table
- Timer/counter preset values or bit/word storage

The data table area has a default size of 128 words and is configurable from 48 up to 8,064 words (with 8K word memory) or 8,192 words (with the 16K word memory). This area stores the information needed in the execution of the user program, such as input and output device status, 3-digit numeric values, and the status of internal storage points.

Processor Work Areas 1 and 2

There are two processor work areas: processor work area no. 1 (addresses 000_8 to 007_8) and processor work area no. 2 (addresses 100_8 to 107_8).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

These memory locations cannot be accessed by the user. Their word addresses are not available for addressing of any kind. The processor uses both areas for internal control functions.

Output Image Table

The primary function of the output image table is to control the status of outputs wired to the output modules. If the output image table bit is on, its corresponding output is on. If the bit is cleared to off, its corresponding output is off. These bits are controlled by instructions in the user program.

The processor controls the status of bits in the output image table as it generates output commands. Actual hardware outputs change state only if corresponding output image table bits change state or if they are forced.

NOTE: PLC-2/30 output terminals can be forced on or off through the industrial terminal. The output image table bits, corresponding to output terminals which are forced, do not change state.

The output image table ordinarily begins with word 010_8 and ordinarily ends with word 027_8. However, word 027 is reserved and output or block transfer modules must not be placed in rack 2, I/O group 7.

The output image table therefore contains 16 word addresses, or 256 bit addresses. Using the industrial terminal, the output image table can be reduced to 8 word addresses (128 bit addresses), or increased from 16 word addresses to 56 (896 bit addresses). By changing memory configuration to 896 I/O (seven 1771-A4B I/O chassis with 2-slot addressing), the 896 bit addresses represent the maximum number of discrete outputs the processor can control.

Each bit in the output image table may be associated with a hardware terminal address, although this is not always the case, since a corresponding output module may not actually be placed in this I/O rack slot. If it is, however, the terminal address is the same as the bit address.

A secondary function of the output image table is to provide a storage area for bits or words. Words and/or bits in the output image table not actually used to store the on/off status of devices can be used for data storage.

NOTE: Although only 11 bits of word 027_8 are actually used as processor control bits, the remaining bits must not be used since inadvertent alteration of these bits could occur. The processor sets bit address $027/00_8$ ON and OFF to indicate a low battery condition. This bit can be examined by instructions in the user program. (See Section 2.4)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

CAUTION: Word 027 is reserved for processor use. Do not put block transfer or output modules in rack 2, I/O group 7.

Timer/Counter Accumulated Values, Bit/Word Storage

This area of memory is used to store accumulated values of timer/counter instructions. The area may also be used as storage for words and/or bits.

Word addresses 030_8 to 077_8 bound this area when memory is configured for 256 I/O (maximum) and 40 Timer/Counter Instructions (Figure 3.3).

NOTE: Each timer or counter used actually requires two words of data table memory: one from the accumulated value area (030_8 to 077_8) and the other from the preset value area (130_8 to 177_8).

Input Image Table

The input image table duplicates the status of the inputs wired to input modules. If an input is on, its corresponding input image table bit is set to on. If an input is off, its corresponding bit in memory is cleared to off. These bits are monitored by instructions in the user program.

Input image table bits are updated each scan cycle to correspond to the information supplied by input modules.

The input image table is bounded by word addresses 110_8 to 127_8 (Figure 3.3). This area contains 16 word addresses, or 256 bit addresses. With the industrial terminal, the input image table can be reduced to 8 word addresses (128 bit addresses), or increased to 56 word addresses (896 bit addresses). By changing memory configuration to 896 I/O (seven 1771-A4B I/O chassis), the 896 bit addresses represent the maximum number of discrete inputs the processor can monitor.

In a local PLC-2/30 controller, the total bits used, which represent actual hardware inputs and outputs together, cannot exceed 896 I/O. This number represents the maximum I/O capability of the PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller and is possible only when the system is programmed with the 1770-T3 or 1784-T50 industrial terminal.

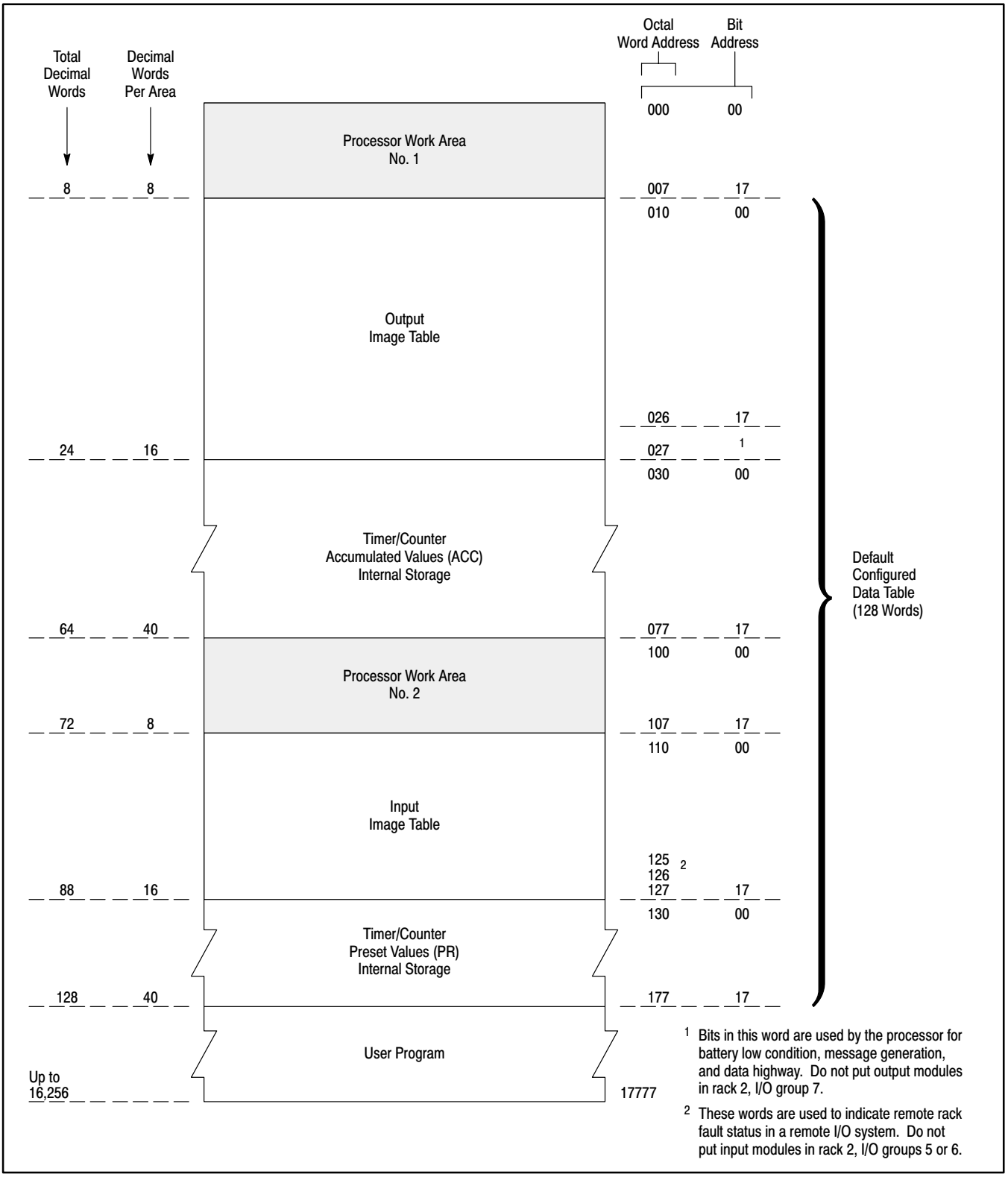
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com



CAUTION: If a remote I/O configuration is being used, words 1258 and 1268 may be used to store remote I/O fault bits. If this is the case, input modules must not be placed in these slots (rack 2, I/O groups 5 and 6): unexpected machine operation may result.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.3
PLC-2/30 Memory Organization (Default Configuration)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

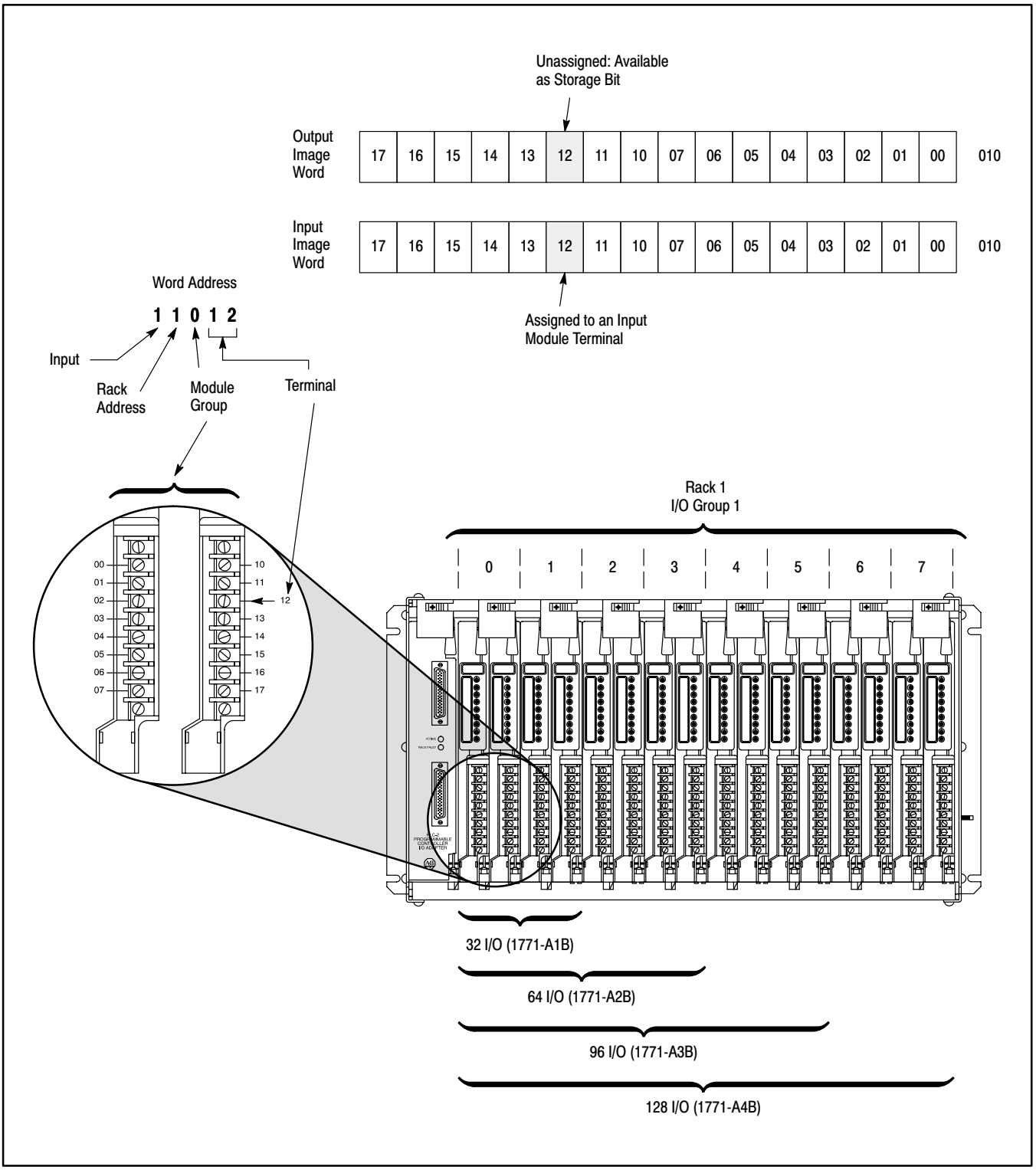
Each bit in the input image table may have a corresponding real hardware terminal on the I/O rack associated with it, although this may not always be the case, since a corresponding input module may not actually be placed in an I/O rack slot. If it does, the terminal address is the same as the bit address. The correspondence between the two is illustrated in Figure 3.4.



CAUTION: Bit and/or word storage is not possible in the input image table. Input bits which do not have an actual input module in the I/O rack corresponding to address are cleared to zero during each I/O scan.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.4
Relation of Word Address to Hardware



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Timer/Counter Preset Values, Bit/Word Storage

This area of memory is used to store preset values of timer/counter instructions. The area may also be used as storage for words and/or bits.

Word addresses 130_8 to 177_8 bound this area when memory is configured for 256 I/O (maximum) and 40 Timer/Counter Instructions (Figure 3.3).

NOTE: Each timer or counter used actually requires two words of data table memory: one from the accumulated value area (030_8 to 077_8) and the other from the preset value area (130_8 to 177_8).

Developing the Data Table

The data table configurations shown in Figure 3.2 should be used as a guide when developing the data table. Determining the number of words needed and assigning addresses is a procedure that requires care and attention to detail. The data table should be roughed out in advance but formally developed as you write your program. Data table documentation forms, described in Section 3.4 and presented at the end of this section, or their equivalent, should be used to keep track of each assigned data table word and bit address.

Displaying the Data Table

To see the present configuration of the data table, press [SEARCH] [5] [4]. This action displays a diagram of the areas of memory including the data table, user program, message area and the unused memory. The number of words in each area is indicated in decimal.

To terminate this display, Press [CANCEL COMMAND] (Table 3.A).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 3.A
Data Table Configuration

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Data Table Configuration	Program	[SEARCH] [5][0] [Numbers]	If the number of 128-word sections is 1 or 2, enter this number, the number of I/O racks, and the number of timers/counters. If the number of 128-word sections is 3 or greater, enter only this number and the number of I/O racks. The industrial terminal will calculate and display the data table size in decimal.
	Program	[SEARCH] [5][0] [RECORD][1]	Prints first 20 lines of data table configuration.
		[CANCEL COMMAND]	To terminate.
Processor Memory Layout	Any	[SEARCH] [5][4]	Displays the number of words in the data table area, user program area, message area, and unused memory.
	Any	[SEARCH] [5][4] [RECORD][1]	Prints first 20 lines of memory layout display.
		[CANCEL COMMAND]	

[1] Requires Series B/Revision F (or later) keyboard.

Data Table Area Configuration

The data table is factory-configured for 128 words (Figure 3.2). The data table size can be decreased to 48 words or expanded to 8,064 words (with 8K memory) or 8,192 words (with 16K memory). Expanding the data table provides additional timers/counters and space for files.

NOTE: In expanded areas, care must be taken to prevent files from writing over timer/counter preset values or your program. We recommend that you program all timers/counters in the first expanded areas and that you program files after them in a separate expanded area.

Configuring The Data Table

You must configure the final data table size in processor memory **before** entering your program. This is done by entering the number of 128-word data table sections and, if necessary, the number of equivalent timers and counters.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

After you have determined the layout of the data table, press [SEARCH] [5] [0]. The following display appears:

NUMBER OF 128-WORD DATA TABLE SECTIONS
NUMBER OF I/O RACKS
NUMBER OF TIMERS/COUNTERS (IF APPLICABLE)
DATA TABLE SIZE

The number of 128-word data table sections, the number of I/O racks (1-7), and the number of timers/counters (if applicable) to be entered is prompted by a reverse-video cursor. The factory configuration for the data table is one 128-word section, 2 I/O racks and 40 timers/counters.

The address of the last word in your data table determines the number of 128-word data table sections you will enter.

- After planning and writing your program and logging all addresses on data table assignment sheets, **if the last address is at or less than 377_8** (256 words), the number of equivalent timers and counters must be calculated. (Equivalent timers and counters includes internal storage words, such as bit/word storage, files, and sequencer tables.) The calculation is made using the following formula:

  ET=T + C + IS/2

  where:
  ET = number of equivalent timers and counters
  T = number of timers
  C = number of counters
  IS = number of internal storage words

  When you have one 128-word data table block, you can specify as many as 40 timers/counters. Should you need more than 40 timers/counters, the processor will automatically increase the data table size by two words for each timer or counter you add. The data table can be reduced in 2-word decrements to a minimum of 48 words if 1 rack and 8 timers/counters are selected.

Or:

- **If the last data table word is at an address greater than 377_8,** count the total number of 128-word data table sections used (the first 128-word section includes the I/O image tables). Count partially used sections as complete sections.

When you enter 3 or more 128-word data table sections, the number of timers and counters is included in the number of data table sections entered. Therefore, the number of timers and counters need not be entered and the industrial terminal will display N/A.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

After the number of I/O racks is selected, the industrial terminal will compute and enter the data table size.

Anytime you reduce the size of the data table, the processor searches for instructions in those areas. If an instruction exists in an area to be deleted, the change will not be allowed and the following message will be displayed: “INSTRUCTION EXISTS IN DELETED AREA.” To display the rung that is preventing the change, press [SEARCH]. At that time, the decision can be made whether to keep or delete the instruction.

Anytime you increase the size of the data table, the user program is automatically moved into higher word addresses. However, once the memory is full, expansion is not permitted and the message “MEMORY FULL” is displayed. Press [CANCEL COMMAND] to terminate the data table configuration display (Table 3.A).

Changing Data Table Areas

You may reduce data table size from the standard or default value of 128 words to 48 words when 8 timers/counters and one I/O rack are being used. This assumes 8 words are reserved in both the input and the output image table. Additional space is then made available for user program instructions. Reductions can be made in decrements as small as two words (one timer/counter). If the memory locations are occupied, the attempted reduction fails.

You can increase data table size from 128 to 256 words, also in increments of two words (one timer/counter). This provides up to 104 timers/counters with 16 words reserved for each input/output image table. Above 256, data table size is increased in sections of 128 words. You therefore gain the use of an additional 128 words (64 timer/counter instruction addresses or 128 words for bit/word or file storage, or a combination of both) for each expansion.

The processor determines whether sufficient unused memory remains for the corresponding shifting of user program instructions from the area to be addressed by the additional address area. If sufficient memory exists, the required number of words are than reserved.

Input/Output Image Table Sizes

You may optionally alter the number of words reserved for input/output image tables. Memory can be changed from 128 to 896 I/O, in increments of 128 I/O (i.e., 1 rack).

By reducing memory areas required for inputs/outputs from 256 to 128 (from 2 racks to 1 rack), data table size remains unchanged, but an

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

additional 7 timer/counter instructions become available. The previous output image table addresses 020_8-026_8 are now reserved for timer/counter accumulated values; previous input image table addresses 120_8-126_8, for timer/counter preset values.

When I/O requirements are increased from the standard value of 256 to 384 (or from 2 racks to 3 racks), data table size does not change. Instead, timer/counter areas (in the default memory configuration) are each reduced by 8 words. Previous timer/counter accumulated value addresses 030_8-037_8 are now reserved for output image table; previous timer/counter preset value addresses 1308-1378, for input image table.

When I/O image table size is increased from 384 to 512 (i.e., increase from 3 to 4 racks), timer/counter areas are reduced by another 8 words. Previous timer/counter accumulated value addresses 040_8-047_8 are reserved for output image table. Previous timer/counter preset value addresses 1408-1478 are reserved for the input image table. This same progression continues, as follows:

- when you increase the I/O to 640 (5 racks), accumulated address limits become 060_8 to 077_8 and the preset address limits become 160_8 to 177_8.
- when you increase the I/O to 768 (6 racks), accumulated address limits are 070_8 to 077_8 and preset address limits are 170_8 to 177_8
- and with the maximum I/O increase to 896 (racks), accumulated address limits and preset address limits are completely gone from the default data table.

Data table expansion becomes necessary if 7 racks are selected and timers or counters are desired. The first address available for accumulated storage would be 200_8 and the first preset address would be 300_8.

NOTE: Block transfer counter addresses must start immediately following the I/O address. Therefore, if the I/O image table size is changed, the block transfer instructions must be reprogrammed.

Memory Write Protect

In the processor, the inhibit feature is active when the user removes a jumper from the 1772-LH interface module. This prohibits alteration of the user program in any processor mode. The alteration of data table words 4008 and above is also prohibited except through the user program. Only data table values between word addresses 010_8 and 377_8 can be changed either in run/prog or prog modes.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.2.2 User Program

You program is a group of ladder diagram instructions used to control an application. It is initially entered into memory using an industrial terminal.

Main Program

The main program follows the data table in memory and stores all the user program instructions that make up the ladder diagram program. Most instructions are stored in one memory word. Some advanced instructions require up to 8 memory words. Unless specified elsewhere, instructions require one word of user memory when the address is 377_8 or below and two words of user memory when the address is 400_8 or above.

Assuming that the data table size has not been changed from factory-configured values, the user program begins after word address 177_8.

In certain applications, this area of memory can further be divided into data highway instructions, main ladder diagram program and subroutine area.

Some of the simple program instructions, such as Examine On, use one word of memory. Others, such as file instructions, are more complex and can use two or more words of user program memory. As the user program is entered from the industrial terminal, the number of words is indicated at the right of the END statement (including data table words). The words remaining in memory can be determined by subtracting that number from the total memory available.

Subroutine Area

The Subroutine area contains instructions of special or often repeated sections of program. Its upper boundary serves as the END of program statement for the main program.

The Jump-to-Subroutine (JSR) instruction is an output instruction that enables you to jump to a defined ladder diagram subroutine when desired. You use subroutines to optimize program scantimes.

By pressing the SBR key on the -T3 industrial terminal, you define the beginning of the Subroutine area. This may not be removed once inserted except by clearing memory. The Subroutine area is not scanned unless a JSR has been energized.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.2.3 Message Storage Area

The message storage area begins after the END of user program statement and it stores the alphanumeric characters of the messages.

The memory is capable of storing user-programmed messages for hardcopy printout by compatible RS-232C data terminals. As many as 70 messages of varying length can be stored (198 messages can be stored when using the 1770-RG Report Generation module).

Message storage immediately follows the END (of program) statement, and is limited only by the number of unused words remaining in memory. Each word remaining after the END statement is capable of storing 2 ASCII message characters. (Characters are defined as keyboard entries made on the data terminal, such as A, 1, M, ., 8, space, etc.)

Messages are stored in numerical order. Messages 1 through 6 are controlled by word 0278 and have the highest priority. The next 8 messages are controlled by the first user-designated message control word, the next 8 in the second control word, etc. Eight consecutive words can be reserved as message control words. (When using the 1770-RG module, 24 consecutive words can be reserved.)



WARNING: Bit addresses 02710_8 thru 02717_8 and all the bits in the upper byte of the message control words may be used for automatic report generation functions. Since the user program examines these bits to determine report generation status and may also set them to initiate various report generation operations, these bits should not be used for other functions. These words should also be reserved.

3.3 Hardware/Program Interface

It is important to understand how machine data, sensed by the input modules, is used by the processor to turn output devices on or off. The hardware-program interface occurs in the input/output image tables.

3.3.1 Image Tables

The primary purpose of the input image table is to duplicate the status (on or off) of the input devices wired to input module terminals. If an input device is on (closed), its corresponding input image table bit is on (1). If an input is off (open), its corresponding input image table bit is off (0). Input image table bits are monitored by user program instructions but are controlled by the input devices.

The primary purpose of the output image table is to control the status (on or off) of the output devices wired to output module terminals. If an output image table bit is on (1), its corresponding output device is on (energized).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

If a bit is off (0), its corresponding output device is off (de-energized). Output image table bits are controlled by user program instructions.

3.3.2 Instruction Address

Instruction addresses in the input/output (I/O) image tables take the form of Figure 3.5. These addresses have a dual role. Each 5-digit address corresponds (1) to an input or output table word (address) and (2) to a hardware location.

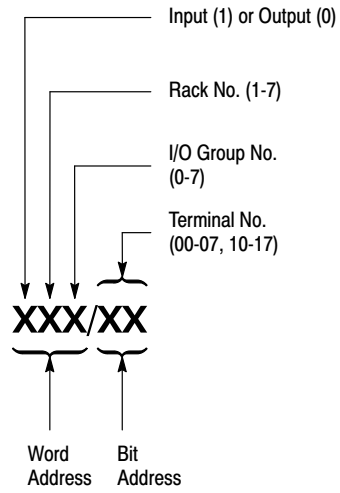
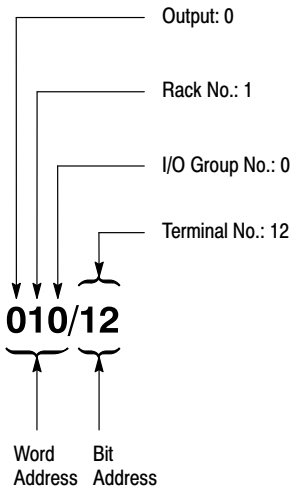
Figure 3.5 shows how the 5-digit address corresponds to an input or output table word. The first 3 digits define the function and logical address of a single, 16-bit input or output image table word. The remaining two digits represent a specific bit in that I/O table word.

Figure 3.6 shows how the 5-digit address corresponds to an input or output module terminal. Using the same 010/12 address, the first 3 digits again define the logical function and address of a specific I/O group. The remaining two digits represent a specific input or output terminal in that I/O group.

NOTE: See Appendix A, Hardware Addressing, for a complete presentation on the relationship between specified hardware terminals and their I/O image table addresses.

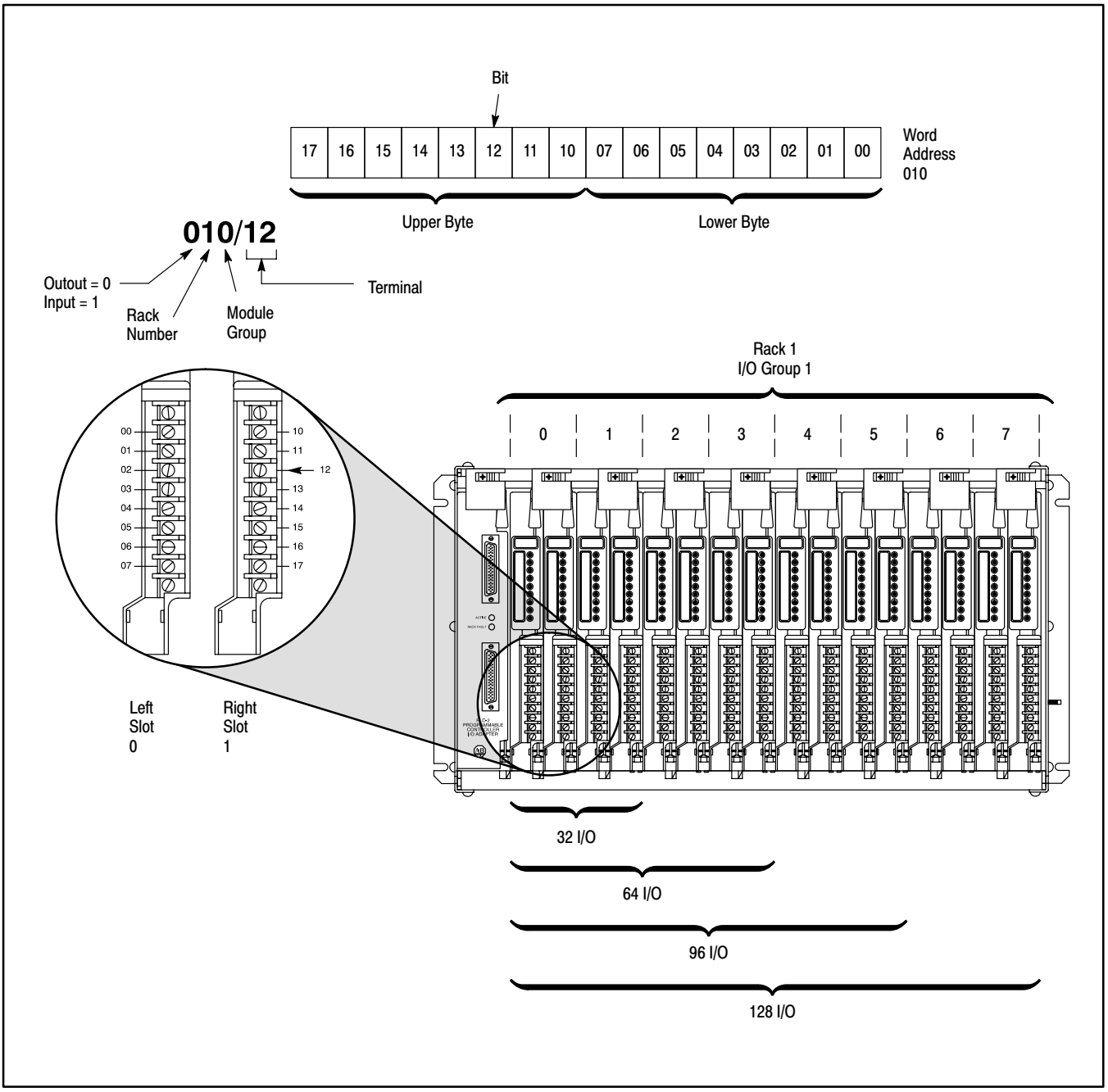
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.5
Instruction Address Terminology

Concept	Example
Hardware Terminology	Hardware Terminology
	
Data Table Terminology	Instruction Address

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.6
Bit Address to Hardware Relationship (2-slot Addressing)



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

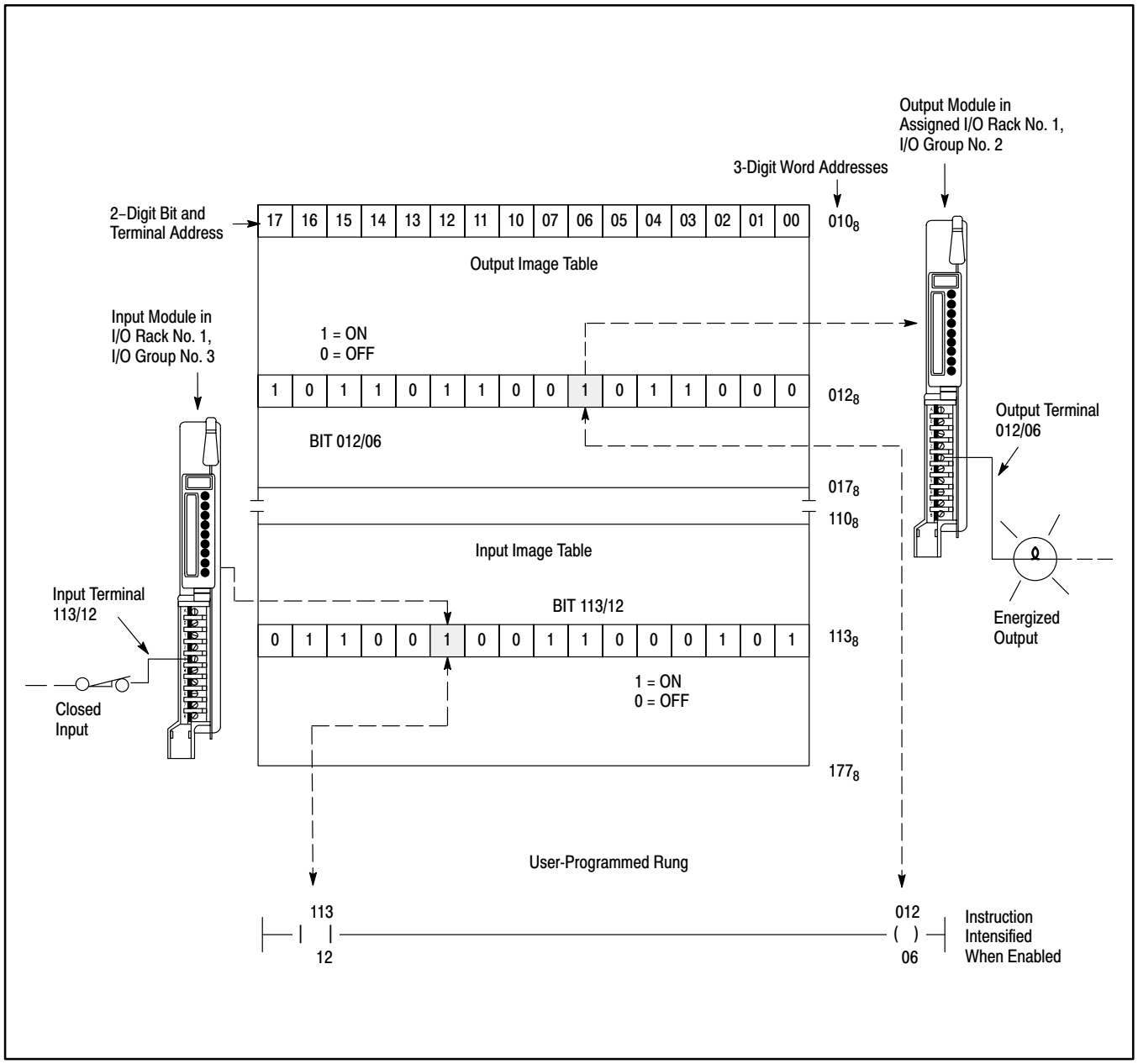
3.3.3 Fundamental Operation

The hardware-program interface is illustrated in Figure 3.7 by showing the operational relationship between the input and output devices, the input/output image table and the user program.

When an input device connected to terminal 113/12 is closed, the input module circuitry senses a voltage. The On condition is reflected in the input image table bit 113/12. During the program scan, the processor examines bit 113/12 for an On (1) condition. If the bit is On (1), the Examine On instruction is logically true. A true condition is displayed as an intensified instruction. A path of logic continuity is established and causes the rung to be true. The processor then sets output image table bit 012/06 to On (1). The processor turns on terminal 012/06 during the next I/O scan and the output device wired to this terminal becomes energized. When the rung condition is true, the output instruction is intensified.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.7
Relationship of Word Address to Hardware



When the input device wired to terminal 113/12 opens, the input module senses no voltage. The Off condition is reflected in the input image table bit 113/12. During the program scan, the processor examines bit 113/12 for an On (1) condition. Since the bit is off (0), logic continuity is not established, the rung is false and the output instruction is not intensified. The processor then sets output image table bit 012/06 to off (0). In the next I/O scan, it turns off terminal 012/06 and the output device wired to this terminal is turned off.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.4 Data Table Documentation Forms

As you program your application, you should carefully record the data table addresses of the program elements. The importance of this documentation cannot be overemphasized. You will find it invaluable for avoiding improper use of data table areas and as an aid in troubleshooting and making program changes.

The data table documentation forms presented at the end of this chapter can be reproduced or revised as needed. They include two general types:

- Data Table Word Map (1024 word) and Data Table Map (128 word)
- Data Table Word Assignments (64 word), Data Table Bit Assignments, and Sequencer Table Bit Assignments

An example showing how the forms are used accompanies the descriptions.

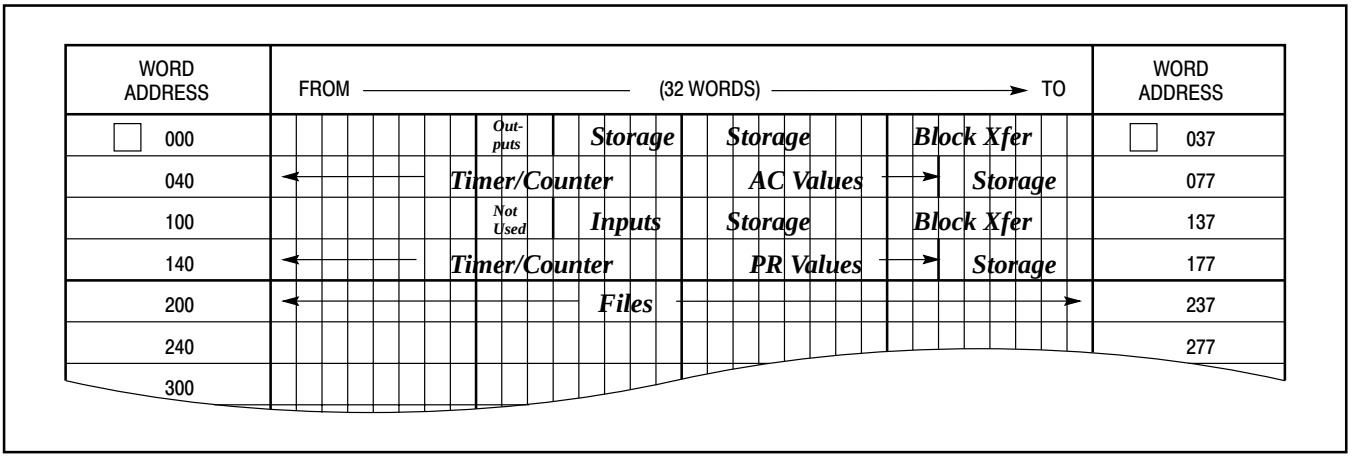
3.4.1 Data Table Word Map (1024 Word)

This form can be used to map the addresses of group data table words and to concisely describe the function of each group. The groups can include I/O Image Tables, Block Transfer, Timer/Counter, File and Sequencer Instructions, Files and Sequencer tables.

The form has prenumbered rows representing addresses from 000_8-777_8. Each row has 32 spaces where each space represents one word address. Any group of related word addresses can be designated on the map by labeling or color coding the spaces representing their addresses. For example, Figure 3.8 shows a completed portion of the data table word map. The Timer/Counter Accumulated values are labeled in the spaces defined by word address 040_8 through 071_8. Other data table areas are similarly labeled.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.8
Example of Data Table Word Map



3.4.2 Data Table Map (128 Word)

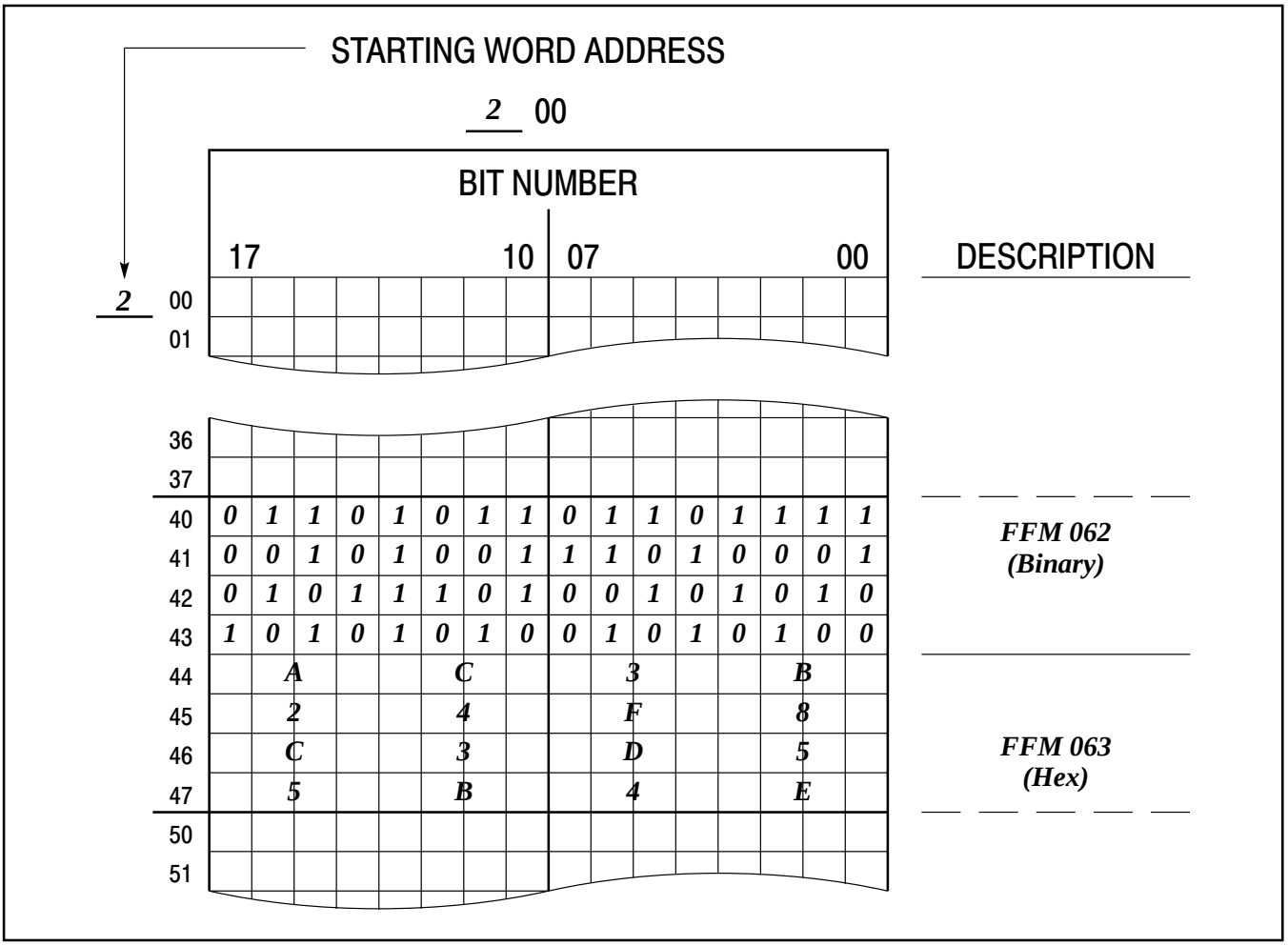
This form can be used to log the bit status of a word and to describe the function of groups of related words within a 128–word data table section. In particular, it can be used to log initial conditions of files such as those used for recipes, and to log assigned storage bits.

The lower two digits of the 3-, 4- or 5-digit word address are prenumbered in the left-hand column. The bit numbers, 00-17, complete the 5-, 6- or 7-digit bit address. The starting word address can be written once for the entire 64-word column.

For example, Figure 3.9 shows a completed portion of the data table map. The left-hand column represents the addresses 200/00 through 277/17 because a 2 is written in the starting word address box at the top of the column. Two 4-word files are illustrated. The data of the File-to-File move instruction, FFM062, is entered in binary. The data of the File-to-File move instruction, FFM063, is entered in hex.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.9
Example of Data Table Map



3.4.3 Data Table Word Assignments (64 Word)

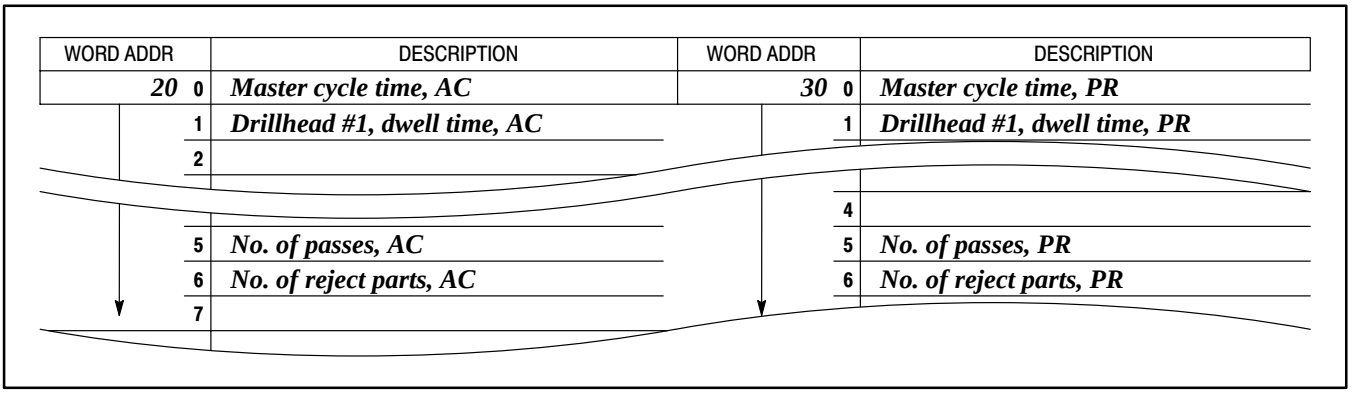
This form can be used to write functional descriptions of word addresses used in the data table for word storage, timers and counters, etc.

The form is divided into two 32-word columns. The words can be numbered consecutively through the entire 64 words. Or, the right-hand column can be numbered 1008 greater than the left-hand column to conveniently track accumulated and preset values. In either case, the lowest digit of the 3-, 4- or 5-digit word address is prenumbered, 0-7.

For example, a portion of the data table word assignment sheet is shown in Figure 3.10. It illustrates timer and counter functional descriptions for accumulated values starting at word address 200_8 and preset values starting at 300_8. A 20 and 30 were written into the left-hand and right-hand word address boxes, respectively.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.10
Example of Data Table Word Assignments



WORD ADDR		DESCRIPTION	WORD ADDR		DESCRIPTION
20	0	*Master cycle time, AC*	*30*	0	*Master cycle time, PR*
	1	*Drillhead #1, dwell time, AC*		1	*Drillhead #1, dwell time, PR*
	2			4	
	5	*No. of passes, AC*		5	*No. of passes, PR*
	6	*No. of reject parts, AC*		6	*No. of reject parts, PR*
	7				

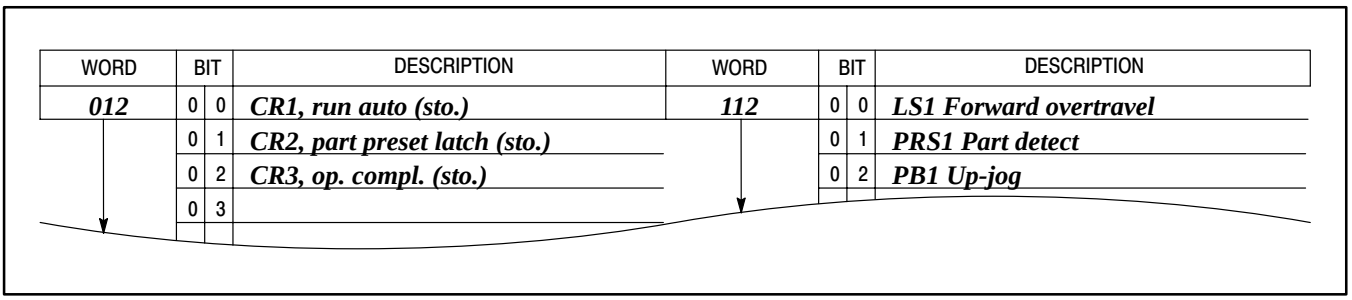
3.4.4 Data Table Bit Assignments

This form can be used to log the function of input, output and storage bits.

Similar to the word assignment sheet, the bit assignment sheet is divided into two 2-word columns. The words can be numbered consecutively, or the right-hand column can be numbered 1008 greater than the left-hand column for the convenient logging of input, output and/or storage bits having the same I/O group number. The bit numbers are prenumbered, 00-17.

For example, a portion of the data table bit assignment sheet is shown in Figure 3.11. It illustrates logging the input devices associated with I/O group 2 and the storage of the corresponding storage word 012 (complement of word 112). Word address 012 and 112 have been entered into corresponding word address boxes in the left- and right-hand columns, respectively. The 3-, 4- or 5-digit word address is entered once for all 16 bits.

Figure 3.11
Example of Data Table Bit Assignments



WORD	BIT		DESCRIPTION	WORD	BIT		DESCRIPTION
012	0	0	*CR1, run auto (sto.)*	*112*	0	0	*LS1 Forward overtravel*
	0	1	*CR2, part preset latch (sto.)*		0	1	*PRS1 Part detect*
	0	2	*CR3, op. compl. (sto.)*		0	2	*PB1 Up-jog*
	0	3					

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

3.4.5 Sequencer Table Bit Assignments

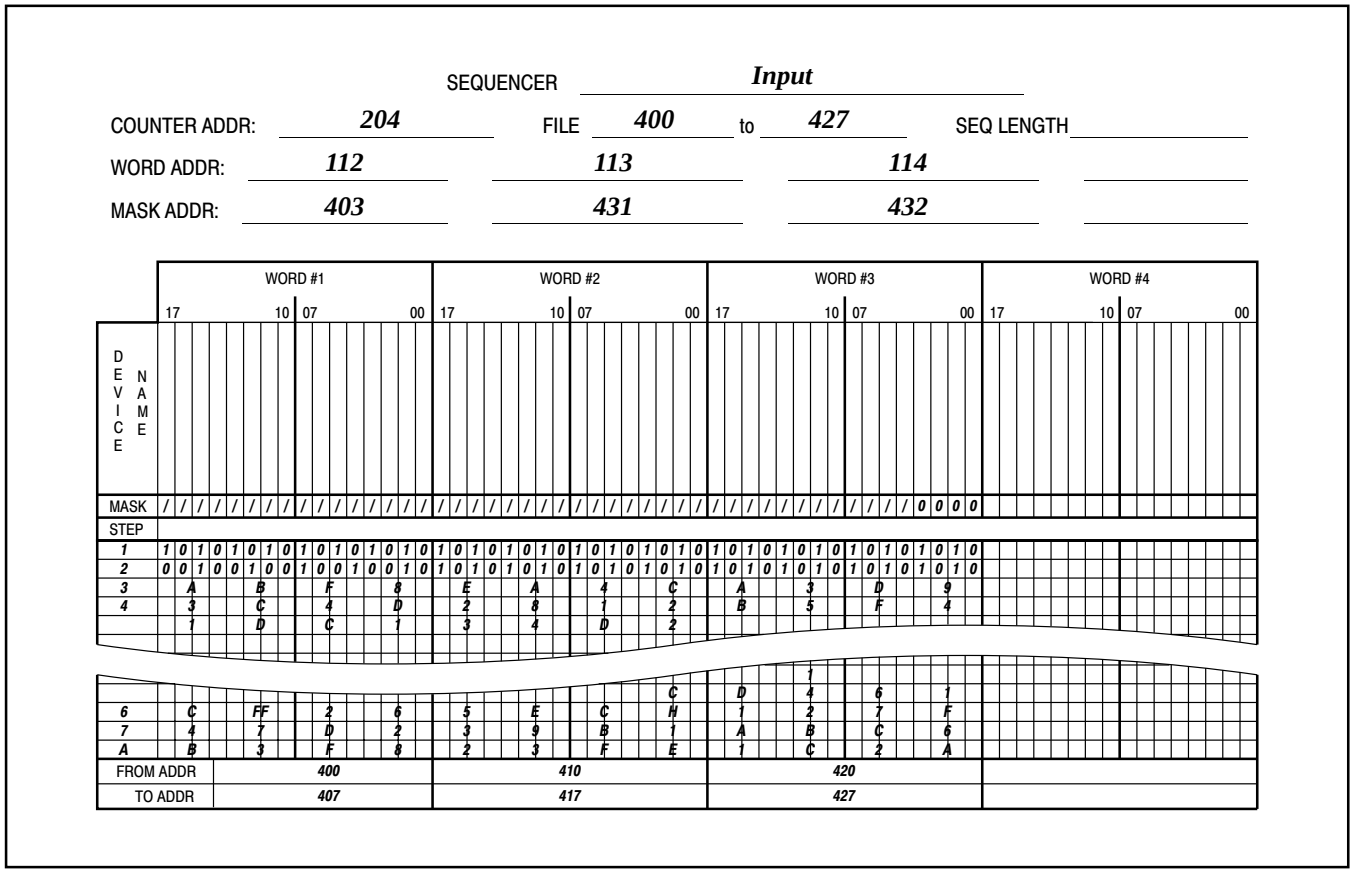
This form can be used for any one of the three Sequencer instructions to log the data associated with each step.

This information added to the heading of the assignment sheet should be identical to the information displayed in the data monitor mode heading and in the ladder diagram mode instruction block of the sequencer instruction. The mask row is used to log mask data, if required. The remaining rows are for logging the data of each step. The data can be logged in binary or in hex. The step numbers should be written in the left-hand blank column. The from-to addresses at the bottom of the sheet are the starting and ending file addresses for each column of the sequencer tables.

For example, Figure 3.12 shows a completed portion of a sequencer table bit assignment sheet for an 8-step, 3-word-wide sequencer input instruction. The mask and steps 1 and 2 have been completed in binary. Steps 3-8 have been completed in hex for the sake of illustration. The starting and ending word addresses of each column of the sequencer table, 400 to 407, 410 to 417, and 420 to 427, respectively, have been entered at the bottom of each column.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 3.12
Example of Sequencer Table Bit Assignments



3.4.6 I/O Assignments

Once the rough sketch of the application is complete, the programmer can assign data table bit addresses to the input and output devices wired to the controller. The 5-digit bit address directly corresponds to the location of each I/O device with respect to the rack number, I/O group and terminal number. Because the bit address is hardware-related, the programmer cannot arbitrarily assign bit addresses to I/O devices. Refer to Section 3.2 on memory organization. Analog modules and other intelligent I/O modules use word addresses rather than 5-digit bit addresses. Refer to the user's manual for each module for more information on addressing and wiring.

The installer and programmer of the PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller should work together to determine the best placement of the I/O modules within the I/O chassis. To simplify installation and troubleshooting procedures, it may be desirable to group like modules together. It is also helpful to document I/O assignments on a form such as the form presented at the end of this section. Recommendations for I/O wiring and module

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

placement can be found in the PLC-2/20, PLC-2/30 Programmable Controller Assembly and Installation Manual (publication no. 1772-6.6.2).

3.4.7 Timer/Counter Assignments

In addition to I/O assignments, timers and counters must also be assigned data table word addresses. It is best to make a list of the word addresses used for timers and counters on data table documentation forms. Later, when sizing the data table, this list will be useful.

The first available timer/counter address depends on the number of I/O racks used. The PLC-2/30 Processor (Cat. No. 1772-LP3) can have up to 7 I/O racks. The corresponding addresses for the first timer/counter locations are shown in Table 3.B. If block transfer is to be used, each block transfer instruction requires one T/C address pair as its data address. The first available location must be reserved for block transfer (Chapter 10).

Table 3.B
Timer/Counter Address for 1772-LP3

# I/O Racks	First Timer/Counter Word Address
1	020
2	030
3	040
4	050
5	060
6	070
7	200

3.4.8 Data Storage Assignments

Data storage has two categories. They are:

- Bit/Word storage
- File storage

Bit/Word Storage

Bit/word storage addresses can be located in all unused areas of the data table excluding the input image table and processor work areas. Data table addresses for bit and word storage should be chosen carefully to optimize memory use.

The following recommendations for bit and word storage should be considered:

- Unused data table words in T/C areas can be used for bit/word storage. To conserve memory, use both the accumulated and preset value words for storage.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- Output image table words can be used for storage when the corresponding input image table words are used for nonblock transfer input modules. However, when there is a vacant I/O group or slot in the I/O chassis, do not use image table words for storage. This will allow room for future system expansion.
- Bits 14-17 of a timer or counter preset word can be used for bit storage, provided data is not transferred to the preset word by a Get/Put transfer or the timer is not set for a 0.01 time base.
- Unused input image table words should not be used for storage. They are cleared to zero during each I/O scan.
- Word 027 should not be used for storage. Many of the bits are used by the processor for control functions.

File Storage

Files are located in consecutive word addresses in the data table. Usually file storage should be immediately below the last timer/counter preset address. Files can include their own unique addresses as well as duplicate preassigned addresses. Therefore, files should be carefully entered on data table documentation forms.

Sequencer tables, as with files, should be entered on the data table documentation forms because they also may have their own unique addresses and/or duplicate preassigned addresses. Moreover, sequencer tables can be 1, 2, 3, or 4 words wide. This means that the number of steps in a sequencer table must be multiplied by the number of words wide (words per step) in order to obtain the total number of consecutive data table words required by a sequencer table.

The following recommendations should be considered:

- Do not inadvertently allow files to overlap other files or a data table boundary.
- Leave space for file growth. If addresses between files are used for bit/word storage, the addresses can be easily reassigned elsewhere if the need arises.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

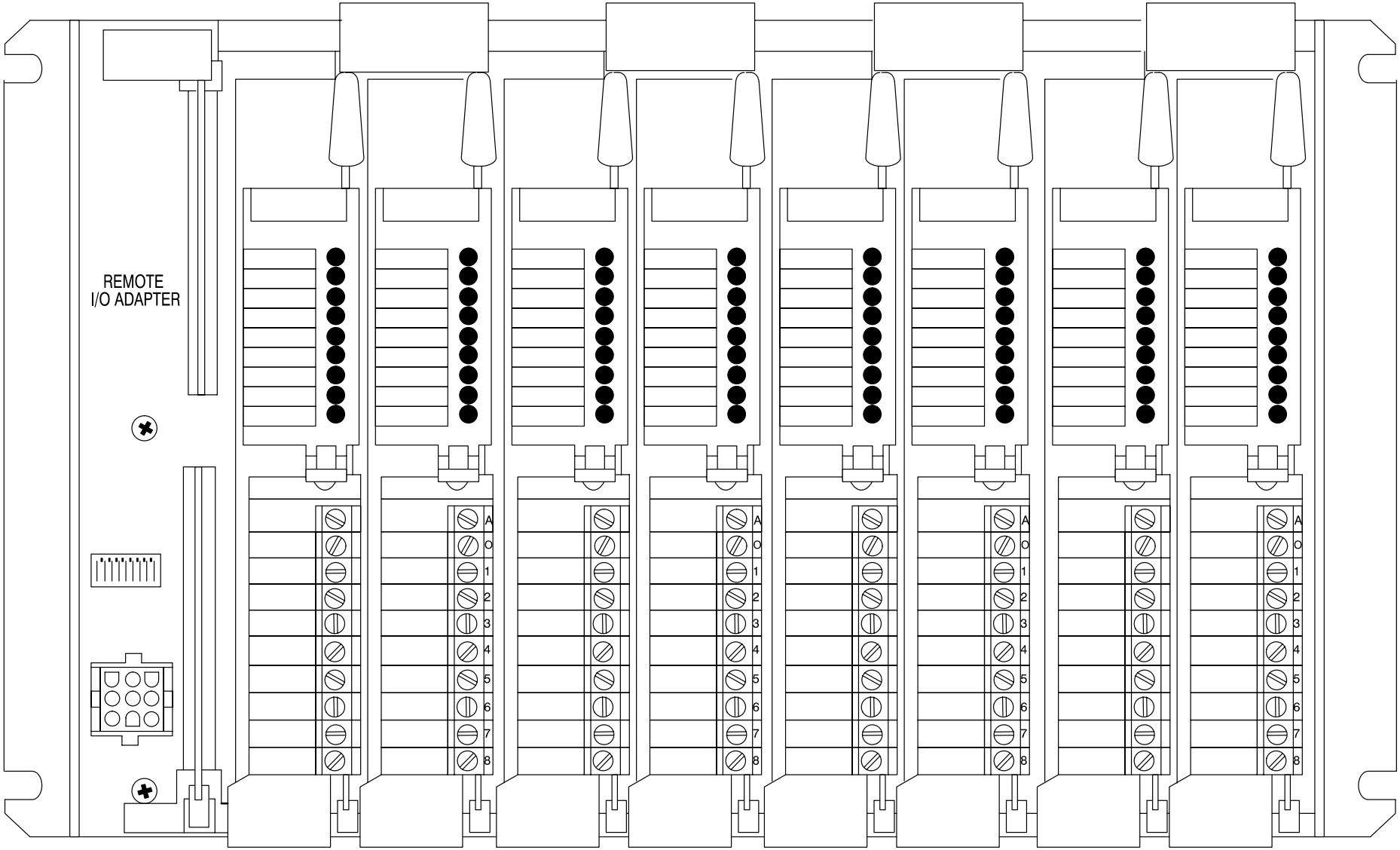
ALLEN-BRADLEY
Connection Diagram Addressing
BULLETIN 1771 I/O Chassis
(8-point Modules)

PAGE _____ OF _____

DATE _____

DESIGNER _____

PROJECT NAME _____



ALLEN-BRADLEY
A ROCKWELL INTERNATIONAL COMPANY

Bulletin 1771 I/O Chassis

CONNECTION DIAGRAM ADDRESSING WORKSHEET

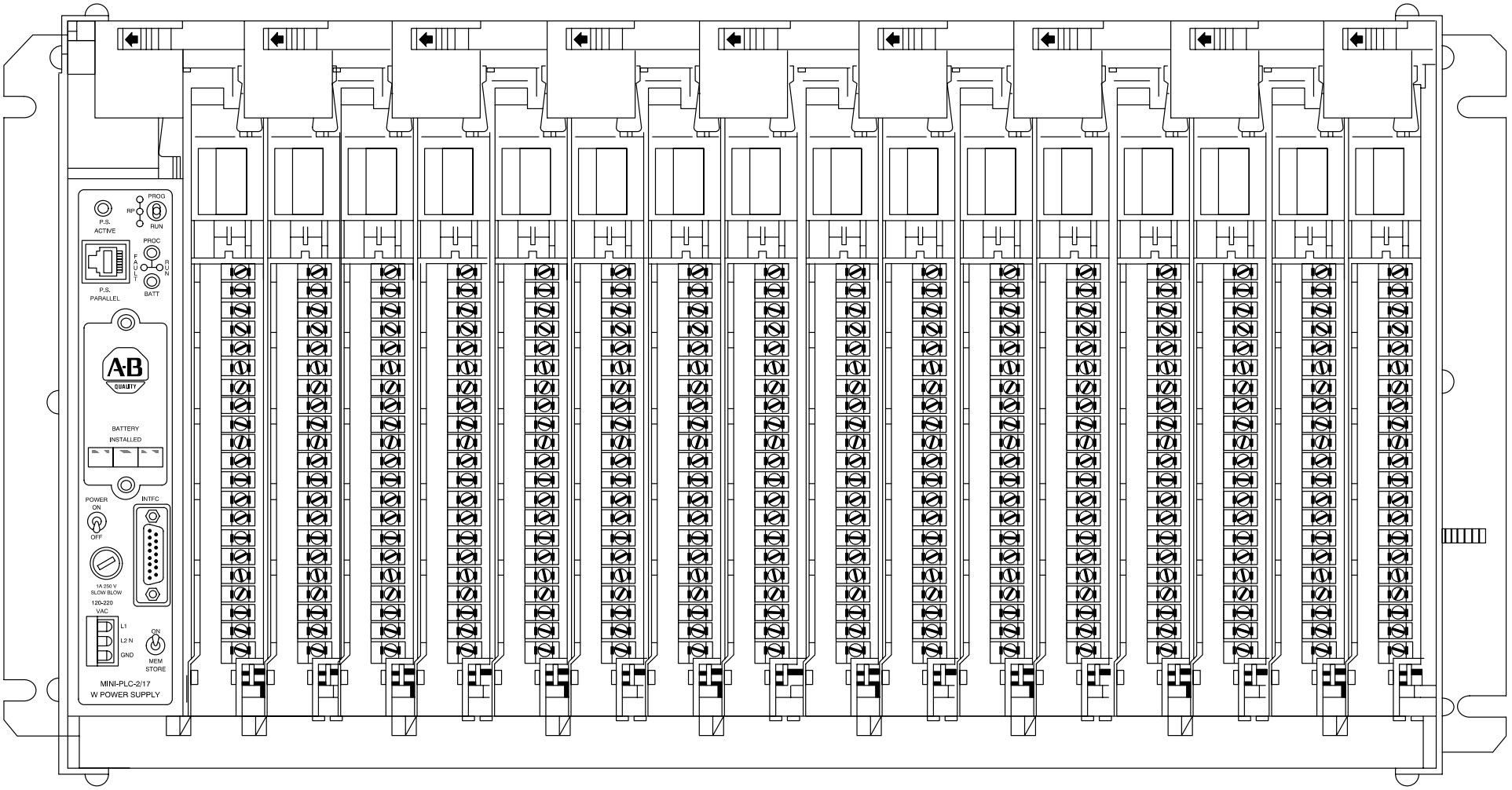
(16-point Modules)

PAGE _____ OF _____

DATE _____

DESIGNER _____

PROJECT NAME _____



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
Programmable Controller

DATA TABLE WORD MAP
(1024 WORD)

PAGE _____ OF _____

ADDRESS _____ TO _____

PROJECT NAME _____ PROCESSOR _____

DESIGNER _____ DATA TABLE SIZE _____

WORD ADDRESS	FROM ——— (32 WORDS) ———► TO	WORD ADDRESS	REF
☐ 000		☐ 037	
040		077	
100		137	
140		177	
200		237	
240		277	
300		337	
340		377	
400		437	
440		477	
500		537	
540		577	
600		637	
640		677	
700		737	
740		777	
☐ 000		☐ 037	
040		077	
100		137	
140		177	
200		237	
240		277	
300		337	
340		377	
400		437	
440		477	
500		537	
540		577	
600		637	
640		677	
700		737	
740		777	

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
Programmable Controller

DATA TABLE WORD MAP
(128 WORD)

PAGE _____ OF _____

ADDRESS _____ TO _____

PROJECT NAME _____ PROCESSOR _____

DESIGNER _____ DATA TABLE SIZE _____

STARTING WORD ADDRESS

___ 00

BIT NUMBER

17 10 07 00 DESCRIPTION

___	00																
	01																
	02																
	03																
	04																
	05																
	06																
	07															___	___ ___
	10																
	11																
	12																
	13																
	14																
	15																
	16																
	17															___	___ ___
	20																
	21																
	22																
	23																
	24																
	25																
	26																
	27															___	___ ___
	30																
	31																
	32																
	33																
	34																
	35																
	36																
	37															___	___ ___
	40																
	41																
	42																
	43																
	44																
	45																
	46																
	47															___	___ ___
	50																
	51																
	52																
	53																
	54																
	55																
	56																
	57															___	___ ___
	60																
	61																
	62																
	63																
	64																
	65																
	66																
	67															___	___ ___
	70																
	71																
	72																
	73																
	74																
	75																
	76																
	77															___	___ ___

STARTING WORD ADDRESS

___ 00

BIT NUMBER

17 10 07 00 DESCRIPTION

___	00																
	01																
	02																
	03																
	04																
	05																
	06																
	07															___	___ ___
	10																
	11																
	12																
	13																
	14																
	15																
	16																
	17															___	___ ___
	20																
	21																
	22																
	23																
	24																
	25																
	26																
	27															___	___ ___
	30																
	31																
	32																
	33																
	34																
	35																
	36																
	37															___	___ ___
	40																
	41																
	42																
	43																
	44																
	45																
	46																
	47															___	___ ___
	50																
	51																
	52																
	53																
	54																
	55																
	56																
	57															___	___ ___
	60																
	61																
	62																
	63																
	64																
	65																
	66																
	67															___	___ ___
	70																
	71																
	72																
	73																
	74																
	75																
	76																
	77															___	___ ___

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
Programmable Controller

DATA TABLE WORD ASSIGNMENTS
(64 WORD)

PAGE _____ OF _____

ADDRESS _____ TO _____

PROJECT NAME _____ PROCESSOR _____

DESIGNER _____ DATA TABLE SIZE _____

WORD ADDR	DESCRIPTION	WORD ADDR	DESCRIPTION
0		0	
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	
0		0	
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	
0		0	
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	
0		0	
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	
6		6	
7		7	

Comments _____

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
Programmable Controller
DATA TABLE BIT ASSIGNMENTS

PAGE _____ OF _____

ADDRESS _____ TO _____

PROJECT NAME _____ PROCESSOR _____

DESIGNER _____ DATA TABLE SIZE _____

WORD	BIT	DESCRIPTION	WORD	BIT	DESCRIPTION
	0 0			0 0	
	0 1			0 1	
	0 2			0 2	
	0 3			0 3	
	0 4			0 4	
	0 5			0 5	
	0 6			0 6	
	0 7			0 7	
	1 0			1 0	
	1 1			1 1	
	1 2			1 2	
	1 3			1 3	
	1 4			1 4	
	1 5			1 5	
	1 6			1 6	
	1 7			1 7	
	0 0			0 0	
	0 1			0 1	
	0 2			0 2	
	0 3			0 3	
	0 4			0 4	
	0 5			0 5	
	0 6			0 6	
	0 7			0 7	
	1 0			1 0	
	1 1			1 1	
	1 2			1 2	
	1 3			1 3	
	1 4			1 4	
	1 5			1 5	
	1 6			1 6	
	1 7			1 7	

Comments _____

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
Programmable Controller

SEQUENCER TABLE BIT ASSIGNMENTS

PAGE ________ OF ________

PROJECT NAME ______________________________ PROCESSOR ______________________________

DESIGNER ______________________________ DATA TABLE SIZE ______________________________

SEQUENCER ______________________________

COUNTER ADDR: ____________ FILE ________ to ________ SEQ LENGTH ______________________________

WORD ADDR: ____________ ____________ ____________ ____________

MASK ADDR: ____________ ____________ ____________ ____________

	WORD #1	WORD #2	WORD #3	WORD #4
	17 10 | 07 00	17 10 | 07 00	17 10 | 07 00	17 10 | 07 00
DEVICE NAME				
MASK				
STEP				
FROM ADDR				
TO ADDR				

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 4

Introduction to Programming

4.0 General

The user's program is a group of ladder diagram and functional block instructions used to control an application. It is initially entered in memory using an industrial terminal.

Assuming that the data table size has not been changed from factory-configured values, the user program begins after word address 177_8.

In certain applications, this area of PLC-2/30 memory can further be divided into data highway instructions, main ladder diagram program and subroutine area.

Some of the simple program instructions, such as Examine On, use one word of memory. Others, such as File instructions, are more complex and can use two or more words of user program memory. As the user program is entered from the industrial terminal, the number of words is indicated at the right of the END statement (including data table words). The words remaining in memory can be determined by subtracting that number from the total memory available.

4.1 Notational Conventions

The text of this manual uses the following notational conventions to aid you when entering commands through the keyboard of the industrial terminal.

- A word in the brackets represents a single key you would press, such as [ESC] or [RETURN].
- Capital letters not in brackets would be entered as shown.
- Punctuation such as commas and arithmetic symbols such as = would be entered as shown.
- These brackets < > define copy that must be entered in proper form, not as printed. For example <message number> means that you enter the desired number, not the word's message number.

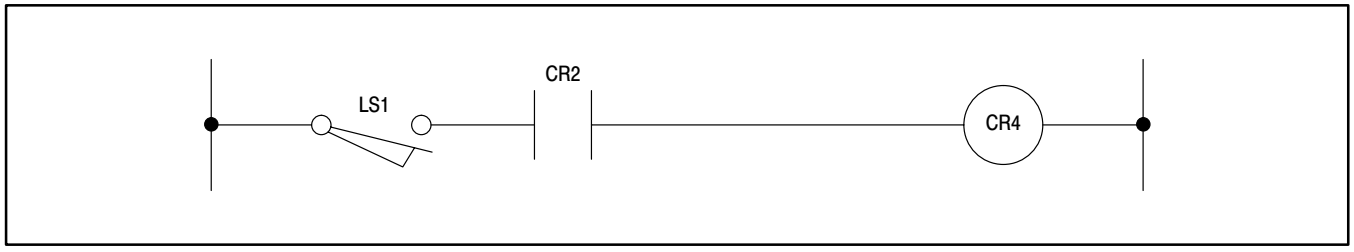
The industrial terminal responds to your commands, either by displaying prompts or by displaying information resulting from your commands. Examples of displayed information are shown the way they would be displayed by an industrial terminal.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4.2
Ladder Diagram Logic

Programmable controller ladder diagram logic closely resembles hardwired relay logic. Hardwired relay control systems require electrical continuity to turn output devices on and off. For example, the relay diagram in Figure 4.1 shows that limit switch LS1 and relay contact CR2 must be closed to energize relay coil CR4.

Figure 4.1
Relay Diagram



Similarly, in each rung of ladder diagram program, logic continuity is needed to energize or de-energize the output instructions, and ultimately, the output device. For example, the ladder diagram rung in Figure 4.2 shows the two input devices and the output device that are assigned bit addresses in the data table. The bit addresses correspond to the location of the I/O devices wired to the I/O modules. When the two input instructions are logically true, or the bits in memory are on, logic continuity is established. This causes the output instruction to be true and the output device to be turned on.

The bit address of an instruction is defined by a word address and a bit number in the data table. The word address is written above the instruction and the bit number below it.

Figure 4.2
Ladder Diagram Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4.3 Relay-Type Instructions

Programmable controllers have many of the capabilities of hardwired relay control systems. Control functions similar to those available with relays are provided by the following relay-type instructions:

- Examine instructions
- Output instructions
- Branch instructions

4.3.1 Examine Instructions

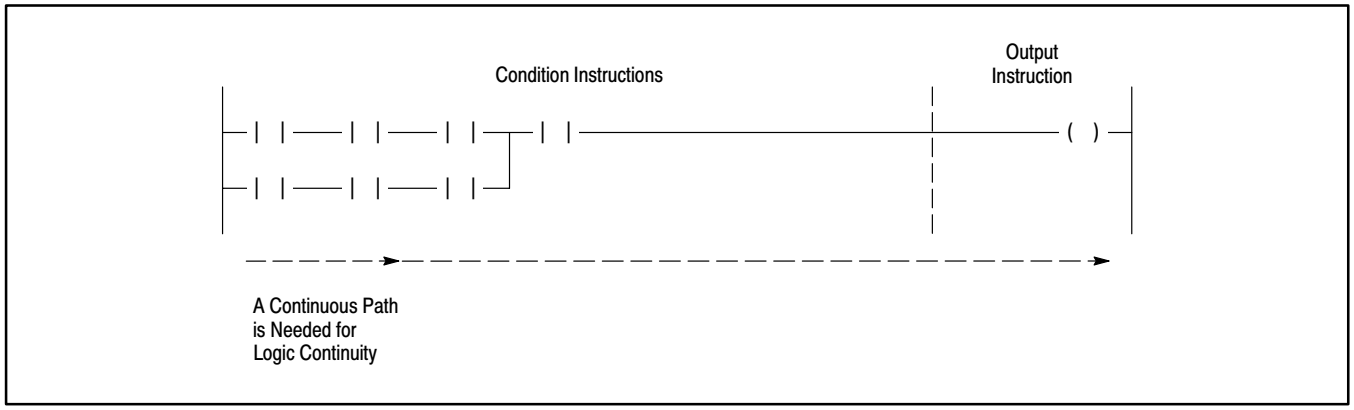
There are two examine instructions:

- Examine On –| |–
- Examine Off –| / |–

They command the processor to check the on/off status of a specific bit address in memory. A one or zero stored at the bit address may represent the actual on or off status of a single input or output device.

Examine instructions ar programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung (Figure 4.3). As condition instructions, their on or off states determine the true or false condition of the rung. Any bit in the data table, excluding the processor work areas, can be addressed by an examine instruction. A single bit can be examined several times within the same rung or program.

Figure 4.3
Areas of the Ladder Diagram Rung



Examine On Instruction

The Examine On instruction tells the processor to check the status of the addressed memory bit for an on (one) condition. When addressing the I/O image table, this instruction can examine a single input or output bit for an on voltage state.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The condition of the Examine On instruction is either true or false:

- True – the addressed memory bit is one, meaning that the corresponding I/O device or bit is on
- False – The addressed memory bit is zero, meaning that the corresponding I/O device or bit is off

When using the Examine On instruction to address an input device, the conventional normally open or normally closed distinctions are not made. The Examine On instruction only checks for an on or energized status of a device or bit (Figure 4.4).

Figure 4.4
Examine On Instruction



Examine Off Instruction

The Examine Off instruction is the logical opposite of the Examine On instruction. It tells the processor to check the status of the addressed memory bit for an off condition. When addressing the I/O image table, this instruction can examine a single input or output bit for an off voltage state (Figure 4.5).

The condition specified by the Examine Off instruction is either true or false:

- True – The addressed memory bit is zero, meaning that the corresponding I/O device or bit is off.
- False – The addressed memory bit is one, meaning that the corresponding I/O device or bit is on.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 4.5
Examine Off Instruction



4.3.2 Output Instructions

The output instructions set an addressed memory bit to one (on) or reset it to zero (off). An output image table bit, as one or zero, can cause an output device to be turned on or off.

Output instructions are programmed at the end of the ladder-diagram rungs (Figure 4.3). Only one output instruction can be programmed on each rung. An instruction in this position of the rung is executed only if the rung conditions preceding the instruction are logically true.

These output instructions are:

- Output Energize –( )–
- Output Latch –(L)–
- Output Unlatch –(U)–

These instructions are used to set memory bits on or off in any area of the data table, excluding the processor work areas and the input image table.

Output Energize Instruction

The Output Energize instruction tells the processor to turn an addressed memory bit on when rung conditions are true. This memory bit may determine the on or off status of an output device. This instruction can also be used to set a storage bit to one for later use in the program. It also turns the bit off when the rung conditions go false.

The Output Energize instruction tells the processor to turn the addressed memory bit off when rung conditions go false (Figure 4.6).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

CAUTION: The Output Energize instruction can be programmed unconditionally for some types of specialized programming. Its use should be limited to storage bits for these special purposes. An unconditional output energize instruction (Figure 4.7) causes the output instruction to remain energized continuously. This may not be desirable in output device programming.

Figure 4.6
Output Energize Instruction



Figure 4.7
Unconditional Output Energize Instruction



Output Latch and Unlatch Instructions

There are two output instructions that are termed retentive. These instructions are:

- Output Latch –(L)–
- Output Unlatch –(U)–

These instructions are usually used as a pair for any bit address they control.

The Output Latch instruction is somewhat similar to the Output Energize instruction. The Output Latch instruction tells the processor to set an addressed memory bit on when rung conditions are true. Unlike the Output Energize instruction, the Output Latch instruction is retentive. This means that once the rung conditions go false, the latched bit remains on until reset

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

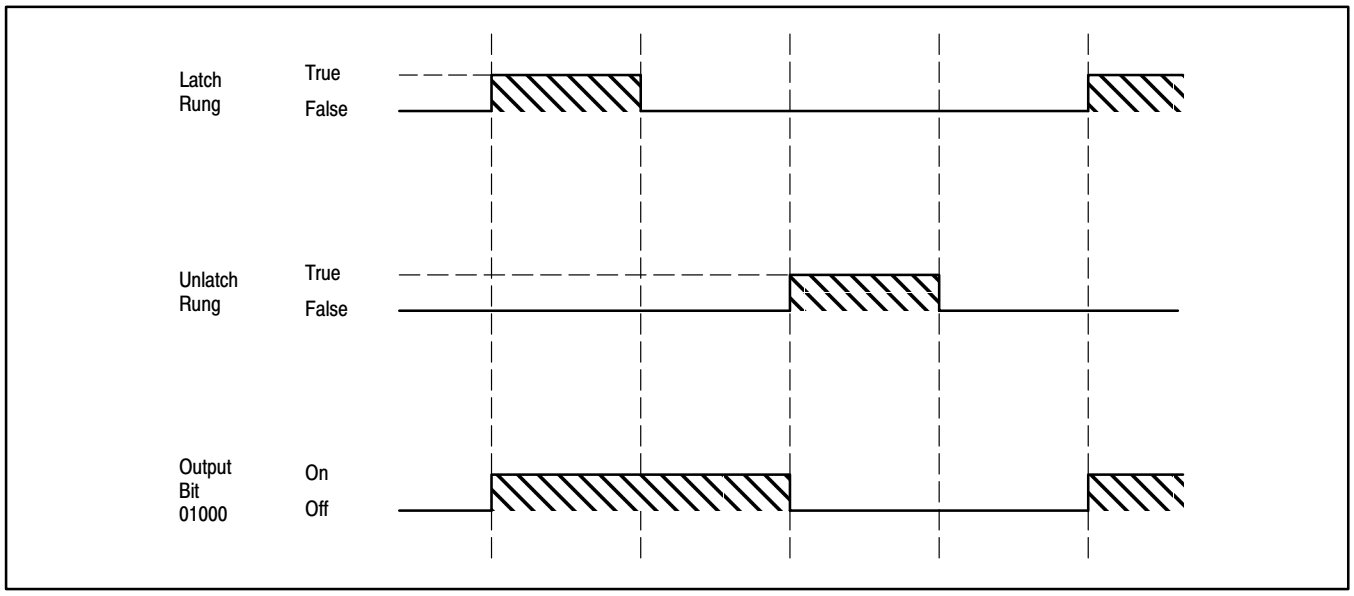
by an Output Unlatch instruction. If power is lost and back-up battery for CMOS RAM memory is maintained, all latched bits will remain on.

The Output Unlatch instruction is used to de-energize a memory bit that has been latched on. The Output Unlatch instruction addresses the same memory bit that has been latched on (Figure 4.8). When the rung conditions for the Output Unlatch instruction go true, the addressed memory bit is reset to zero (off) (Figure 4.9). The output unlatch is also retentive. This means that once the rung conditions go false, the unlatched bit remains off.

Figure 4.8
Latch/Unlatch Instructions



Figure 4.9
Latch/Unlatch Timing Diagram



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

When the Mode Select Switch is changed from the RUN or RUN/PROG position, the last true Output Latch or Output Unlatch instruction continues to control the addressed memory bit, but disables the output device. When the Mode Select Switch is turned back to RUN or RUN/PROG position, a latched output device will be energized.

The Output Latch and Unlatch instructions, when entered, are automatically set off. They can be initially preset on by entering the number 1 immediately after the bit address. The on or off condition will be displayed below the instructions when the processor is in the prog mode (Figure 4.10). When the mode select switch is turned to the RUN or RUN/PROG position, the addressed memory bit and output device, if latched on, will immediately be energized, regardless of rung conditions.



WARNING: Do not preset a bit on controlled by Latch/Unlatch instructions if it controls potentially hazardous machine motion. If the bit is preset on by the Latch/Unlatch instructions, the output device controlled by that bit is energized immediately when the mode select switch is turned to the RUN or RUN/PROG position. Hazardous machine operation could damage equipment and/or personal injury could result.

Both Latch and Unlatch instructions can be programmed unconditionally. This programming technique is generally used with storage bits and should not be used to control output devices.

Figure 4.10
Latch and Unlatch Indication



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

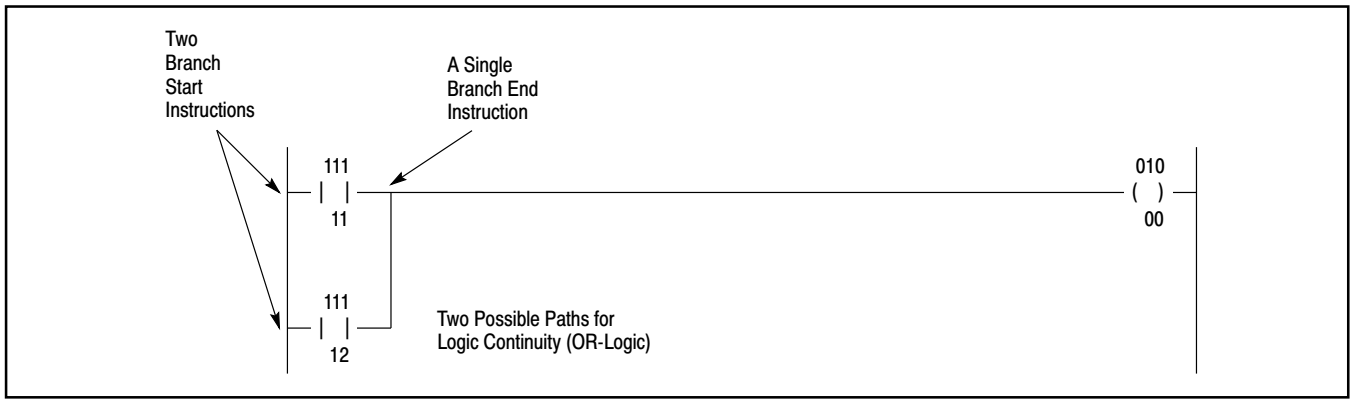
4.3.3 Branch Instructions

The branch instructions allow more than one combination of input conditions to energize an output device (Figure 4.11).

These are two branch instructions:

- Branch Start
- Branch End

Figure 4.11
Branching Instructions



Branch Start

This instruction begins each parallel logic branch of a rung. The Branch Start is programmed immediately before the first instruction of each parallel logic path.

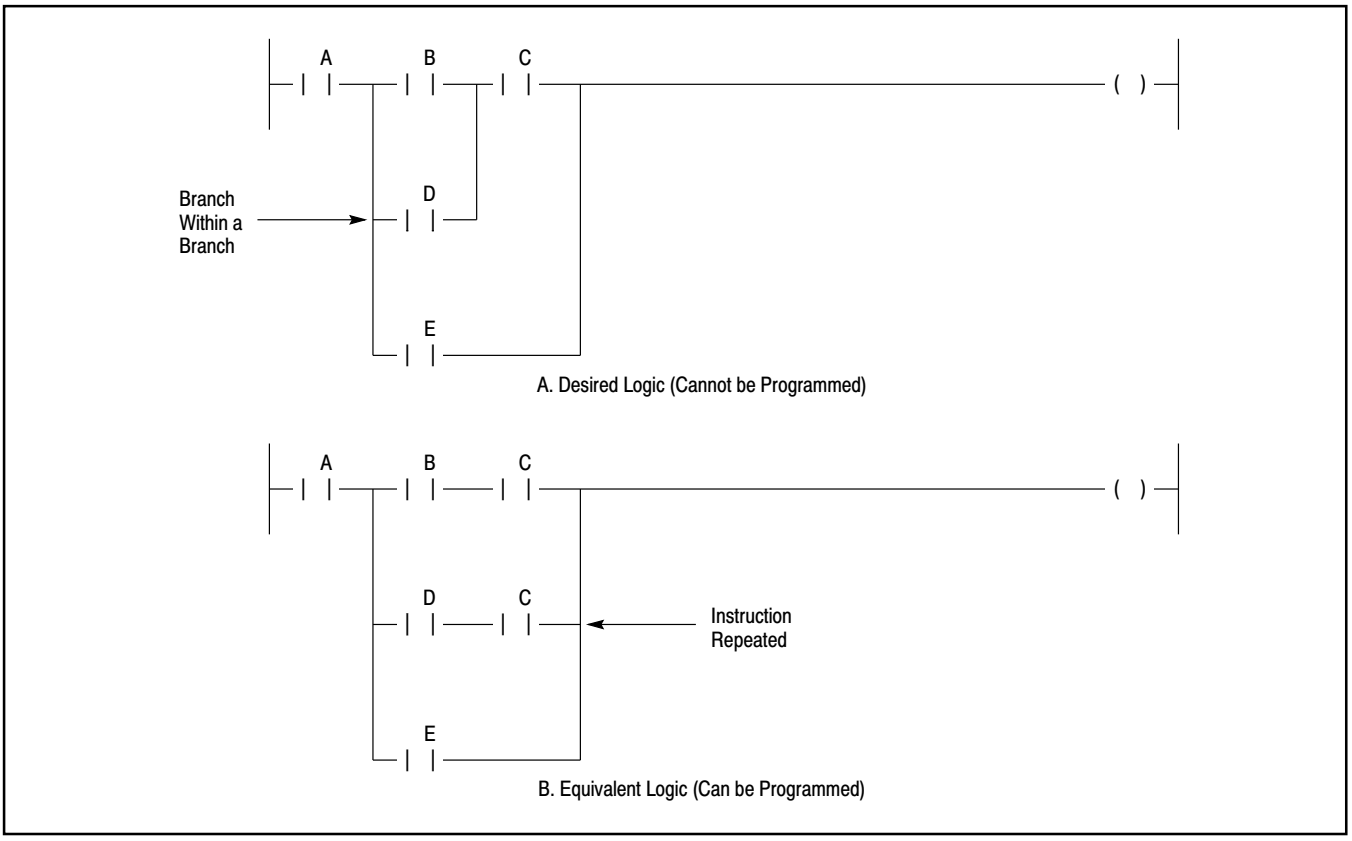
Branch End

This instruction completes a set of parallel branches. The Branch End is entered after the last instruction of the last branch to end a set of parallel branches.

Branch instructions must be entered in the correct order for proper logic function. The only limitation is that a nested branch (a branch within a branch) cannot be programmed directly (Figure 4.12).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 4.12
Nested Branching vs. Equivalent Logic



WARNING: While inserting a BRANCH START instruction to an existing rung during on-line programming, the actual output status (ON or OFF) may not be the logically expected state of the rung. This condition exists until the BRANCH END instruction is installed and the rung is completed.

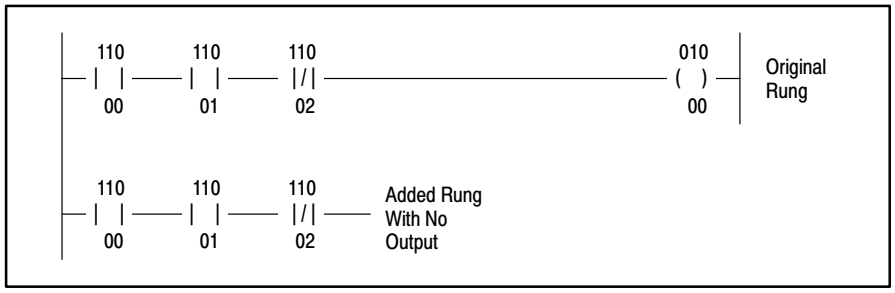
Solution

To avoid the above condition, adhere to the following programming technique:

1. Immediately below the rung to be changed, create a new rung with the same conditional logic (in other words, duplicate the rung); but, **do not put the output in yet.** (Figure 4.13 on the next page is an example rung and the addition.)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 4.13
Example Original Rung With First Part of Duplicate Rung

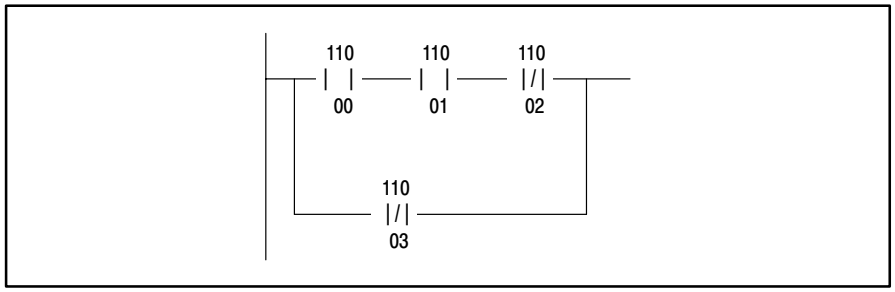


2. Cursor to the point where you want to change the logic and insert the BRANCH START.

3. Insert the desired parallel logic (see Figure 4.14).

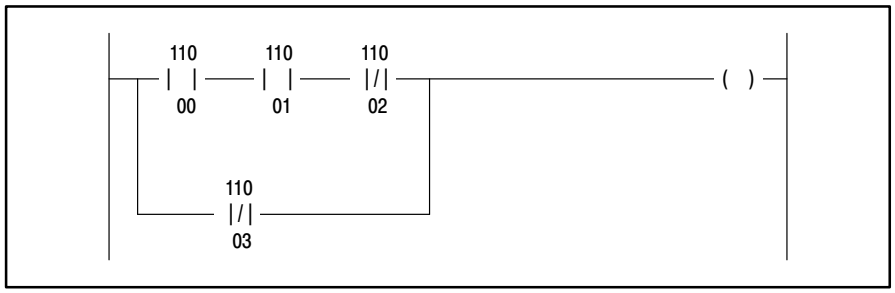
4. Insert the BRANCH END.

Figure 4.14
Example New Rung With Branch Instruction



5. Now insert the output instruction.

Figure 4.15
Example New Rung, Completed



6. Delete the original rung.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

This procedure allows the processor to make a smooth transition from one form of the rung to the other form during the time the branch start instruction is being completed.

4.3.4 Ending a Program

The PLC-2/30 controller does not require that an END (of program) statement be entered by the user after the last program instruction. An END statement is generated by the processor. It is present before any program steps are entered and is automatically positioned after the last programmed instruction, once program entry is begun. An additional temporary END statement can be entered, although its use is not mandatory.

Starting with the first program instruction, the processor scans the program and executes all instructions in the sequence called for by the program. The END statement stops the processor from scanning unused memory. Inputs and outputs are then scanned. The processor returns to the first program instruction and begins another program scan.

In normal operation, an END statement is displayed on the industrial terminal when the cursor is moved past the last user program instruction. The END statement also appears before program steps are entered. When a user-supplied teletypewriter or keyboard/printer is used, the END statement is printed on the hardcopy printout. At the right of the END statement, a 3- or 4-digit number appears. These digits indicate the number of decimal words actually entered into memory before and including the END statement.

NOTE: The size of the data table must be subtracted from the number displayed in order to determine the exact number of user program words.

Should a user attempt to enter more instructions than the maximum capacity of the available memory, a MEMORY FULL message is displayed on the industrial terminal screen. Additional program instructions cannot be entered.

Most PLC-2/30 instructions take an average of 3 to 6 msec for the processor to scan and execute. The execution time for different instructions varies considerably and is dependent on the exact instruction and its true/false state. A typical program using 1,024 words of memory (including the data table) would have an execution time of approximately 5 msec, assuming a distribution with approximately 80% relay-type instructions, such as Examine On, Examine Off, Output Energize.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4.3.5 Programming Relay-Type Instructions



WARNING: Use only Allen-Bradley authorized programming devices to program Allen-Bradley programmable controllers. Using unauthorized programming devices may result in unexpected operation, possibly causing equipment damage and/or injury to personnel. The Allen-Bradley Company will not be responsible or liable for any damages, whether direct, indirect, or consequential, arising out of the use of such unauthorized programming devices.

All relay-type instructions are entered from the industrial terminal keyboard with the processor in the program mode. When a relay-type instruction is initially entered, it will appear intensified on the screen to indicate the cursor's present position. When a bit address is required, the instruction will blink to indicate information is needed to complete the instruction. The default bit address, 010/00, is displayed with a reverse-video character cursor positioned at the first digit. This cursor indicates where information is needed and moves to the next digits as information is entered. When all information is entered. the instruction stops blinking and remains intensified until the next instruction is entered.

Table 4.A describes the entry and display of relay-type instructions.

Six- or seven-digit bit addresses can be entered provided the data table has been expanded to a 4- or 5-digit word address. To enter a 6- or 7-digit bit address, the [EXPAND ADDR] key is required. It is pressed after the instruction is entered and before the address is entered. The [EXPAND ADDR] key will display either a 6- or 7-digit default bit address, 0010/00 or 00010/00, depending on the data table size. When a 7-digit bit address is displayed and a 6-digit address is required, a leading zero must be entered before the bit address.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 4.A
Relay-Type Instructions

NOTE: Examine and Output addresses, XXX/XX, can be assigned to any location in the Data Table, excluding the processor work areas. The word address is displayed above the instruction and the bit number below it. To enter a bit address larger than 5 digits, press the [EXPAND ADDR] key after the instruction key and then enter the bit address. Use a leading zero, if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–| |–	EXAMINE ON	XXX –| |– XX	When the addressed memory bit is ON, the instruction is TRUE.
–| / |–	EXAMINE OFF	XXX –| / |– XX	When the addressed memory bit is OFF, the instruction is TRUE.
–( )–	ENERGIZE	XXX –( )– XX	[1]When the rung is TRUE, the addressed memory bit is set ON. If the bit controls an output device, that output device will be ON.
–(L)–	OUTPUT LATCH	XXX –(L)– ON XX or OFF	[1]When the rung is TRUE, the addressed memory bit is latched ON and remains ON until is is unlatched. The OUTPUT LATCH instruction is initially OFF when entered, as indicated below the instruction. It can be preset ON by pressing a [1] after entering the bit address. An ON will then be indicated below the instruction in PROGRAM mode.
–(U)–	OUTPUT UNLATCH	XXX –(U)– ON XX or OFF	[1]When the rung is TRUE, the addressed bit is unlatched. If the bit controls an output device, that device is deenergized. ON or OFF will appear below the instruction indicating the status of the bit in PROGRAM mode only.
	BRANCH START		This instruction begins a parallel logic path and is entered at the beginning of each parallel path.
	BRANCH END		This instruction ends two or more parallel logic paths and is used with BRANCH START instructions.

[1] These instructions should not be assigned Input Image Table addresses because Input Image Table words are reset each I/O scan.

4.4
Operating Instructions

This section contains the operating instructions that are used to move through the program and perform a variety of functions.

- Addressing
- Help directories
- Searching
- Editing
- On-line programming
- Clearing memory

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4.4.1 Addressing

The ladder diagram instructions are entered with the processor in the program mode. When entered, they are displayed as intensified and blinking to indicate cursor position and that information is needed.

When entering addresses and data, the reverse-video character cursor can be manipulated to the left and right using the [←] and [→] keys to make corrections. It can also be moved to any accessible position within an instruction block using the same keys. The character cursor cannot be moved to the left past the first digit. If the character cursor is moved off the instruction address to the right, the instruction will be entered. It will stop blinking but will remain intensified until the next instruction is pressed or the instruction cursor is moved.

Bit addresses with 6 or 7 digits can be entered provided the [EXPAND ADDR] key is pressed. If a 5-digit bit address is displayed and a larger bit address is required, the [EXPAND ADDR] key can be pressed at any time provided the last digit has not been entered. If the last digit was entered, the instruction must be removed and the entire address must be re-entered.

Word addresses, unlike bit addresses, do not require the [EXPAND ADDR] key. Instead, always use leading zeros when necessary.

Any time a digit being entered is not within the proper limits, the message DIGIT OUT OF RANGE will be displayed. The cursor will remain in the same position until a valid digit is entered.

4.4.2 Help Directories

Help directories have been developed as an aid in using the industrial terminal (Table 4.B). They list the several functions or instructions common to a single multi-purpose key such as the [SEARCH] or [FILE] key. A master help directory is also available which lists the eight function and instruction directories for the PLC-2/30 and the key sequence to access them. The master help directory is displayed by pressing the [HELP] key.

The [HELP] key can be pressed any time during a multi-key sequence. The remaining keys in the sequence can then be pressed without pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 4.B
Help Directories

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Help Directory	Any	[HELP]	Displays a list of the keys that are used with the [HELP] key to obtain further directories.
Control Function Directory	Any	[SEARCH] [HELP]	Provides a list of all control functions that use the [SEARCH] key.
Record Function Directory	Any	[RECORD] [HELP]	Provides a list of functions that use the [RECORD] key.
Clear Memory Directory	Program	[CLEAR MEMORY] [HELP]	Provides a list of all functions that use the [CLEAR MEMORY] key.
Data Monitor Directory	Any	[DISPLAY] [HELP]	Provides the choice of Data Monitor displays accessed by the [DISPLAY] key.
File Instruction Directory	Any	[FILE] [HELP]	Provides a list of all instructions that use the [FILE] key.
Sequencer Instruction Directory	Any	[SEQ] [HELP]	
Block Transfer Directory	Any	[BLOCK XFER] [HELP]	Provides a list of all instructions that use the [BLOCK XFER] key.
Shift Register	Any	[SHIFT REG] [HELP]	Provides a list of all instructions that use the [SHIFT REG] key.
All Directories	Any	[CANCEL COMMAND]	To terminate.

4.4.3 Searching

The industrial terminal can be used to search the user program for:

- Specific instruction and specific word addresses
- First or last instruction in a rung
- Single rung display
- Incomplete rung
- First and last rung and user boundaries
- Remote Mode Select

Specific Instructions and Specific Word Addresses

Any instruction in user program can be located by pressing [SEARCH][Key sequence of instruction][Key sequence of address]. Enter leading zeros before the address, if necessary. Block instruction can be searched for by using the counter address or the first entered address in the block.

The procedures for finding a specific instruction or address are similar (Table 4.C). All addresses (excluding those associated with Examine On and Examine Off instructions and those contained within files) can be located by pressing [SEARCH]8 [Key sequence of address]. The address

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

entered is the word address for the Output instructions. The industrial terminal will locate all uses of the word addresses associated with the word address except for –| |– and–|/|–.

Table 4.C
SEARCH Functions

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Locate first rung of program	Any	[SEARCH] [↑]	Positions cursor on the first instruction of the program.
Locate last rung of program area	Any	[SEARCH] [↓]	Positions cursor on the TEMPORARY END instruction, SUBROUTINE AREA boundary, or the END statement depending on the cursor's location. Press key sequence again to move to the next boundary.
Locate first instruction of current rung	Program	[SEARCH] [←]	Positions cursor on first instruction of the current rung.
Move cursor off screen	Test, Run, or Run/Program	[SEARCH] [←]	Moves cursor off screen to left.
Locate output instruction of current rung	Any	[SEARCH] [→]	Positions cursor on the output instruction of the current rung.
Locate specific instruction	Any	[SEARCH] [Instruction keys] [Address keys]	Locates instruction searched for. Press [SEARCH] to locate the next occurrence of instruction.[1]
Locate specific word address	Any	[SEARCH] [8] [Address keys]	Locates this address in the program (excluding –| |–, –|/|– instructions and addresses in file). Press [SEARCH] to locate the next occurrence of this address.[1]
Single rung display	Any	[SEARCH] [DISPLAY]	Displays the first rung of a multiple rung display by itself. Press key sequence again to view multiple rungs.
Single rung print[2]	Any	[SEARCH] [4] [3]	Prints the first rung of a multiple rung display by itself. Press [CANCEL COMMAND] to terminate.
Remote Mode Select: RUN/PROGRAM	Run/Program	[SEARCH] [5] [9] [0]	Places the Processor in RUN/PROGRAM mode.
Remote TEST		[SEARCH] [5] [9] [1]	Places the Processor in Remote TEST mode.
Remote PROGRAM		[SEARCH] [5] [9] [2]	Places the Processor in Remote PROGRAM mode.

[1] Enter leading zeros when bit address exceeds 5 digits or word address exceeds 3 digits.
[2] Requires Series B/Revision F (or later) keyboard.

Once either key sequence is pressed, this information and an EXECUTING SEARCH message will be displayed near the bottom of the screen. The industrial terminal will begin to search for the address and/or instruction from the cursor's position. It will look past the temporary end and subroutine area boundaries to the END statement. Then it will continue searching from the beginning of the program to the point where the search began.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

If found, the rung containing the first occurrence of the address and/or instruction will be displayed as well as the rungs after it. If the SEARCH key is pressed again, the next occurrence of the address and/or instruction will be displayed. When it cannot be located or all addresses and/or instructions have been found, a NOT FOUND message will be displayed.

If the instruction is found in the subroutine area or past the temporary end instruction, the area in which it is found will be displayed in the lower portion of the screen.

This function can be terminated at any time by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND]. All other keys are ignored during the search.

First or Last Instruction in a Rung

The first condition instruction of a rung can be addressed from anywhere in the rung by pressing [SEARCH][←] when in program mode. If not in program mode, the cursor will move off the screen to the left. To bring it back on the screen, press the [→] key.

The output instruction can be accessed from anywhere in the rung by pressing [SEARCH][→] in any mode.

Single Rung Display

Upon power-up, a multiple rung display appears on the screen. The user has the option of viewing a single rung by pressing [SEARCH][DISPLAY]. To return to the multiple rung display, press [SEARCH][DISPLAY] again.

Incomplete Rung

In the event that an interruption in programming occurred and a rung was inadvertently left without an output instruction, this rung can be located by pressing the [SHIFT][SEARCH] keys. The processor can be in any mode. Programming interruptions are further described in Section 4.4.4.

First and Last Rung and User Program Boundaries

Program boundaries including the first or last rung can be located from any point in the user program by using the [SEARCH][↑] or {SEARCH][↓] key sequences. The user program could contain a temporary end instruction boundary and/or a subroutine area boundary. It always contains an end statement boundary.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The cursor will go directly to the first rung from anywhere in user program by pressing the [SEARCH][↑] keys.

When the [SEARCH][↓] key sequence is pressed, the display will go to the next boundary in the first section indicated. By pressing the [SEARCH][↓] key sequence again, a subsequent boundary will be displayed until the user program end statement is reached.

Boundaries will be displayed at the top of the screen with subsequent program rungs displayed beneath. No rungs follow the END statement.

Remote Mode Select

The industrial terminal keyboard can be used to change the processor mode when the keyswitch is in the RUN/PROGRAM position.

The following key sequences can be used:

- [SEARCH] 590 for run/program mode
- [SEARCH] 591 for remote test mode
- [SEARCH] 592 for remote program mode



CAUTION: When using remote program mode or remote test mode, outputs behave according to the setting of the last state switch.

4.4.4 Editing

Changes to an existing program can be made through a variety of editing functions (Table 4.D). Instructions and rungs can be added or deleted; addresses, data, and bits can be changed.

NOTE: If the memory write protect is active, only data table values between word addresses 0108 and 3778 can be changed.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 4.D
Editing Functions[1]

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Inserting a Condition Instruction	Program	[INSERT] [Instruction] [Address] or [INSERT] [←] [Instruction] [Address]	Position the cursor on the instruction that will precede the instruction to be inserted. Then press key sequence.[2] Position the cursor on the instruction that will follow the instruction to be inserted. Then press key sequence.[2]
Removing a Condition Instruction	Program	[REMOVE] [Instruction]	Position the cursor on the instruction to be removed and press the key sequence.
Inserting a Rung	Program	[INSERT] [RUNG]	Position the cursor on any instruction in the preceding rung and press the key sequence. Enter the appropriate instructions to complete the rung.
Removing a Rung	Program	[REMOVE] [RUNG]	Position the cursor anywhere on the rung to be removed and press the key sequence. **NOTE:** Only addresses corresponding to OUTPUT ENERGIZE, LATCH, and UNLATCH instructions are cleared to zero when the rung is removed.
Change data of a word or block instruction	Program	[INSERT] [Data] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Position the cursor on the word or block instruction whose data is to be changed. Press the key sequence. To terminate.
Change data of a word or block instruction ON-LINE	Run/Program	[SEARCH] [5] [1] [Data] [INSERT] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Position the cursor on the word or block instruction whose data is to be changed. Press the key sequence. Cursor keys can be used as needed. Press [INSERT] to enter the new data into memory. To terminate.
Change the address of a word or block instruction	Program	[INSERT] [First Digit] [←] [Address] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Position the cursor on a word or block instruction with data and press [INSERT]. Enter the first digit of the first data value of the instruction. Then use the [↑] and [↓] key as needed to cursor up to the word address. Enter the appropriate digits of the word address. To terminate.

[1] These functions can also be used during On-Line Programming (Refer to Section 4.4.5).
[2] When bit address exceeds 5 digits, press the [EXPAND ADDR] key before entering address and enter a leading zero, if necessary.

Inserting an Instruction

Only nonoutput instructions can be inserted in a rung. There are two ways of doing this.

One way is to press the key sequence [INSERT] [Key sequence of instruction] [Key sequence of address]. The new instruction will be inserted after the cursor's present position. If an instruction is to be entered at the beginning of a rung, the cursor can be positioned on the previous rung's output instruction. If the cursor is on the END statement, however,

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

the instruction will be inserted before the END statement or subroutine area.

The other way to insert an instruction is to press the key sequence [INSERT] [←] [Key sequence of instruction] [Key sequence of address]. The new instruction will be inserted before the cursor's present position.

Bit addresses of 6 or 7 digits can be entered provided the data table is expanded to a 4- or 5-digit word address and the [EXPAND ADDR] key is used.

If, at any time, the memory is full, the instruction cannot be entered and a MEMORY FULL message will be displayed.

Removing an Instruction

Only nonoutput instructions can be removed from a rung. Output instructions can be removed only be removing the complete rung.

To remove an instruction, place the cursor on the appropriate instruction and press the key sequence [REMOVE] [Key sequence of instruction]. Bit values and data of word instructions are not cleared. The input image table bits will be rewritten during the next I/O scan. If the wrong instruction is pressed, an INSTRUCTIONS DO NOT MATCH message will be displayed.

Inserting a Rung

A rung can be inserted anywhere within a program by pressing [INSERT][RUNG] and entering the instructions. The cursor must be positioned on any instruction of the previous rung. The new rung will be inserted after the rung which contains the cursor. If the cursor is on the END statement, the rung need not be inserted. It can be entered just as in initial program entry. Instructions in the new rung cannot be edited until the rung is complete.

If, at any time, the memory is full, a MEMORY FULL message will be displayed and more instructions will not be accepted.

Removing a Rung

Removing a rung is the only way an output instruction can be removed. Any rung, except the last one containing the END statement, can be removed.

To remove a rung, position the cursor anywhere on that rung and press [REMOVE][RUNG]. Only bits corresponding to output energize latch or

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

unlatch instructions are cleared to zero. All other word and bit addresses are not cleared when a rung is removed.

Changing Data of a Word or Block Instruction

The data of any word or block instruction, except the Arithmetic and Put instructions, can be changed in the program mode without removing and re-entering the instruction. This is done by positioning the cursor on the appropriate word instruction and pressing [INSERT][Data Digits]. When the last digit of the data is entered, the function is terminated and the data is entered into memory. Once the first digit has been entered, the [→] [←] keys can be used. The function can also be terminated and entered into memory before the last digit is entered by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

Changing the Address of a Word or Block Instruction

The address of a word or block instruction with data, excluding Arithmetic and Put instructions, can be changed without removing and re-entering the instruction. To do this, position the cursor on the instruction and press [INSERT]. The cursor, although not displayed, will position itself on the first data digit. Enter that digit to display the cursor. Then, cursor back to the address digits using the [←] key and change the address as needed. Use a leading zero if required.

Changing an Instruction or Changing the Address of an Instruction Without Data

To replace an instruction with another, place the cursor on the instruction. Then press the instruction key or key sequence of the desired instruction and the required address(es). This procedure also can be used when changing the address of an instruction that does not contain data.

On-line Data Change

Certain data of a word or block instruction, excluding Arithmetic and Put instructions, can be changed while the processor is in the run/program mode. This is done by positioning the cursor on the appropriate instruction and pressing [SEARCH] 51. The key sequence will display the message ON-LINE DATA CHANGE, ENTER DIGITS FOR: <Required information> near the bottom of the screen. The new digits will be displayed in a command buffer as they are entered. After the new data is displayed, press [INSERT] to enter the data into memory.

To terminate this function, press [CANCEL COMMAND].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

WARNING: When the address of an instruction whose data is to be changed duplicates the address of other instructions in the user program, the consequences of the change of each instruction should be thoroughly explored beforehand.

NOTE: When the memory write protect is activated by removing the write protect jumper, on-line data change will not be allowed for addresses above 377. If attempted, the industrial terminal will display the error message MEMORY PROTECT ENABLED.

4.4.5 On-Line Programming

On-line programming allows changes to be made to the user program during machine operation when the processor is in the run/program mode and memory write protect is not active.

WARNING: The task of on-line programming should be assigned only to an experienced programmer who understands the nature of Allen-Bradley programmable controllers and the machinery being controlled. Proposed on-line changes should be checked and rechecked for accuracy. All possible sequences of machine operation resulting from the change should be assessed in advance. Be absolutely certain that the change must be done on-line and that the change will solve the problem without introducing additional problems. Notify personnel in the machine area before changing machine operation on-line.

Maintaining accurate data table assignment sheets and using the data initialization key described in this section are important steps in minimizing the chances of error when making on-line programming changes.

General Rules

Once the memory write protect jumper has been removed, memory write protect is active, and on-line programming is not allowed. However, data table values between words 010_8 and 377_8 can be changed using the on-line data change procedure. In addition, the following rules are always applicable when programming on-line in run/program mode:

1. As in program mode, output instructions can be changed but cannot be removed unless the entire rung is removed.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2. Block Transfer Read and Write instructions, Jump, Jump to Subroutine, MCR, ZCL and Temp End instructions cannot be inserted.

3. The Label instruction cannot be inserted or removed directly, nor can the rung containing it be removed. However, the Label instruction can be changed to another instruction.



CAUTION: When editing out a Label instruction, all Jump and Jump to Subroutine instructions with the same label number must be removed. If not, a run-time error will occur when the processor executes the Jump to Subroutine instruction.

Data Initialization Key

When programming many kinds of instructions, such as the Get, Les, Equ, Timers and Counters, Files, Sequencers and Shift Registers, two types of information must be entered. They are the instruction address and operating parameters. The data stored at the instruction address is divided into two sections: status (bits 14-17) and BCD value (bits 00-13). During program execution, these bits are constantly changing to reflect current states and values of program instructions. Therefore, when programming on-line, a decision must be made by the user whether to use the current data or enter new data. The [DATA INIT] key is used for entering new data.

The [DATA INIT] key performs two functions in on-line programming mode:

- It allows entry of BCD data values (stored at the instruction address)
- Clears the status bits to 0000 (except for FIFO instructions which initially have an empty stack, and hence, bit 14 must be one)

The [DATA INIT] key should be used when programming an instruction whose address is not currently being used in the program. In this case, using the [DATA INIT] key allows:

- BCD values to be entered
- Assures the status bits are set to zero

If the [DATA INIT] key were not used, data at the address (possibly remaining from previous programming) may interfere with proper machine operation when the new instruction is inserted into the program.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

WARNING: When the address of a new instruction duplicates the address of other instructions in the program, the [DATA INIT] key should not be used without first assessing the consequences. Pressing the [DATA INIT] key will zero out the status bits stored at the existing instructions address, which may interfere with desired machine operation. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

NOTE: To determine whether an address has already been used in the program, the search for specific address function, Section 4.4.3, can be used to locate user-entered addresses. It will not locate other addresses, such as those within files or sequencer tables. Therefore, the data table assignment sheets should be checked to determine whether an address has been used.

In summary, use the [DATA INIT] key when entering an instruction with an unused address or when it is desirable to enter new data and clear the status bits of an already used address.

The [DATA INIT] key should be pressed after the instruction key(s) and before the address is entered.

On-line Programming Procedures

The changes to user program that can be made in the on-line programming mode include the following:

- Insert an instruction
- Remove an instruction
- Insert a rung
- Remove a rung
- Change an instruction or instruction address
- Correct an error
- Programming interruptions

The on-line programming mode is accessible from the industrial terminal by pressing the key sequence {SEARCH] 52. The processor keyswitch must be in RUN/PROGRAM position. The heading, ON-LINE PROGRAMMING, will appear in the top right-hand corner of the screen highlighted in reverse video.

The procedure for on-line programming in run/program mode is similar to the procedure for editing in program mode with the exception that the following three keys have a special purpose in on-line programming:

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- [RECORD] key is used to enter a change into user program. Once pressed, the changed program is active immediately.
- [CANCEL COMMAND] key can be used to abort any on-line programming operation prior to pressing the [RECORD] key. It restores the ladder diagram display and program logic to its original state prior to the on-line programming operations. It is also used to terminate on-line programming mode.
- [DATA INIT] key should be used as described in Section 4.4.4 to allow entry of data or instruction parameters and to set status bits to their proper initialization states.

Insert an Instruction

Instructions can be inserted into user program using the key sequences described in this section.

The instruction being inserted will be highlighted in reverse video until the [RECORD] key is pressed.



CAUTION: When the [RECORD] key is pressed, the instruction is entered into memory immediately. If the rung logic is true, the output instruction will be enabled.

The procedure for inserting an instruction into an existing rung is as follows (refer to Editing, Section 4.4.4, if necessary):

Step 1 – Position the cursor on the preceding instruction.

Step 2 – Press [INSERT][Key sequence of instruction].

Step 3 – Use the [DATA INIT] key, if appropriate.

Step 4 – Enter instruction parameters.

Step 5 – Verify that the instruction is correctly entered.

Step 6 – Press the [RECORD] key.

The data monitor mode of block instructions, such as files or sequencers, cannot be entered until after the [RECORD] key is pressed. If file data is required, the rung containing the new instruction should be held false until the data has been entered. The procedure is as follows for monitoring and/or entering data into block instructions:

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Step 1 – Press [DISPLAY] 0 or 1 for data monitor mode.

Step 2 – Press [SEARCH] 51 for on-line data change.

Step 3 – Enter file data, if necessary.

Step 4 – Press [CANCEL COMMAND] to terminate on-line data change.

Step 5 – Verify file data and/or data words.

Step 6 – Press [CANCEL COMMAND] to terminate data monitor mode.

Remove an Instruction

A condition instruction can be removed using the following procedure (refer to Editing, Section 4.4.4, if necessary):

Step 1 – Position the cursor on the instruction to be removed.

Step 2 – Press [REMOVE][Key sequence of the instruction].

Step 3 – Press [RECORD].



CAUTION: When the [RECORD] key is pressed, the instruction will be removed immediately. If the removal of the instruction causes the rung logic to become true, the output will be enabled immediately.

NOTE: Bit values and the data of word instructions are not cleared. However, the input image table bits are rewritten during the next I/O scan.

Insert a Rung

A rung can be inserted into an existing program in the following manner (refer to Editing, Section 4.4.4, if necessary):

Step 1 – Position the cursor on any instruction of the preceding rung.

Step 2 – Press [INSERT][RUNG].

Step 3 – Enter the instructions, one at a time, using the [RECORD] key to enter each instruction.

The insert rung becomes active only after the output instruction is entered.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

CAUTION: If the rung logic is true, the output instruction will be enabled immediately. Before pressing the [RECORD] key for the output instruction, verify that each instruction has been entered with no errors.

Remove a Rung

A completed rung can be removed using the following procedure (refer to Editing, Section 4.4.4, if necessary):

Step 1 – Position the cursor on any instruction in the rung..

Step 2 – Press [REMOVE][RUNG][RECORD].

CAUTION: The rung will be removed immediately. If the rung was used to control an output, the consequences of removal in terms of machine operation should be assessed beforehand.

NOTE: Only bits corresponding to the output energize, latch, and unlatch instructions are cleared to zero. All other word and bit addresses are not cleared when the rung is removed.

Change an Instruction or Instruction Address

An instruction can be replaced or the address of an instruction can be changed using the following procedure (refer to Editing, Section 4.4.4, if necessary):

Step 1 – Place the cursor on the instruction to be changed.

Step 2 – Press the desired instruction key or key sequence of the instruction.

Step 3 – Use the [DATA INIT] key, if appropriate.

Step 4 – Enter the instruction address(es) and parameters.

Step 5 – Verify that the instruction is correctly entered.

Step 6 – Press the [RECORD] key.

If the substituted instruction is a block instruction requiring the entry of file data, the rung containing the instruction should be held false until the

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

data has been entered using the data monitor mode. See Insert an Instruction, above.



WARNING: When the [RECORD] key is pressed, the substituted instruction is entered into memory immediately. If the rung is true, the output instruction will be enabled and will instantly energize the output device. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

NOTE: Bit values and the data of word instructions are not cleared when an instruction is replaced by another.

NOTE: If only the data of an instruction is to be changed, use the on-line data change procedure described in Section 4.4.4.

Correct an Error

An error can be corrected during on-line programming any time before the [RECORD] key is pressed using either of the following procedures:

Step 1 – Using the [→] and [←] cursor control keys, cursor back the digit containing the error and correct it.

Step 2 – Press the [CANCEL COMMAND] key. It restores the ladder diagram display and program logic to the original instruction and address(es).

When inserting a rung, an error can be corrected before the output instruction is entered (before the [RECORD] key is pressed) by either of the following procedures:

Step 1 – Complete the rung by using an output energize instruction addressed to an unused storage bit.

Step 2 – If the instruction being inserted is in error, press the [CANCEL COMMAND] key to abort.

When either of these are done, proceed as follows:

Step 1 – Cursor to the instruction containing the error and correct it.

Step 2 – Enter the desired output instruction.

Step 3 – Verify that the inserted rung is correct.

Step 4 – Press the [RECORD] key.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The rung will become active immediately.

Programming Interruptions

If communication between the industrial terminal and processor is interrupted when programming on-line in run/program mode, a rung could be left incomplete (no output instruction). Upon initialization of the industrial terminal, if an incomplete rung is thought to exist, proceed as follows:

Step 1 – Locate the incomplete rung using the key sequence [SHIFT][SEARCH].

Step 2 – Place the cursor at the end of the rung.

Step 3 – Complete the rung by changing the blank output to the desired output instruction using the procedure, Changing an Instruction, Section 4.4.5.

4.4.6 Clearing Memory

The option of clearing the data table, user program and messages is available with various clear memory functions. When memory write protect is active, memory cannot be cleared except data between and including address 010–377 in the data table. The clearing memory instructions are summarized in Table 4.E.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 4.E
Clear Memory Functions[1]

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Data Table Clear	Program	[CLEAR MEMORY] [7] [7] [Start Address] [End Address] [CLEAR MEMORY]	Displays a start address and an end address field. Start and end word addresses determine boundaries for Data Table clearing. Clears the Data Table within and including addressed boundaries.
User Program Clear	Program	[CLEAR MEMORY] [8] [8]	Position the cursor at the desired location in the program. Clears User Program from the position of the cursor to the first boundary TEMPORARY END, SUBROUTINE AREA, or END statement. Does not clear Data Table or Messages.
Partial Memory Clear	Program	[CLEAR MEMORY] [9] [9]	Clears User Program and messages from position of the cursor. Does not clear Data Table.
Total Memory Clear	Program	[SEARCH] [ ] [CLEAR MEMORY] [9] [9]	Position the cursor on the first instruction of the program. Clears total memory (Data Table, User Program, and Messages).

[1] When Memory Write Protect is active, memory cannot be cleared except for Data Table addresses 010-377.

Data Table Clear

Part of all of the data table can be cleared by pressing [CLEAR MEMORY] 77, entering a start and end word address, and then pressing [CLEAR MEMORY] again. The data table will be cleared between and including these two word addresses. When memory write protect is active, the data table can be cleared only between and including addresses 010-377.

User Program Clear

Part or all of the user program can be cleared by pressing [CLEAR MEMORY] 88. The user program will be cleared from the cursor position to the first boundary: temporary end instruction, subroutine area or END statement. Neither the data table nor messages are cleared.

Partial Memory Clear

Part of the user program and the messages can be cleared by pressing [CLEAR MEMORY] 99. The user program and messages are cleared from the cursor position which cannot be on the first instruction. None of the bits in the data table are cleared.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Total Memory Clear

The complete memory can be cleared by positioning the cursor on the first instruction of the program and then pressing [CLEAR MEMORY] 99. This resets all the data table bits to zero. A total memory clear should be done before entering the user program.

4.5 Program Recommendations

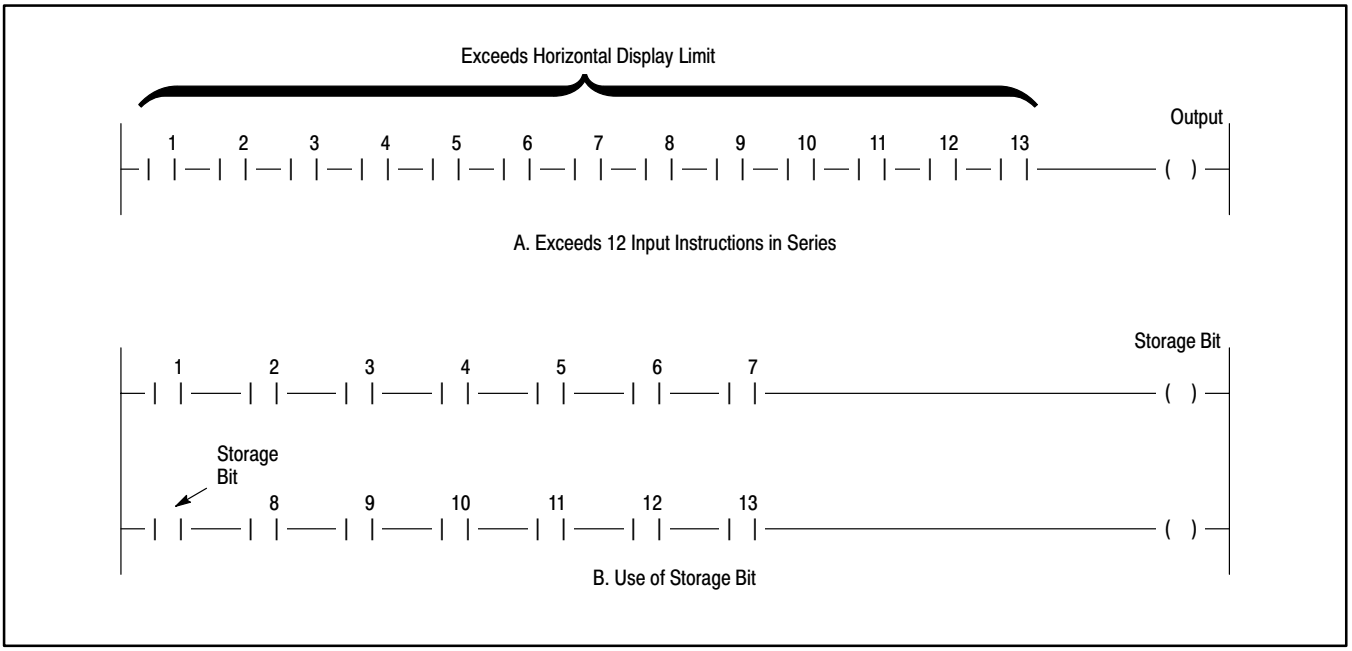
The program recommendations listed below for constructing a ladder diagram rung should be considered.

NOTE: A condition instruction is defined as a nonblock input instruction. Special considerations are given for multiply, divide and block instructions. The rung size limitations exist because of the industrial terminal screen size.

- Only one output instruction can be programmed in a rung.
- Program only one rung to energize an output device to simplify troubleshooting and maximize safety.
- Up to 12 condition instructions in series can be programmed in a rung.
- Up to 11 condition instructions in series can be programmed in a rung if the output is a multiply or divide instruction.
- When the desired number of series conditions exceeds the horizontal limit of the screen (Figure 4.16a), use a storage bit to make two rungs (Figure 4.16b).
- Up to 7 parallel branches can be programmed in a rung provided all the inputs are condition instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 4.16
Storage Bit Example



Recommendations for Block Instructions

- Up to 8 condition instructions in series can be programmed in a rung if the output is a block instruction.
- Up to 8 series condition instructions can be used with a Sequencer Input instruction if the output is not a block instruction.
- Up to 4 series condition instructions can be used with a Sequencer Input instruction if the output is a block instruction.
- Up to 2 branches containing condition instructions can be used in parallel with a Sequencer Input instruction.
- Up to 9 series condition instructions can be used with an Examine On or Examine Off Shift Bit instruction if the output is not a block instruction.
- Up to 5 series condition instructions can be used with an Examine On or Off Shift Bit instruction if the output is a block instruction.
- Up to 3 series condition instructions can be used with a Sequencer Input and an Examine On or Off Shift Bit in series if the output is not a block instruction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- One series condition instruction can be used with a Sequencer Input and an Examine On or Off Shift Bit in series if the output is a block instruction.
- Up to 4 Examine On or Off Shift Bit instructions can be used in series if the output is not a block instruction.
- Up to 3 Examine On or Off Shift Bit instructions can be used in series if the output is a block instruction.
- Up to 4 branches containing condition instructions can be used in parallel with an Examine On or Off Shift Bit instruction.
- Up to 3 parallel branches containing Examine On or Off Shift Bit instructions can be programmed in a rung.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 5

Timer and Counter Instructions

5.0 General

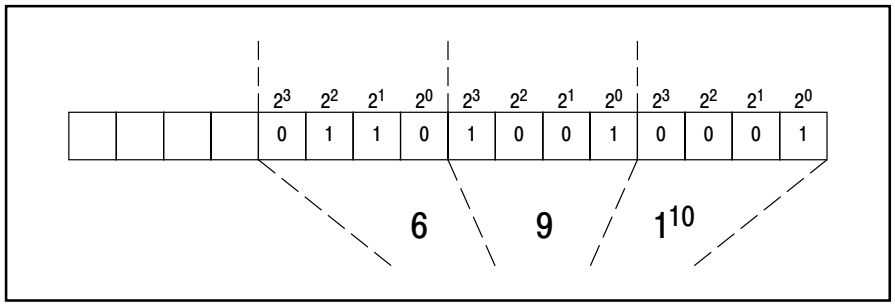
Timer and Counter instructions are output instructions internal to the processor. They provide many of the capabilities available with timing relays and solid state timing/counting devices. Usually conditioned by examine instructions, timers and counters keep track of timed intervals or counted events according to the logic continuity of the rung.

Each Timer or Counter instruction has two 3-digit values associated with it, and thus requires two words of data table memory. These 3-digit values are:

- Accumulated (AC) Value – Stored in the accumulated value area of the data table. For timers, this is the number of timed intervals that have elapsed. For counters, this is the number of events that have been counted.
- Preset (PR) Value – Stored in the preset value area of the data table, always 100_8 words greater than its corresponding AC value. This value is entered into memory by the user. The preset value is the number of timed intervals or events to be counted. When the accumulated value equals the preset value, a status bit is set on and can be examined to turn on an output device.

The Accumulated and Preset values are stored in the data table in 3-digit BCD (binary coded decimal) format. BCD numbers can range from 000 to 999 and are stored in the lower 12 bits of a memory word (Figure 5.1). Each BCD digit is represented by a group of 4 bits. The arrangement of 1 and 0 in a group of 4 bits corresponds to a decimal number from 0 to 9. For more information on number systems, refer to Appendix B.

Figure 5.1
BCD Format



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

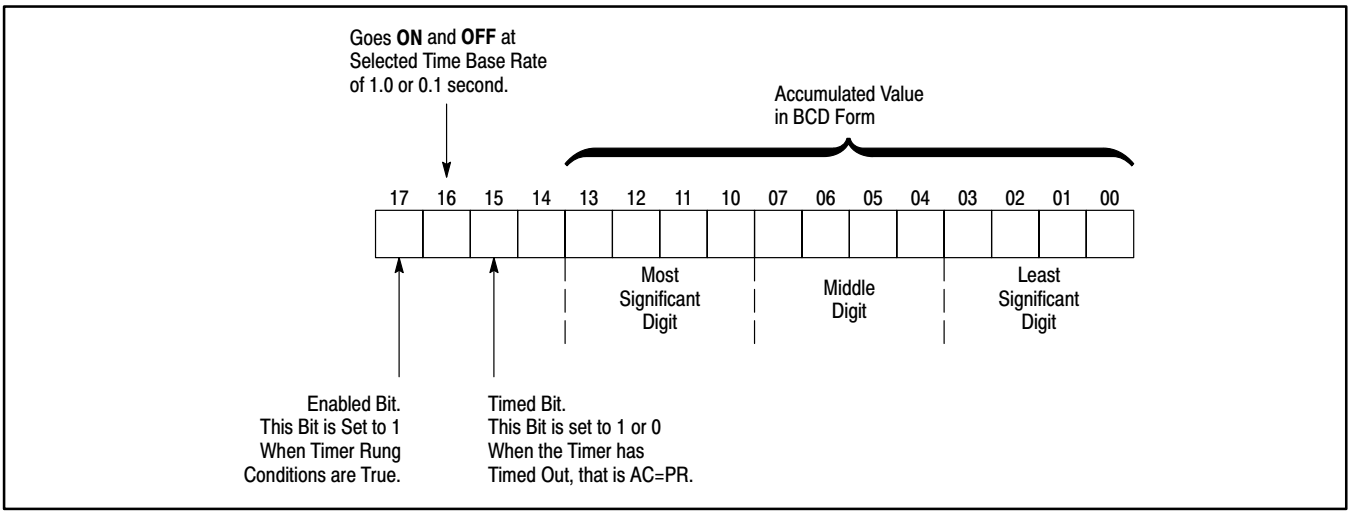
The remaining 4 bits in a word (bits 14-17) are not used to form a BCD number. In the accumulated value word, they are used as status bits. In the preset value word, they are not used and are available for internal storage provided data is not transferred to the preset word by a Get/Put transfer. With .01 sec timers these bits are used for internal timing functions and cannot be used for storage.

The processor requires time to monitor the status of the I/O image tables and execute instructions in the users program. Every instruction requires execution time each scan whether the rungs condition instructions are true or false unless the instruction is skipped by a Jump instruction.

5.1 Timer Instructions

A timer counts elapsed time-base intervals and stores this count in its accumulated value word. When timing is complete (when AC = PR), bit 15 is either set on or off depending on the type of timer instruction. For all timers, bit 17 is set on when rung conditions are true and is set off when they are false. Both status bits are located in the accumulated value word (Figure 5.2).

Figure 5.2
Timer Accumulated Value Word



The three types of timers available with the PLC-2/30 processor are:

- Timer On-Delay –(TON)–
- Timer Off-Delay –(TOF)–
- Retentive Timer –(RTO)–

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

All three timers differ in the way they set and reset status bits, respond to rung logic continuity and reset the accumulated value. With each timer, the programmer must select one of the following time bases:

- 1.0 second
- 0.1 second
- 0.01 second (10 milliseconds)

Bit 16 of the timer accumulated value word reflects the time base. It will go on and off at the selected time base rate acting as a pulse train (Figure 5.2) except for 10 ms timers.

5.1.1 Timer On-Delay Instruction

The Timer On-Delay instruction (TON) can be used to turn a device on or off once an interval is timed out (Figure 5.3).

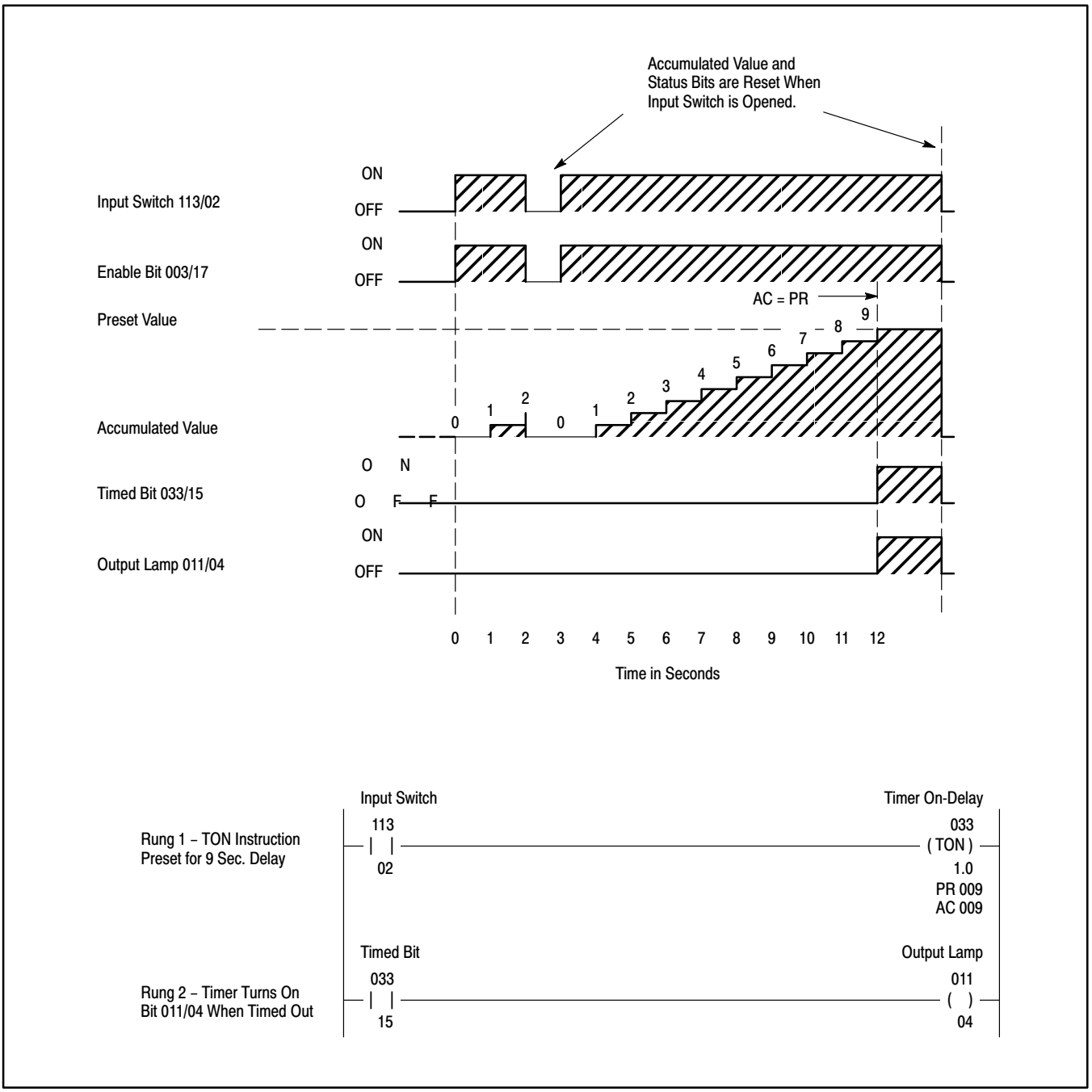
When rung conditions for a Timer On-Delay instruction (rung 1) become true, the timer begins to count time-base intervals. As long as conditions remain true, it increments its accumulated value word for each counted interval. When the accumulated value equals the programmed preset value, the timer stops incrementing its accumulated value and sets the timed bit, bit 15, of this word on. Bit 15 may then be used to turn an output device on or off (rung 2).

Bit 17 of the accumulated value word is termed the enabled bit. It is set on whenever the rung conditions are true and the timer is enabled.

Whenever the rung conditions for the TON instruction go false, the accumulated value is reset to 000 and bits 15 and 17 of that word are reset to zero. The accumulated value and status bits are also reset when the mode select switch is turned to the program position or when there is a loss of power.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 5.3
Timer On-Delay, Timing Diagram for a Preset Value of 9 Seconds



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5.1.2 Timer Off-Delay Instruction

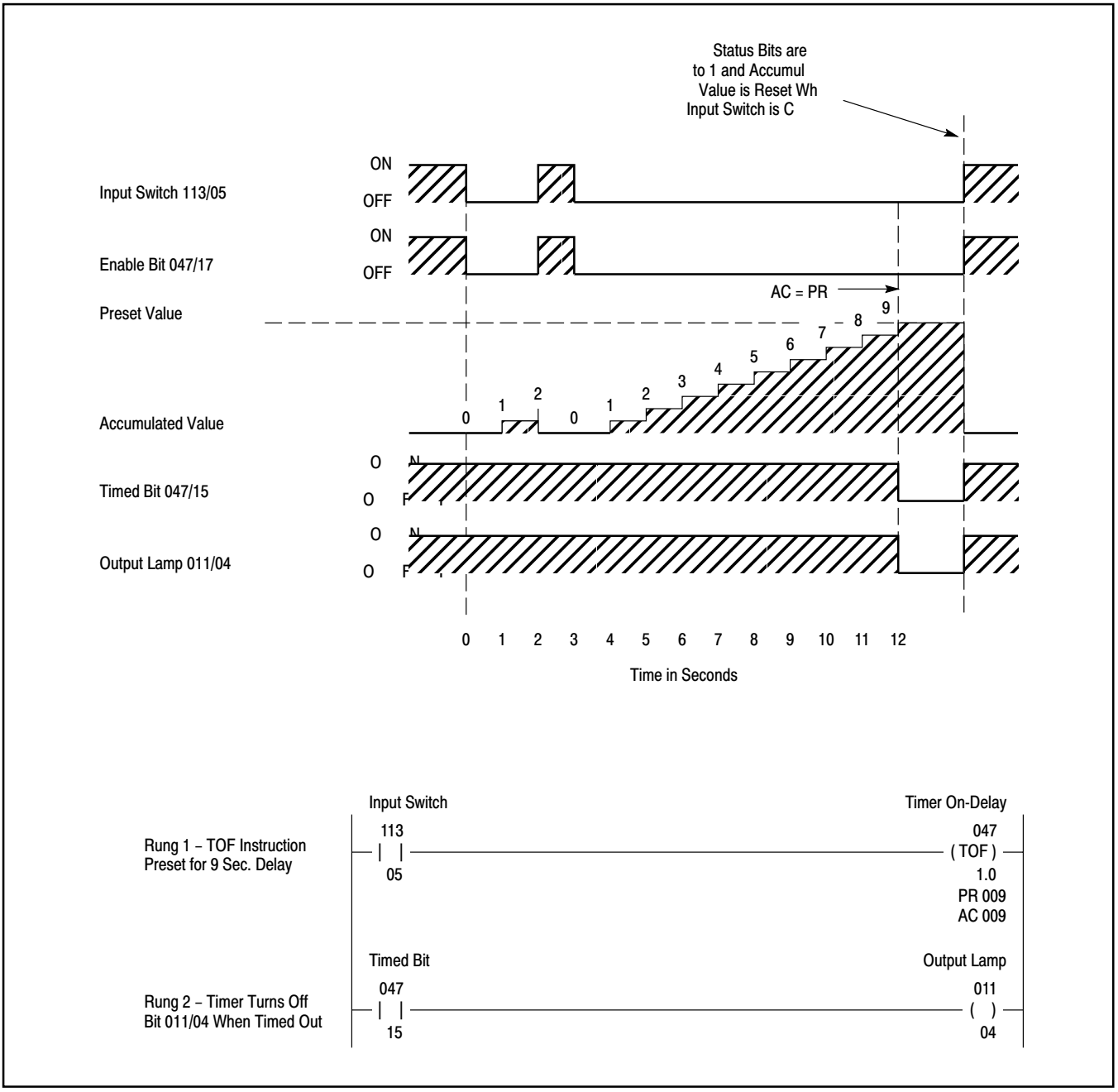
The Timer Off-Delay instruction (TOF) can be used to turn a device on or off after a timed interval (Figure 5.4). Like the other timer instructions, the TOF instruction counts time-base intervals and stores this count in its accumulated value. The TOF instruction, however, varies from the other instructions in significant ways.

The Timer Off-Delay instruction begins to time an interval as soon as its rung conditions go false. The enable bit, bit 17, goes false when the timer begins (rung 1). As long as its rung conditions remain false, the TOF continues to time, until the accumulated value equals the preset value. When the TOF times out, bit 15 is set to zero (off) which turns off the output (rung 2). As the rung conditions go true, bit 15 is set on and the accumulated value is reset to 000.

Bit 17, the enabled bit, is controlled by the logic continuity of the rung. When the rung is true, bit 17 is set to one (on); when it is false, bit 17 is set to zero (off).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 5.4
Timer Off-Delay, Timing Diagram for a Preset Value of 9 Seconds

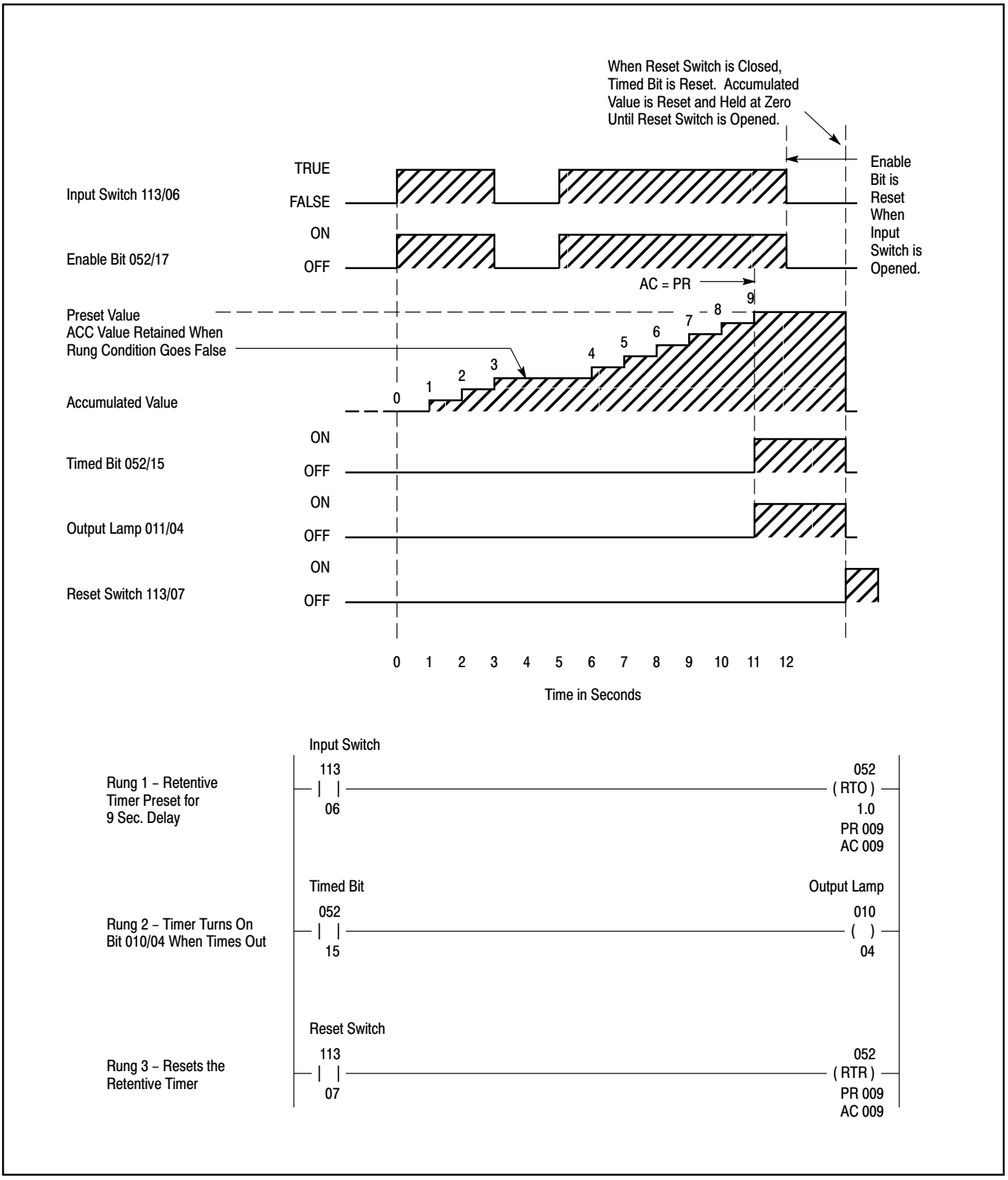


5.1.3
Retentive Timer Instruction

The Retentive Timer instruction (RTO), much like the TON instruction, is typically used to turn a device on or off once a programmed preset value is reached (Figure 5.5).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 5.5
Retentive Timer with Retentive Timer Reset Timing Diagram



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Unlike the Timer On-Delay instruction, the Retentive Timer instruction retains its accumulated value (Figure 5.5) when any of the following conditions occur:

- Rung conditions go false
- Mode select switch is changed to the program position
- Power outage occurs provided memory backup power is maintained for CMOS RAM memory

When rung conditions go true, the enabled bit (bit 17) is set on and the timer starts counting time base intervals. Any time the rung goes false, bit 17 is set off but the accumulated value is retained. When the timer times out, the timed bit (bit 15) is set on (Figure 5.5).

By retaining its accumulated value the RTO instruction measures the cumulative period during which rung conditions are true. Because this timer retains its accumulated value, it must be reset by a separate instruction, the Retentive Timer Reset (RTR) instruction.

5.1.4 Retentive Timer Reset Instruction

The Retentive Timer Reset instruction (RTR) is used to reset the accumulated value and timed bit of the retentive timer (Figure 5.5, rung 3) to zero. This instruction is given the same word address as its corresponding RTO instruction (Figure 5.5). When rung conditions go true, the RTR instruction resets the AC value and status bits of the RTO instruction to zero.

5.1.5 Timer Accuracy for 10ms Timers

The accuracy of a 10ms timer is related to nominal scan time. When scan times are 9ms or less, the 10ms timer is accurate to plus or minus one time base (±10.0ms). When scan time is greater than 9ms, accuracy of ±10ms can be achieved through special programming techniques described in Programming 0.01 Second Timers With the Mini-PLC-2 Controller Application Data, publication no. 1772-702.

5.2 Counter Instructions

Four types of counter instructions are available with the PLC-2/30 Controller:

- Up-Controller (CTU)
- Counter Reset (CTR)
- Down-Counter (CTD)
- Scan Counter (SCT)

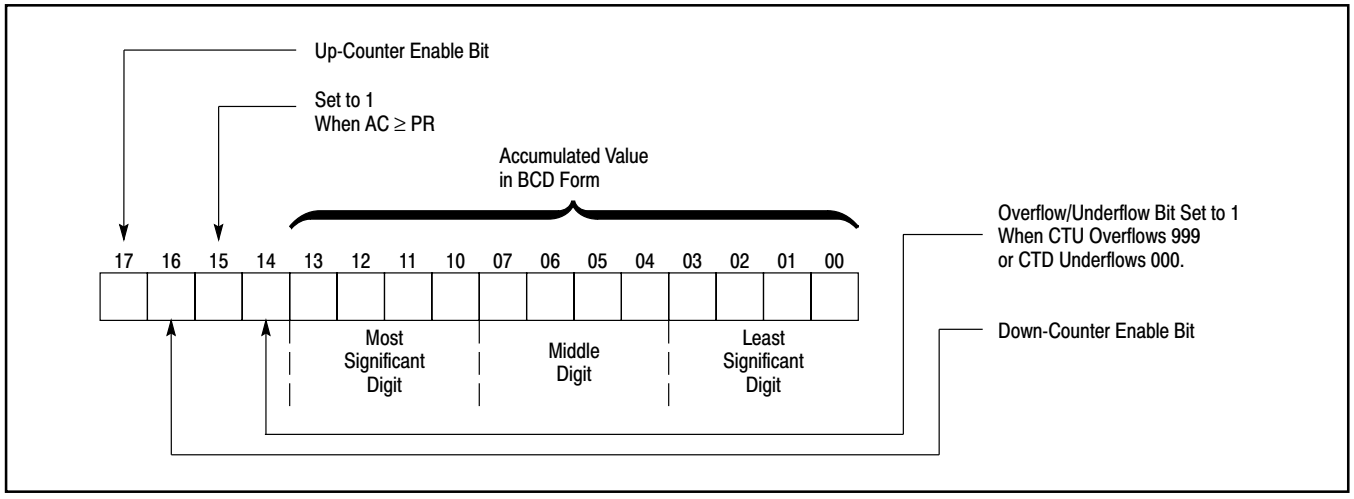
A counter counts the number of events that occur and stores this count in its accumulated value word. The remaining four bits in the accumulated value word are used as status bits (Figure 5.6).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- Bit 14 is the overflow/underflow bit. It is set to one when the AC value of the CTU exceeds 999 or the AC value of the CTD goes below 000.
- Bit 15 (the Done bit) is set to one when a count has been reached or exceeded, that is, when the AC value is ≥ PR value.
- Bit 16 is the enabled bit for a CTD instruction. It is set on when rung conditions are true.
- Bit 17 is the enabled bit for a CTU instruction. It is set on when rung conditions are true.

Counter instructions differ from Timer instructions in that they have no time base. They count one event each false-to-true transition of the rung.

Figure 5.6
Counter Accumulated Value Word



5.2.1 Up-Counter Instruction

The Up-Counter (CTU) instruction increments its accumulated value for each false-to-true transition of rung conditions (Figure 5.7). Because only the false-to-true transition causes a count to be made, rung conditions must go from true to false and back to true before the next count is registered (Figure 5.7). The CTU instruction retains its accumulated value when:

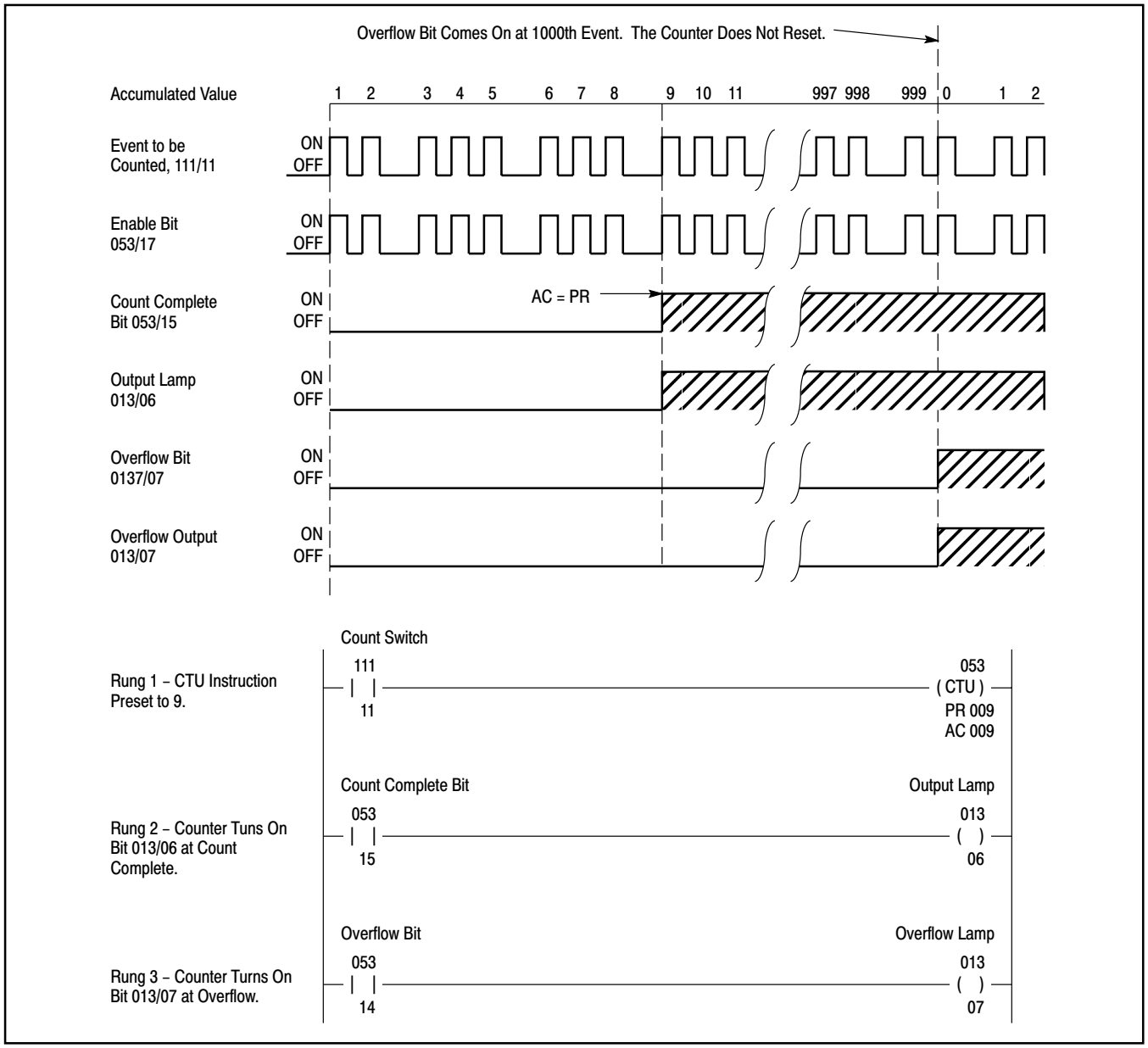
- Mode select switch is changed to the PROGRAM position
- Rung conditions go false
- Power outage occurs provided memory backup power is maintained for RAM memory

Each time the CTU rung goes true, bit 17, the Enabled bit, is set on. When the accumulated value reaches the preset value, bit 15 is set on. Unlike a

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

timer, the CTU instruction continues to increment its accumulated value after the preset value has been reached. If the accumulated value goes above 999, bit 14 is set on to indicate an overflow condition and the CTU continues up-counting from 000. Bit 14 can be examined to cascade counters for counts greater than 999 (Section 5.3).

Figure 5.7
Up-Counter Diagram and Programming for Preset = 9



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

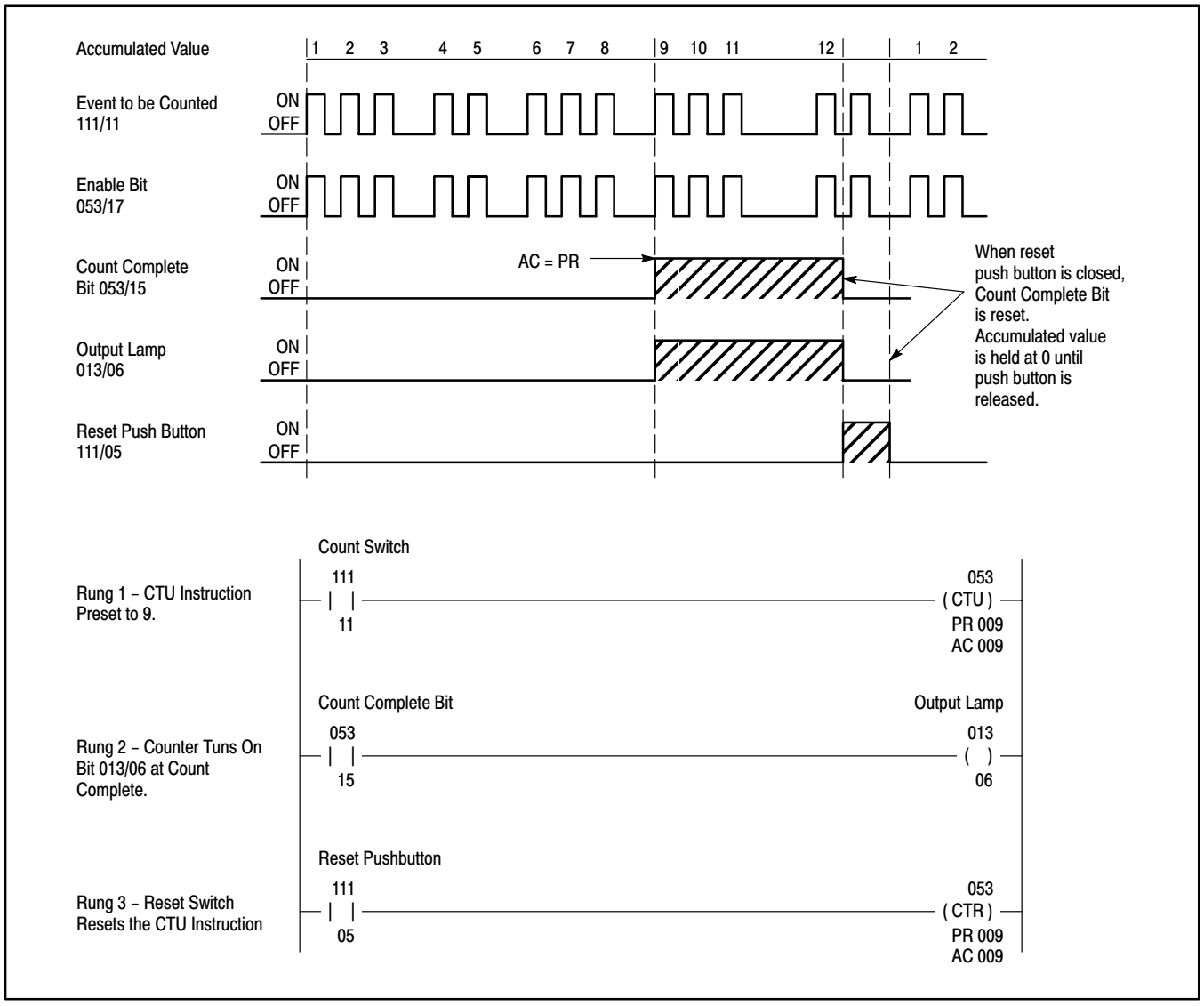
5.2.2 Counter Reset Instruction

The Counter Reset (CTR) instruction is an output instruction that resets the CTU accumulated value and status bits to zero.

The counter operates in the same manner as described for the CTU instruction, with the addition of the reset instruction in rung 3 (Figure 5.8). In this example, the reset push button is pressed after count 11. The next event starts the sequence at count 1.

The CTR instruction is given the same word address as the CTU instruction. The Preset and Accumulated Values are automatically displayed when the word address is entered (Figure 5.8).

Figure 5.8
Counter with Reset Diagram for Preset = 9 and Programming



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5.2.3 Down-Counter Instruction

The Down-Counter (CTD) instruction subtracts one from its Accumulated Value for each false-to-true transition of its rung conditions (Figure 5.9). Because only the false-to-true transition causes a count to be made, rung conditions must go from true to false and back to true before the next count is registered.

Figure 5.9
Down-Counter Instruction



The CTD accumulated value is retained when:

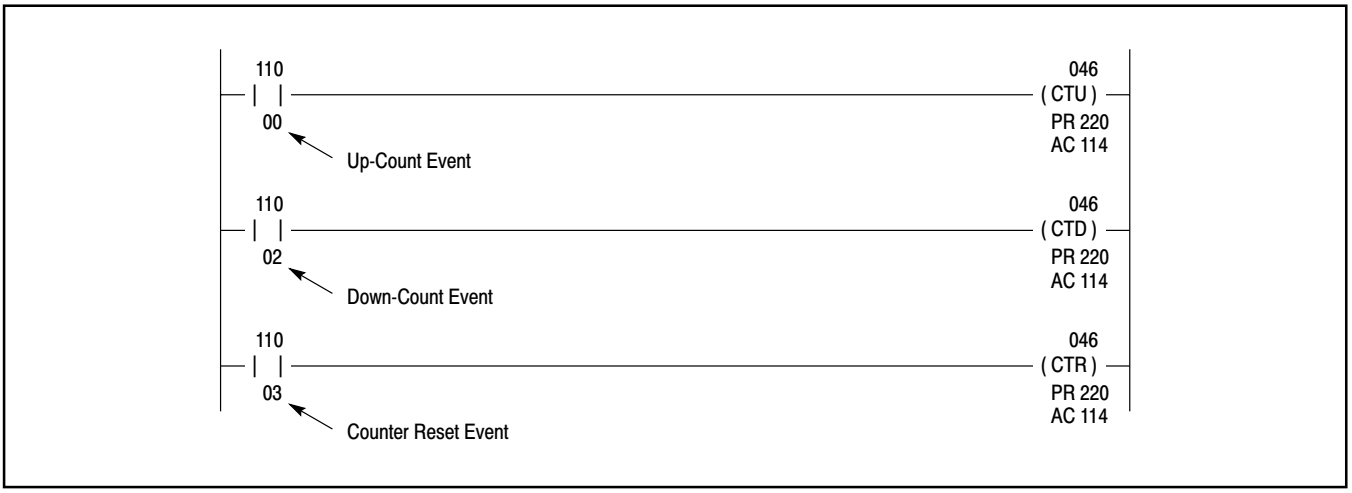
- Mode Select Switch is changed to the PROGRAM position
- Rung conditions go false
- Power outage occurs provided memory backup power is maintained for CMOS RAM memory

Each time the CTD rung goes true, bit 16, the enabled bit, is set on. When the Accumulated Value is greater than or equal to the Preset Value, bit 15 is set on. When the Accumulated Value goes below 000, bit 14 is set on to indicate an underflow condition and the CTD continues down-counting from 999.

Normally, the Down-Counter instruction is paired with the Up-Counter instruction to form an Up/Down Counter, using the same word address, AC value and PR value (Figure 5.10).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 5.10
Up-Down Counter Example



NOTE: Bit 14 of the Accumulated Value word is set on when the Accumulated Value either overflows or underflows. When a Down-Counter Preset is set to 000, underflow bit 14 is not set on when the count goes below zero.

When used alone, the CTD accumulated value may need to be reset in the program to its original value (usually a value other than 000). For this reason, a Get/Put transfer (Section 6.1), rather than a CTR instruction, is usually used to load a value in the CTD Accumulated Value word. Get/Put instructions are discussed in Section 6.1.

5.2.4 Scan Counter Instruction

This output instruction is similar to a standard counter instruction. During a true rung condition, the Accumulated Value is incremented once per program scan (Figure 5.11). Unlike counters, however, the scan counter does not count past the preset and resets when the rung goes false, power is lost or the keyswitch is turned to program mode.

Figure 5.11
Scan Counter Instruction



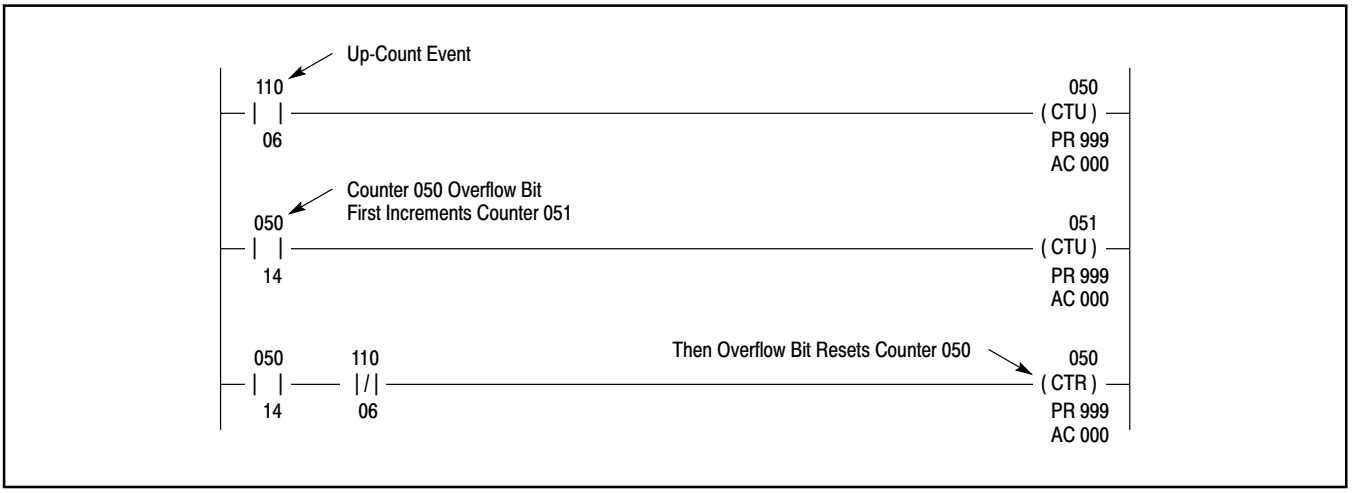
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5.3 Cascading Timers or Counters

An individual timer or counter can time or count up to 999 intervals or events. By cascading two or more timers or counters, the timing or counting capability within the program can be increased beyond three digits.

To cascade timers or counters, each timer or counter is assigned a different word address (Figure 5.12). The status bit of the first timer (bit 15) changes status each time the preset value is reached. The status bit of a counter (bit 14) is set on each time a counter overflows. The status bit of the timer or counter is then used to increment the second timer or counter and reset the first to 000.

Figure 5.12
Cascading Counters Example



5.4 Programming Timer and Counter Instructions

Timer and Counter instructions are entered into memory with the processor in the program mode.

Timer instructions are programmed by entering a word address, a time base and a Preset Value. With the RTO instruction, the user can also enter an Accumulated Value. The time base of 1.0 sec., 0.1 sec. or 0.01 sec. is entered as 10, 01, or 00 respectively.

Counter instructions are programmed by entering a word address, a Preset Value, and if desired, an Accumulated Value.

When entered, these instructions will be displayed as intensified and blinking. The default word address above the instruction will have a reverse-video cursor positioned at the first digit. The default word address displayed will depend on the data table configuration (Table 5.A). Refer to Tables 5.B and 5.C for a complete summary of the instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The default word address can be 3, 4 or 5 digits provided the data table is sized accordingly. Unlike bit instructions, the [EXPAND ADDR] key is not required. Instead, the industrial terminal automatically enters a 4- or 5-digit default word address depending on the data table size. When a 4- or 5-digit word address is displayed and a 3- or 4-digit word address is required, the programmer must enter leading zeros before the word address.

Table 5.A
Timer/Counter Default Word Address

# I/O Racks	T/C Address
1	010
2	030
3	040
4	050
5	060
6	070
7	200

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 5.B
Timer Instructions

NOTE: The Timer word address, XXX, is assigned to the timer Accumulated areas of the Data Table. To determine which addresses are valid accumulated areas, the 3rd digit from the right in the word address must be even.

The time base, TB, is user-selectable and can be 1.0 sec., 0.1 sec., or 0.01 sec. Preset values, YYY, and Accumulated values, ZZZ, can vary from 000 to 999.

The word address displayed will be 3, 4, or 5 digits long depending on the Data Table size. When entering the word address, use a leading zero if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–(TON)–	TIMER ON DELAY	XXX –(TON)– TB PR YYY AC ZZZ	When the rung is TRUE, the timer begins to increment the Accumulated Value at a rate specified by the time base. When the rung is FALSE, the timer resets the Accumulated Value to 000. See Note.
–(TOF)–	TIMER OFF DELAY	XXX –(TOF)– TB PR YYY AC ZZZ	When the rung is FALSE, the timer begins to increment the Accumulated Value. When the rung is TRUE, the timer resets the Accumulated Value to 000. See Note.
–(RTO)–	RETENTIVE TIMER	XXX –(RTO)– TB PR YYY AC ZZZ	When teh rung is TRUE, the timer begins to increment the Accumulated value. When FALSE, the Accumulated value is retained. It is reset only by the RTR instruction. See Note.
–(RTR)–	RETENTIVE TIMER RESET	XXX –(RTR)– PR YYY AC ZZZ	XXX – Word address of the retentive timer it is resetting. YYY – Preset Value automatically entered by the Industrial Terminal. ZZZ – Accumulated Value automatically entered by the Industrial Terminal. When the rung is TRUE, the Accumulated Value and status bit are reset to zero. See Note.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 5.C
Counter Instructions

NOTE: The Counter word address, XXX, is assigned to the counter Accumulated areas of the Data Table. To determine which addresses are valid accumulated areas, the 3rd digit from the right in the word address must be even.

The word address displayed will be 3, 4, or 5 digits long depending on the Data Table Size. When entering the word address, use a leading zero if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–(CTU)–	UP COUNTER	XXX –(CTU)– PR YYY AC ZZZ	Each time the rung goes TRUE, the Accumulated Value is incremented one count. The counter will continue counting after the Preset Value is reached. See Note. The Accumulated Value can be reset by the CTR instruction. The Accumulated Value "Overflow" bit is bit 14. See Note.
–(CTR)–	COUNTER RESET	XXX –(CTR)– PR YYY AC ZZZ	XXX – Word address of the CTU it is resetting. YYY – Preset Value automatically entered by the Industrial Terminal. ZZZ – Accumulated Value automatically entered by the Industrial Terminal. When the rung is TRUE, the CTU Accumulated Value and status bits are reset to 000. See Note.
–(CTD)–	DOWN COUNTER	XXX –(CTD)– PR YYY AC ZZZ	Each time the rung goes TRUE, the Accumulated Value is decreased one count. The Accumulated Value "Underflow" bit is bit 14. The Enable bit is bit 16. See Note.
–(SCT)–	SCAN COUNTER	XXX –(SCT)– PR YYY AC ZZZ	When the rung is true, the Accumulated Value is increased once each scan.

5.5 Scan Time and Instruction Execution Times

Execution time depends upon the type of instruction, the amount of data operated upon and whether the instruction is true or false.

5.5.1 Scan Time

Scan time is the time required to monitor and update I/O and to execute instructions requested by the program. The scan is performed serially. First the I/O image tables are updated, then the user program is scanned.

Scan time can increase during scans where subroutines are executed and decrease when jump instructions are used to skip over portions of the program without scanning them.

Nominal scan time is 6 ms for 1K of memory. The scan time is increased by approximately 4% or one millisecond, whichever is greater, when the industrial terminal is connected to the processor and approximately 8% or

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

one millisecond, whichever is greater, when a data highway interface module is connected to the processor.

5.5.2 Program for Determining Scan Time

The instruction execution times given in Section 5.6 enable the programmer to estimate scan time for a planned program. The program shown in Figure 5.13 will determine and display the average scan time during program operation:

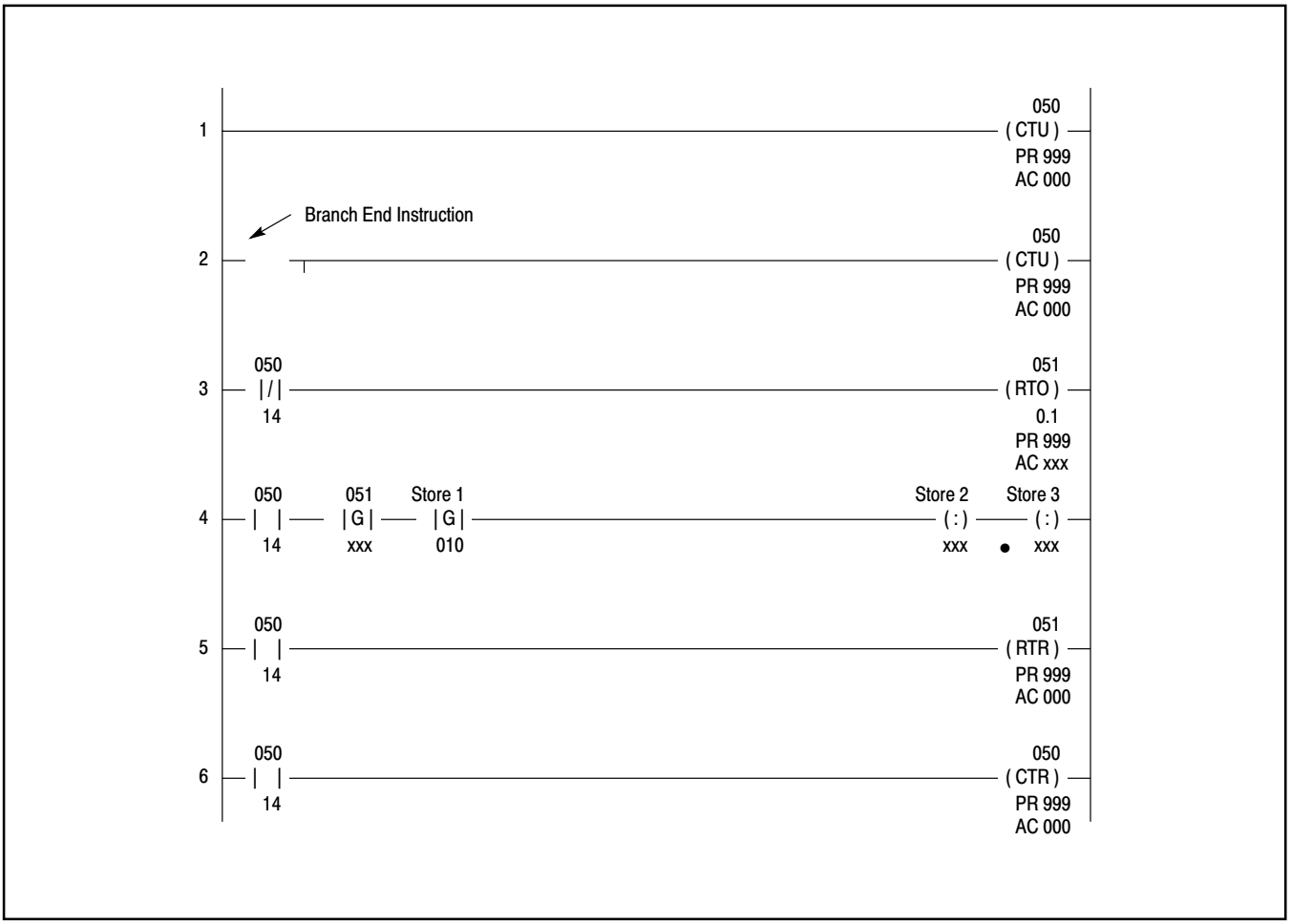
- Rung 1 and 2 count the number of scans. At the 1000th scan bit 14 (overflow bit) comes on.
- Rung 3 times the first 1000 scans. When the counter overflows, the timer stops.
- Rung 4 gets the value of the timer after 1000 scans and displays it in milliseconds as the result of the divide instruction.
- Rung 5 and 6 reset the counter and timer.



WARNING: The lower limit of input device cycle time should not be less than the scan time of the processor. If so, incorrect input data could be used during program execution. Critical inputs can be monitored and critical outputs can be controlled in an accelerated manner using the I/O update instructions described in Section 7.2.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 5.13
Program for Determining Average Scan Time



5.6 Instruction Execution Time

To enable the programmer to estimate the scan time a proposed program may require, the average execution times required for PLC-2/30 instructions are presented in Tables 5.D through 5.G.

5.6.1 Relay Type, Timer and Counter, Data Manipulations, Arithmetic, Output Override and I/O Update, Jump, and Subroutine Instructions

Table 5.D contains average execution times for instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

5.6.2 Word-to-File, Sequencers, FIFO, Word and Bit Shifts, File Diagnostic, File Search, and Block Transfer Instructions

Table 5.E contains longer execution times for more complicated instructions. Note that all of the Table 5.E instruction execution times are affected by file lengths and are longer for larger files.

Other factors affecting execution are explained below for specific instructions.

Sequencer instructions: These instructions also vary with the number of words per step (width) of the sequencer. The words per step varies from 1 to 4 (Chapter 15). For example, the execution time for a sequencer load instruction, 18 words long, and 3 words wide (3 words per step) is (see Table C.A)

T = 60 + (27.8)(3) = 60 + 83.4 = 143 microseconds

The Shift File's and Bit Shift's instruction execution times include a factor that is a multiple of the number of words in the file. For example a Shift File down instruction having a file 18 words long has an execution time (see Table 5.E)

T = 107 + (7.4)(18) = 107 + 133.2 = 240 microseconds

File Search and File Diagnostic instructions must be increased by a factor that is a multiple of the number of words searched before a match or error is found. For example, the instruction execution time of a File Search instruction which locates a match in the 13th word of a 20 word file is (see Table 5.E)

T = 68 + 4.6 (13) = 68 + 59.8 = 128 microseconds

Block transfer instructions: In addition to the 19 microseconds of instruction execution time, the I/O scan is interrupted while data is transferred. For local systems, the delay is (100 microseconds + 80 microseconds x the number of words transferred) for each block transfer performed. Consult module user's manuals for details.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 5.D
Average Execution Times for Instructions Described In Chapters 3 Through 8 When Instruction is TRUE

Instruction Name	Symbol	Execution Time in Microseconds
Examine On[1]	–| |–	4
Examine Off[1]	–| / |–	4
Output Energize[1]	–( )–	4.8
Output Latch[1]	–(L)–	4.8
Output Unlatch[1]	–(U) –	4.8
Timer On-Delay[1]	–(TON)–	18.6
Timer Off-Delay[1]	–(TOF)–	18.6
Retentive Timer-On Delay[1]	–(RTO)–	18.6
Retentive Timer Reset[1]	–(RTR)–	4.8
Up Counter[1]	–(CTU)–	19.6
Down Counter[1]	–(CTD)–	19.6
Scan Counter[1]	–(SCT)–	17.6
Counter Reset[1]	–(CTR)–	4.8
Get[1]	–| G |–	5.8
Put[1]	–(PUT)–	6.6
Les[1]	–| < |–	7.4
Equ[1]	–| = |–	6.6
Get Byte[1]	–| B |–	4.5
Limit Test[1]	–| L |–	4.5
Add[1]	–(+)–	8.6
Subtract[1]	–(–)–	8.6
Multiply[1]	–(x)–	51.0
Divide[1]	–(:)–(:)–	91.0
BCD-BIN[1]	[CONVERT] [0]	59.6
BIN-BCD[1]	[CONVERT] [1]	37.2
Branch Start[1]	⌜	3.2
Branch End[1]	⌟	3.2
Zone Control Last State[1] [2]	–(ZCL)–	7.6
Master Control Reset[1]	–(MCR)–	3.6
Immediate Input[1]	–| I |–	62.2
Immediate Output[1]	–(IOT)–	77.4
Jump	–(JMP)–	13.4
Jump to Subroutine	–(JSR)–	12.0
Label	– LBL –	3.8
Return	–(RET)–	6.4
End	[END]	<1
Temporary End	[T.END]	<1
Subroutine Area	[SHIFT] [SBR]	<1

[1] For this instruction, add 3.4 microseconds when its address is > 400_8..

[2] Instructions within zone increase by 1.2 microseconds per word when the zone controls outputs.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 5.E
Average Execution Times for Word-To-File, Sequencers, Word and Bit Shifts, File Diagnostic, File Search and Block Transfer Instructions

Instruction	Average Execution Time in Microseconds	
	False	**True**
Word-To-File Move File-To-Word Move Word-To-File AND, OR, XOR	<1 <1 <1	48 49 75
Sequencer Load Sequencer In Sequencer Out	17 <1 17	60 + (27.8 x # words/step) 58 + (40 x # words/step) 63 + (37 x # words/step)
Fifo Unload Fifo Load	16.4 16.4	62 64
Shift File Down Shift File Up	17 17	107 + (7.4 x # words in file) 112 + (7 x # words in file)
Examine ON (or OFF) Shift Reg. Bit Set (or Reset) Shift Reg. Bit Bit Shift Left Bit Shift Right	<1 <1 19.2 19.2	47 45 64 + (8.2 x # words in file) 73 + (7.8 x # words in file)
File Search File Diagnostic	10.8 27.0	68 + [2] 120 + [3]
Block Transfer Read Block Transfer Write	19.0 19.0	19.0 19.0

1 Execution Time depends on: a) length of files and, b) number of words/step. Section 5.6.2.

2 Execution Time is increased by 4.6 x the number of words searched before a match is found. Section 5.6.2.

3 Execution Time is increased by 7.6 x the number of words scanned before an error is found. Section 5.6.2.

5.6.3 File-to-File Move and File Complement

Table 5.F presents average instruction execution times for File-to-File move and File Complement instructions for the distributed complete, complete and incremental modes. The mode depends upon the value of R (the words or rate per scan — see Chapter 12).

The execution time equation for the distributed complete mode in microseconds is:

T = 85 + (6.8 x number of words operated upon per scan) + 14.4 (number of full 256 word blocks operated upon per scan).

The execution time equation in microseconds for the complete mode is:

T = 67.2 + (6.8 x number of words operated upon per scan) + 14.4 (number of full 256 word blocks operated upon per scan).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

As an example, we will calculate the execution time for File-to-File move in the distributed complete mode for the following conditions:

Rate per scan = 256 words operated upon per scan.

File length = 542 words

542 words in file = two full 256 word blocks + 30 words. Therefore, use 2 for the number of blocks operated upon per scan and ignore the +30 words.

Therefore: Time = 85 + 6.8(256) + 14.4(2)

Time = 85 + 1741 + 28.8 = 1855 microseconds

The incremental mode requires an execution time of 62 microseconds.

When false, the File-to-File move and File Complement execution time is 6 microseconds. The first scan the rung is false after the done bit is set requires 17.6 microseconds to reset flags and counters.

Table 5.F
Average Execution Times For File-to-File Move and File Complement Instructions

Rate (Words per Scan)	Time (Microseconds)	
	Dist. Complete Mode	Complete Mode
5	119	101
10	153	135
15	187	169
25	255	237
50	425	407
100	765	747
256	1840	1822
512	3595	3578

Formulas for more exact approximations can be found in Section 5.6.3.

Incremental mode requires 62 microseconds per scan. When FALSE, the execution time is 6 microseconds. To reset flags and counters requires 17.6 microseconds.

5.6.4 Logic Instructions File-to-File AND, OR, XOR

Table 5.G presents average instruction execution times for the logic instructions File-to-File AND, OR, XOR.

The execution time, T, in microseconds for the distributed complete mode is given by the equation:

T = 125 + 9.8(Number of words operated upon per scan) + 14.4 (Number of 256 word blocks operated upon per scan)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The execution time, T, in microseconds for the complete mode is:

T = 99 + 9.8 (Words operated upon per scan) + 14.4 (Number of 256 word blocks operated upon per scan)

Example: What is the execution time to perform a File-to-File AND operation on two files 670 words long? The rate per scan is 256 and the mode is the distributed complete mode.

T = 125 + 9.8(256) + 14.4(2) = 125 + 2509 + 28.8 = 2663

T = 2663 microseconds = 2.66 milliseconds.

The incremental mode requires approximately 100 microseconds per scan.

When the instructions are false, they require 6 microseconds.

The first scan the rung is false after the done bit is set requires 17.6 microseconds to reset flags and counters.

Table 5.G
Average Execution Times In Microseconds For FILE-TO-FILE AND, OR, XOR Instructions When Instruction Is TRUE

	Time (Microseconds)	
Rate (Words per Scan)	**Dist. Complete Mode**	**Complete Mode**
5	174	148
10	223	197
15	272	246
25	370	344
50	615	589
100	1105	1079
256	2648	2622
512	5171	5145

Formulas for more exact approximations can be found in Section 5.6.4.

Execution time for Incremental mode is 100 microseconds per scan. When FALSE, execution time is 6 microseconds. Time required to reset flags and counters is 17.6 microseconds.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 6

Data Manipulation Instructions

6.0 General

The data manipulation instructions are used to transfer or compare data that is stored in data table words and bytes. There are six data manipulation instructions:

GET –|G|–

PUT –(PUT)–

LES –|<|–

EQU –|=|–

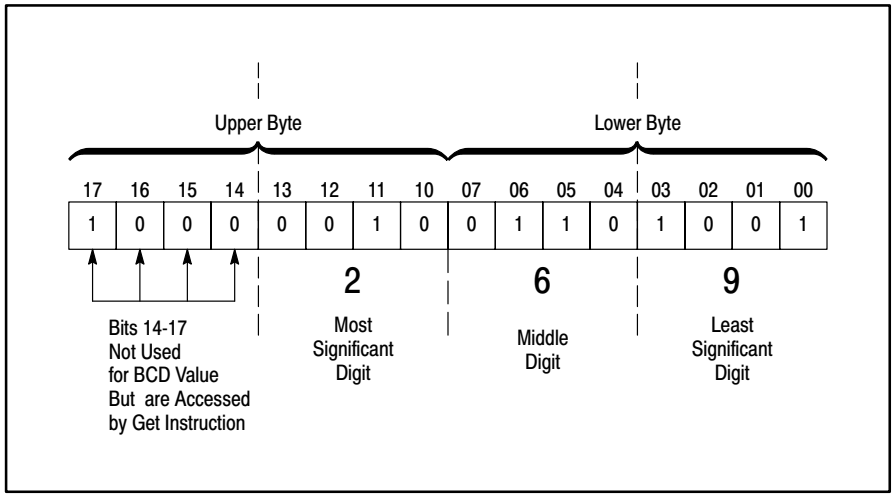
GET BYTE –|B|–

LIMIT TEST –|L|–

The Get and Put instructions are used together to transfer 16 bits of data from one word location in the data table to another word location. Data can be in the form of 3-digit, binary-coded decimal numbers.

The Les and Equ instructions compare data such as 3-digit numeric values in BCD format using the lower 12 bits of a data table word (Figure 6.1). This 3-digit value can be a decimal number ranging from 000 to 999.

Figure 6.1
BCD Word Format

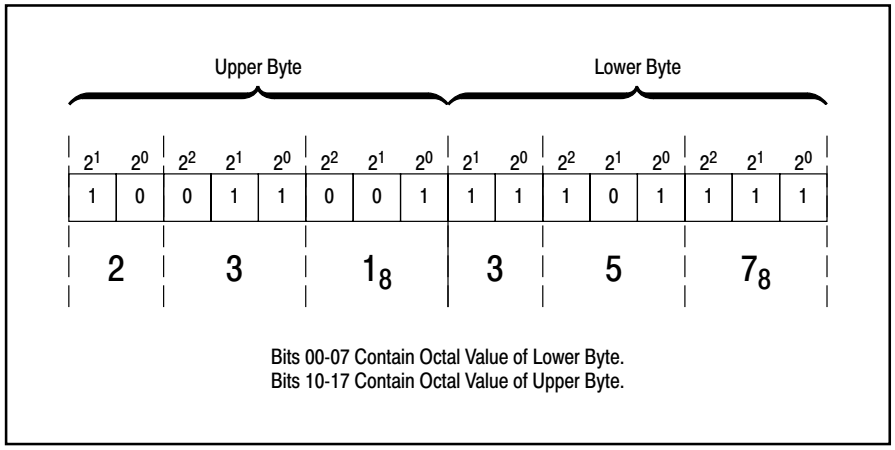


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The Get Byte and Limit Test instructions compare 3-digit values in octal format using eight bits (one byte) of a data table word (Figure 6.2). This 3-digit value is an octal number ranging from 000_8 to 377_8. Note that two 3-digit values can be stored in a word: one in the upper byte (bits 10-17) and one in the lower byte (bits 00–07).

A Data Manipulation instruction can address any word in the data table, excluding processor work areas.

Figure 6.2
Octal Format



6.1 Data Transfer Instructions

There are three Data Transfer instructions. They are:

GET –|G|–

PUT –(PUT)–

GET BYTE –[B]–

6.1.1 Get Instruction

Get instructions are programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung. They tell the processor to make a duplicate of all 16 bits in the addressed memory word. When the rung containing the Get/Put instructions goes true, the data is transferred to the word address of the Put instruction (Figure 6.3).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.3
Get and Put Instructions



If the word addressed by a Get instruction already contains data, the lower 12 bits of the data are displayed automatically after the word address is entered. Entry of new data, such as a new BCD value, writes over the data previously stored in the addressed word.

Although each data table word can store data, such as one BCD value, the word address can be assigned to more than one Get instruction in the same program. This allows the program to perform several different functions with the same data.

The Get instruction is not a condition that determines rung logic continuity. When the processor is in the run, test or run/prog mode, the Get instruction is always intensified regardless of rung logic continuity. This does not mean that data transfer will occur. Data transfer occurs only when the rung is true.

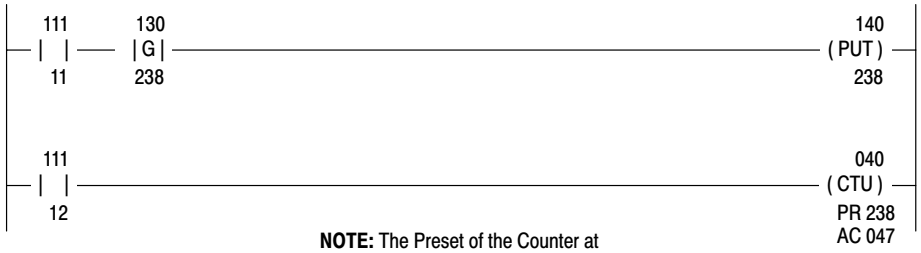
The Get instruction can be programmed either at the beginning of a rung or with one or more condition instructions preceding it. Condition instructions, however, should not be programmed after a Get instruction. When one or more condition instructions precede the Get instruction, they determine whether the rung is true or false. Parallel branches of Get instructions cannot be programmed unless they are paired with a Les or Equ instruction.

6.1.2 Put Instruction

The Put instruction is an output instruction. It receives 16 bits of data from the immediately preceding Get instruction and stores the data at its address as shown in Figure 6.3. A Put instruction can have the same address as other instructions in the program. For example, a Put instruction having the same address as a counter preset will change the counter preset value to that transferred from the Get instruction (Figure 6.4).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.4
Changing a Counter Preset



NOTE: The Preset of the Counter at Address 040 is at Address 140.

The lower 12 bits of transferred data are displayed in BCD beneath the Put instruction. Bits 14-17 are not displayed but are transferred. While the rung is true, any change in the data of the Get instruction also changes the data of the Put instruction. However, the Put instruction is retentive, which means that, while the rung is false, any change in the data of the Get instruction does not change the data of the Put instruction.

6.2 Data Comparison Instructions

The Data Comparison instructions are:

LESS THAN –|<|–

EQUAL TO –|=|–

GET BYTE –|B|–

LIMIT TEST –|L|–

Data comparison operations differ from data transfer operations in that data table values are not transferred. Instead, the values at different word locations are compared.

Data comparison instructions operate with either BCD values or octal values. With the Les and Equ instructions, only 12 bits of a word (the data) are compared. Bits 14-17 are not compared. With the Get Byte and Limit Test instructions, 8 bits in a word are compared.

6.2.1 Les and Equ Instructions

The Les (less than) and Equ (equal to) instructions are used with the Get instruction to perform data comparisons. They compare BCD values and are programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

A Get/Les or Get/Equ pair of instructions forms a single condition for logic continuity. Alone or with other conditions, each pair can be used to energize an output device or other output instruction. In all cases, the Get instruction must be programmed before the Les or Equ instruction. If other conditions are also programmed, they should be entered before the Get instruction or after the Les or Equ instruction.

Data comparisons are made by comparing a changing BCD value to a reference BCD value. The reference value need not be fixed. The following types of data comparisons of BCD values can be made:

< Less Than

> Greater Than

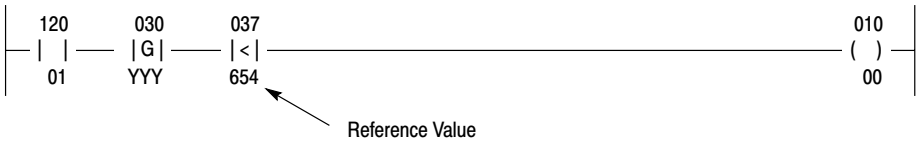
= Equal To

≤ Less Than or Equal To

≥ Greater Than or Equal To

Less Than – A less-than comparison is made with the Get/Les pair of instructions. The BCD value of the Get instruction is the changing value. It is compared to the BCD value of the Les instruction, the reference value (Figure 6.5). When the Get value is less than the Les value, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

Figure 6.5
Less-Than Comparison

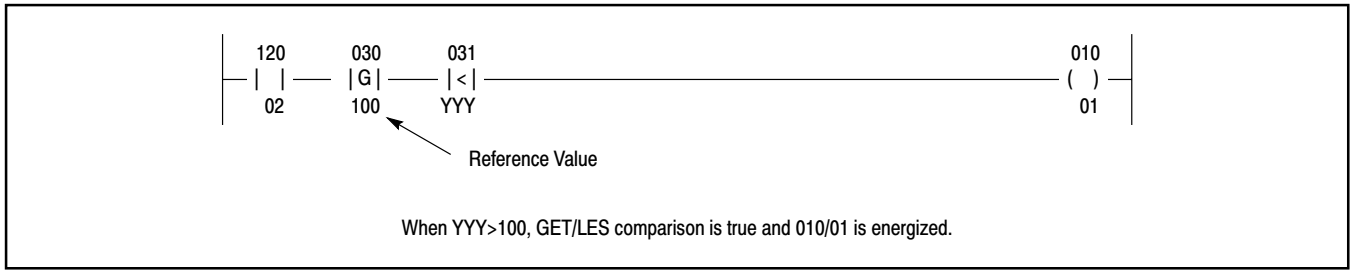


When YYY<654, GET/LES comparison is true and 010/00 is energized.

Greater Than – A greater-than comparison is also made with the Get/Les pair of instructions. This time, the Get instruction BCD value is the reference and the Les instruction BCD value is the changing value. The Les value is compared to the Get value for a greater-than condition (Figure 6.6). When the Les value is greater than the Get value, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

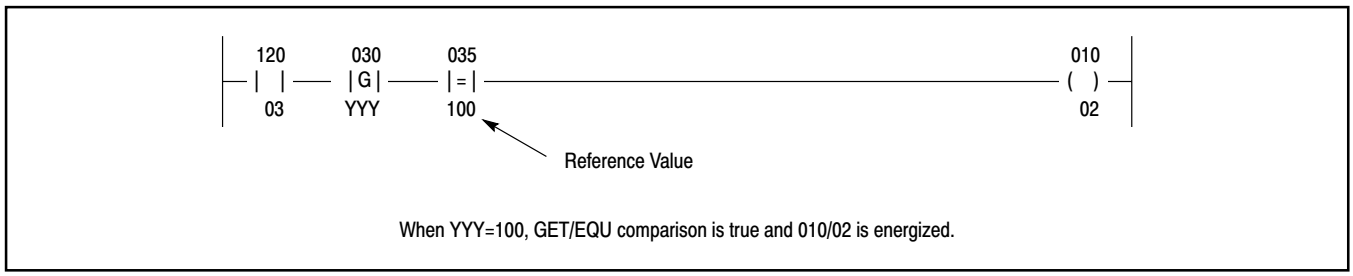
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.6
Greater-Than Comparison



Equal To – An equal-to comparison is made with the Get and Equ instructions (Figure 6.7). The Get value is the changing variable and is compared to the reference value of the Equ instruction for an equal-to condition. When the Get value equals the Equ value, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

Figure 6.7
Equal-To Comparison

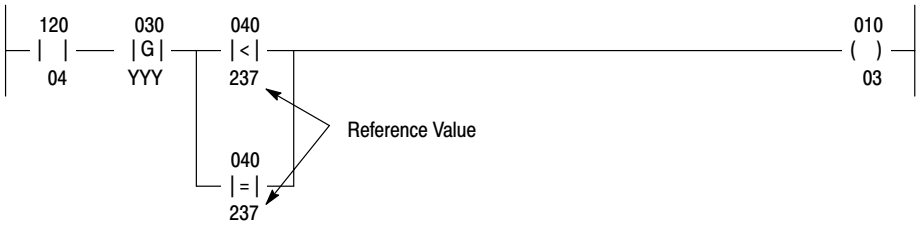


Less Than or Equal To – This comparison is made using the Get, Les and Equ instructions. The Get value is the changing value. The Les and Equ instructions are assigned a reference value (Figure 6.8). When the Get value is either less than or equal to the value at the Les and Equ instructions, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

NOTE: Only one Get instruction is required for a parallel comparison. The Les and Equ instructions are programmed on parallel branches.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.8
Less-Than or Equal-To Comparison



When YYY≤237, GET/LES-EQU comparison is true and 010/03 is energized.

Greater Than or Equal To – This comparison is made using the Get, Les and Equ instructions. The Get value is assigned a reference value. The Les and Equ values are changing values that are compared to the Get value (Figure 6.9). When the Les and Equ values are greater than or equal to the Get value, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

NOTE: Only one Get instruction is required for this parallel comparison. The Les and Equ instructions are programmed on parallel branches.

Figure 6.9
Greater-Than or Equal-To Comparison



When YYY≥440, GET/LES-EQU comparison is true and 010/04 is energized.

6.2.2 Get Byte and Limit Test Instructions

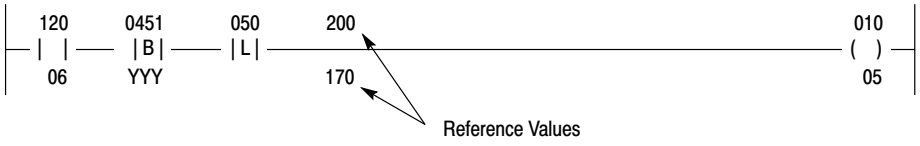
The Get Byte and Limit Test instructions are used together to compare an octal value to upper and lower limits that are also octal values. These values can range from 000_8 to 377_8.

The Get Byte and Limit Test instructions are programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung. Together, they form a single condition for

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

logic continuity. Condition instructions can be programmed before the Get Byte instruction or after the Limit Test instruction, but not between them (Figure 6.10).

Figure 6.10
Get Byte/Limit Test Comparison



When $170_8 \leq YYY_8 \leq 200_8$, comparison is true and 010/05 is energized.

The Get Byte instruction addresses either the upper or lower byte of a data table word. A 1 is entered after the word address for an upper byte; a 0 is entered for the lower byte.

The Limit Test instruction addresses one data table word that stores both the upper and lower limits. The upper limit is stored in the upper byte and the lower limit is stored in the lower byte. The upper byte of word 045 would be addressed as 0451 (Figure 6.10).

The PC processor makes a duplicate of the upper or lower byte of the word addressed by the Get Byte instruction. The octal value stored in that byte is then compared to the upper and lower octal values of the Limit Test instruction. If the Get Byte value is equal to or between the Limit Test values, the comparison is true and logic continuity is established.

6.2.3 Get Byte–Put Instruction

The Get Byte instruction is programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung. It tells the processor to make a duplicate of all 8 bits in the addressed byte. When the rung containing the Get Byte–Put instructions goes true, the data is transferred to the lower byte of the word address of the Put instruction (Figure 6.11). Do not use the upper byte of the Put instruction because it is a random value.

The Get Byte instruction can be programmed either at the beginning of a rung or with one or more condition instructions preceding it (Figure 6.11). Condition instructions, however, should not be programmed after a Get Byte instruction. When one or more condition instructions precede the Get Byte instruction, they determine whether the rung is true or false.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The Get Byte instruction addresses either the upper or lower byte of a data table word. A 1 is entered after the word address for an upper byte; a 0 is entered for the lower byte.

Figure 6.11
Get Byte–Put Instruction



[1]X is a random value. ZZ is the transferred byte displayed in hexadecimal.

6.3 Programming Data Manipulation Instructions

The Data Manipulation instructions are programmed from the industrial terminal keyboard with the processor in the program mode. When entered, they are displayed as intensified and blinking, and will continue to blink until all information is entered.

The default word address, 010, can appear as 3, 4 or 5 digits, depending on the data table size. When a 4- or 5-digit default address is displayed and a 4- or 5-digit word address is required, the programmer must enter leading zeros before entering the word address.

Refer to Table 6.A for a summary of the Data Manipulation instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 6.A
Data Manipulation Instructions

NOTE: Data Manipulation instructions operate upon BCD values and/or 16 bit data in the Data Table. The word address, XXX, is displayed above the instruction; the BCD value or data operated upon, YYY, is displayed beneath it. The BCD value is stored in the lower 12 bits of the word address and can be any value from 000 to 999, except as noted.

Word address displayed will be either 3, 4, or 5 digits depending upon the Data Table size. When entering the word address, use a leading zero, if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–[G]–	GET	XXX –[G]– YYY	The GET instruction is used with other Data Manipulation or Arithmetic instructions. When the rung is TRUE, all 16 bits of the GET instruction are duplicated and the operation of the instruction following it is performed. See Note.
–(PUT)–	PUT	XXX –(PUT)– YYY	The PUT instruction should be preceded by the GET instruction. When the rung is TRUE, all 16 bits of the GET instruction address are transferred to the PUT instruction address. See Note.
–[<]–	LESS THAN	XXX –[<]– YYY	The LESS THAN instruction should be preceded by a GET instruction. 3-digit BCD values at the GET and LESS THAN word addresses are compared. If the logic is TRUE, the rung is ENABLED. See Note.
–[=]–	EQUAL TO	XXX –[=]– YYY	The EQUAL TO instruction should be preceded by a GET instruction. 3-digit BCD values at the GET and EQUAL TO word addresses are compared. If equal, the rung is ENABLED. See Note.
–[B]–	GET BYTE	XXX D –[B]– YYY	D – Designates the upper or lower byte of the word. 1 = upper byte, 0 = lower byte. YYY – Octal value from 000_8 to 377_8 stored in the upper or lower byte of the word address. The GET BYTE instruction should be followed by a LIMIT TEST instruction. A duplicate of the designated byte is made and compared with the upper and lower limits of the LIMIT TEST instruction. See Note.
–[L]–	LIMIT TEST	XXX AAA –[L]——— BBB	AAA – Upper limit of LIMIT TEST, an octal value from 000_8 to $\mathbf{377_8}$. BBB – Lower limit of LIMIT TEST, an octal value from 000_8 to 377_8. The LIMIT TEST instruction should be preceded by a GET BYTE instruction. Compares the value at the GET BYTE instruction with the values at the LIMIT TEST instruction. If found to be between the limits, the rung is ENABLED. See Note.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

6.4 Arithmetic Instructions

The PLC-2/30 processor can be programmed to perform arithmetic operations with two BCD values using a set of arithmetic instructions and can perform conversions from 12-bit binary to BCD and vice versa. These output instructions are:

Add –(+)–

Subtract –(–)–

Multiply –(A x B)–

Divide –(÷)–

Convert BCD to BIN (Binary) and BIN to BCD

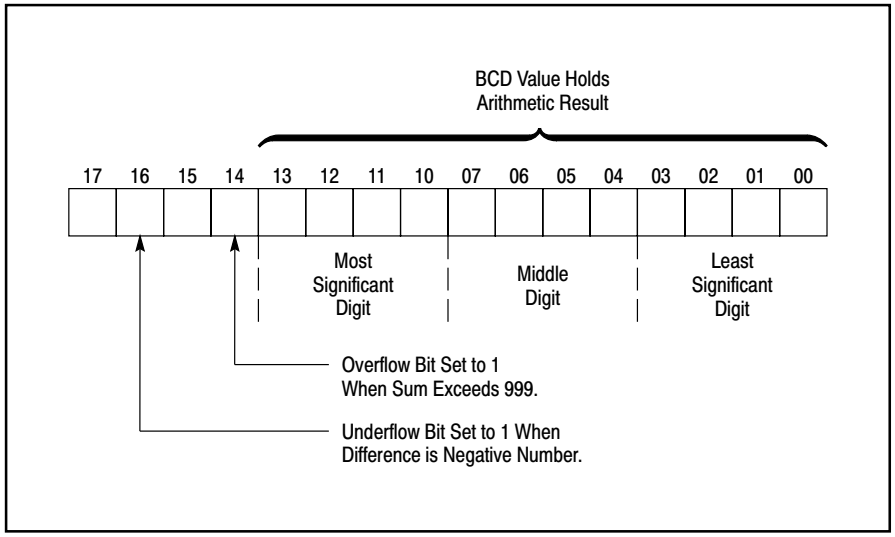
For arithmetic instructions, the two 3-digit BCD values to be operated on are stored in two Get instruction words. The Get instructions, programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung, should be followed by the arithmetic instruction. Other condition instructions, if used, should be programmed before the Get instructions.

The arithmetic instructions are programmed in the output position of the ladder diagram rung. They are assigned either one or two data table words to store the computed result, depending on the arithmetic operation performed. The Add and Subtract instructions use one data table word to store the result. The Multiply and Divide use two data table words to store the result.

The computed result is stored in BCD format in the lower 12 bits of the arithmetic instruction word (Figure 6.12). Two of the remaining bits (bits 14 and 16) are used to indicate overflow and underflow conditions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.12
Arithmetic Instruction Word



The conversion instructions are in block format. They don't require Get instructions. The 12-bit binary value is stored in one word and the BCD value is stored in two consecutive data table words. Any condition instructions can be programmed before a conversion instruction. Appendix B gives more information on Binary and BCD number systems.

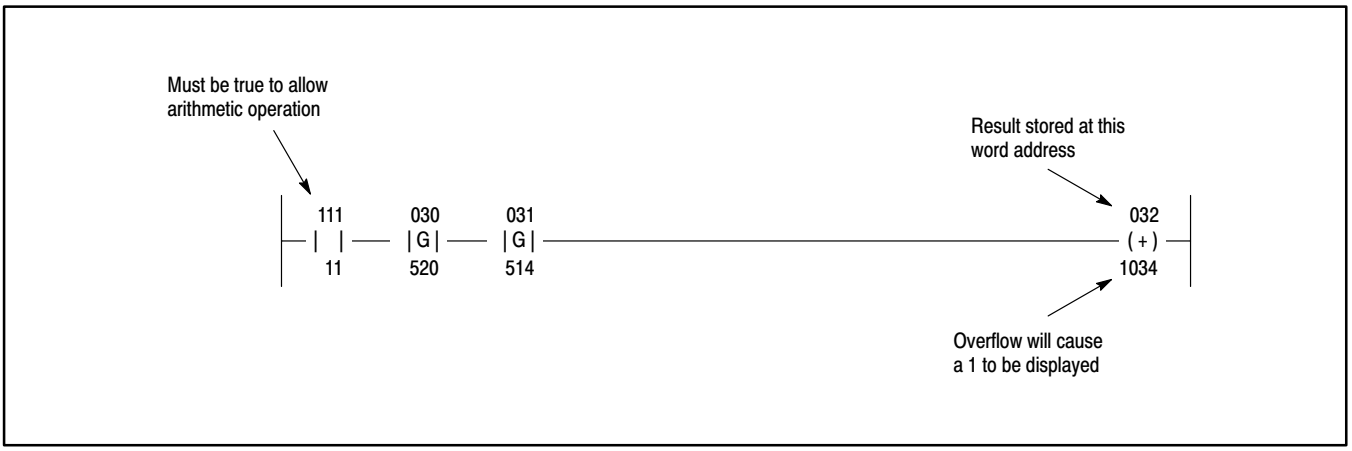
6.4.1 Add Instruction

The Add instruction tells the processor to add the two values stored in the Get words. The sum is then stored at the Add instruction word address. When the sum exceeds 999, the overflow bit (bit 14) in the Add instruction word is set on (Figure 6.13). In the run, test or run/prog mode, the overflow condition is displayed on the industrial terminal screen as a 1.

NOTE: If an overflow value (4 digits) is used for subsequent comparisons or other arithmetic operations, inaccurate operations will occur. The processor performs arithmetic and data manipulation operations with 3-digit BCD values only. In subsequent rungs, the overflow bit may be examined to determine if an overflow exists.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.13
Add Instruction

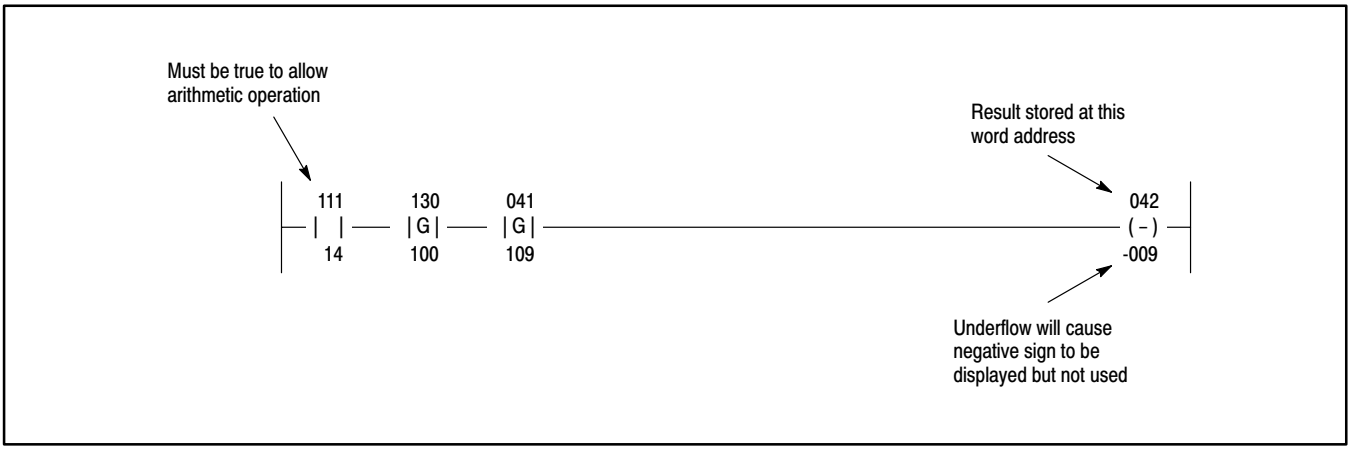


6.4.2 Subtract Instruction

The Subtract instruction tells the processor to subtract the second Get word value from the first Get word value (Figure 6.14). The difference is then stored at the data table word addressed by the Subtract instruction.

If the difference is a negative number, the underflow bit of the Subtract word (bit 16) is set on. In the run, test or run/prog mode, the negative sign will appear on the industrial terminal screen.

Figure 6.14
Subtract Instruction



NOTE: If a negative BCD value is used for subsequent operations, inaccurate results will occur. The processor only compares, transfers and computes the absolute BCD value. In subsequent rungs, the underflow bit may be examined to determine if an underflow exists.

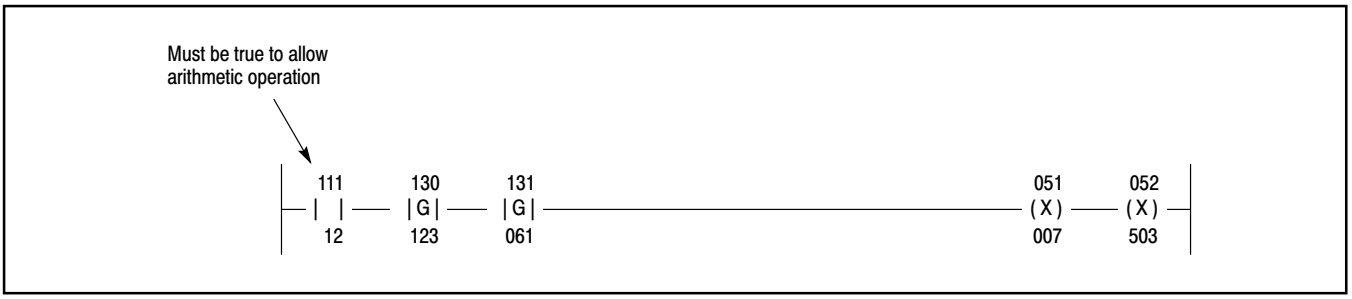
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

6.4.3 Multiply Instruction

The Multiply instruction tells the processor to multiply the two BCD values stored at the Get instruction words. The result is then stored in two data table words addressed by the Multiply instruction (Figure 6.15).

For ease of programming, the programmer should choose two consecutive data table words to store the product. If the product is less than 6 digits, leading zeros will appear in the product where there is no value. Although this is not mandatory, any two unused data table words are acceptable.

Figure 6.15
Multiply Instruction



6.4.4 Divide Instruction

The Divide instruction tells the processor to divide the first Get instruction value by the second Get instruction value. The result is stored in two data table words addressed by the Divide instruction (Figure 6.16). Usually two consecutive data table word locations are chosen to store the quotient for ease of programming.

The quotient is not rounded off and is always expressed as a decimal number. The decimal point is automatically inserted between the two Divide instruction values by the industrial terminal. Leading and trailing zeros in the quotient are also entered automatically by the industrial terminal.

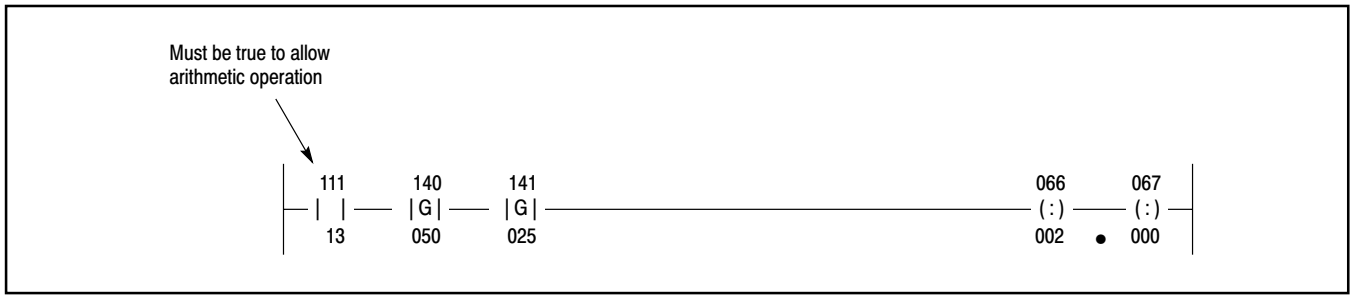
Although division by 0 is undefined mathematically, the following results are obtain with a PLC-2/30 PC processor when dividing by 0:

$0 \div 0 = 001.000$, 1 to $999 \div 0 = 999.999$

This differs from the Mini-PLC-2 and the Mini-PLC-2/15 where $0 \div 0 = 999.999$.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.16
Divide Instruction



6.5 Programming Arithmetic Instructions

Arithmetic instructions are entered into memory with the PLC-2/30 Processor in the program mode. When entered, these instructions will be intensified and blinking. They will continue to blink until the word address is entered. Refer to Table 6.B for a summary of these instructions.

A 3-, 4- or 5-digit default word address (010, 0010 or 00010) will be displayed above the instruction provided the data table is expanded accordingly. When the data table is expanded to a 5-digit word address, the 5-digit default address will be displayed. To enter a 3- or 4-digit word address when 4 or 5 digits are displayed, the programmer must enter leading zeros before entering the word address.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 6.B
Arithmetic Instructions

NOTE: Arithmetic instructions operate on BCD values in the Data Table. The word address XXX is displayed above the instruction; the BCD value YYY, which is the result of the arithmetic operation, is displayed beneath it. The BCD value is stored in the lower 12 bits of the word address and they can be any value from 000 to 999.

Displayed word addresses will be 3, 4, or 5 digits depending on the Data Table size. When entering the word address, use a leading zero if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–(+)–	ADD	XXX –(+)– YYY	The ADD instruction is an output instruction. It is always preceded by two GET instructions which store the BCD values to be added. When the sum exceeds 999, bit 14 is set to 1. A 1 is displayed in front of the result, YYY. See Note.
–(–)–	SUBTRACT	XXX –(–)– YYY	The SUBTRACT instruction is an output instruction. It is always preceded by two GET instructions. The value in the second GET address is subtracted from the value in the first. When the difference is negative, bit 16 is set to 1 and a minus sign is displayed in front of the result, YYY. See Note.
–(X)–	MULTIPLY	XXX XXX –(X)– –(X)– YYY YYY	The MULTIPLY instruction is an output instruction. It is always preceded by two GET instructions which store the values to be multiplied. See Note. Two word addresses are required to store the 6-digit product.
–(÷)–	DIVIDE	XXX XXX –(:)– –(:)– YYY . YYY	The DIVIDE instruction is an output instruction. It is always preceded by two GET instructions. The value of the first is divided by the value of the second. Two word addresses are required to store the 6-digit quotient. Its decimal point is placed automatically by the Industrial Terminal.

Important: This note applies to BCD to Binary and Binary to BCD conversions.

A BCD-to-Binary or Binary-to-BCD conversion is performed on the lower twelve bits of a word. The upper four bits are not involved with the conversion and are not transferred. You must create a user program to monitor the upper four bits as required by your application.

6.6
BCD to Binary Conversion

This output instruction will convert a BCD number (from 0-4095) into a 12-bit binary number on a true rung decision. The BCD number is stored in two consecutive data table locations as two three-digit BCD integers. The first word contains the most significant digit (not > 004) and the second word contains the three least significant digits. While the rung is true, if the BCD value changes, the binary value will also change.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

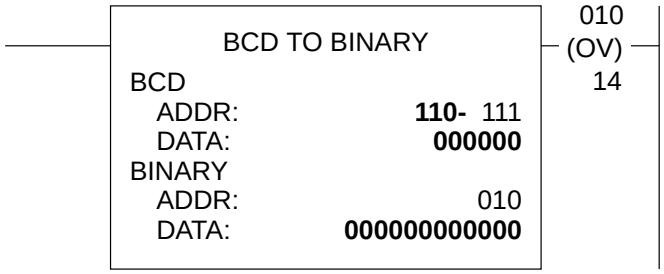
If the BCD value is > 4095, the overflow bit (bit 14 of the binary address) will be set on.

The binary number result will be stored in the lower 12 bits (00-13) of a word selected by the user.

6.6.1 Programming a BCD to Binary Conversion Instruction

To program a BCD to Binary conversion, press keys [CONVERT] 0. A display represented by Figure 6.17 will appear.

Figure 6.17
BCD to Binary Conversion Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

BCD ADDR	:	Address where the first three digits of the BCD number are stored. The second three-digit address is where the three least-significant BCD digits are stored.
BCD DATA	:	The BCD number that is to be converted to binary.
BINARY ADDR	:	Stores the binary number.
BINARY DATA	:	The 12 bits of the binary number equivalent to the BCD number.
OV	:	Overflow bit. Set high when binary number is > 12 ones or a decimal equivalent of 004095. It is in a word where the binary word is to be stored.

Figure 6.18 shows the symbolic format of Figure 6.17 after the following conditions have been entered:

Convert the BCD number 004095 to Binary.

BCD

ADDR – The BCD number is stored in adjacent data table words 200 and 201

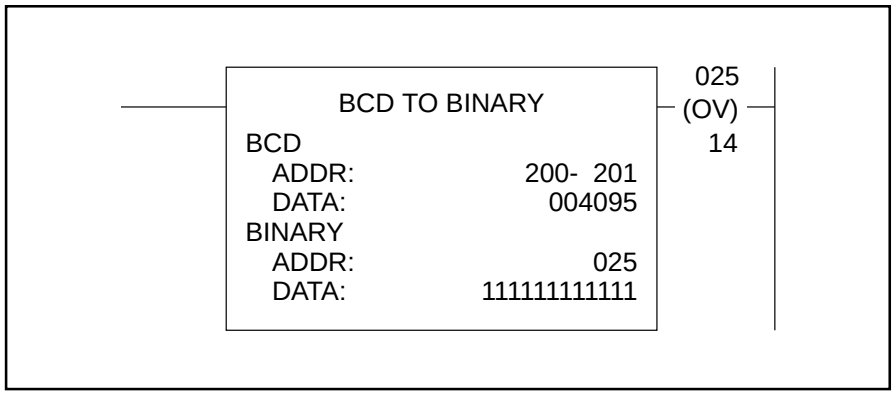
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

DATA – The BCD number is 004095 (the largest BCD number that can be converted to a 12-bit binary number).

BINARY

ADDR – Data Table word 025
DATA – The industrial terminal will display 12 ones (1), the binary representation of the decimal number 004095.

Figure 6.18
BCD-to-Binary Conversion Example Rung



6.7 Binary-to-BCD Conversion

On a true rung decision, this output instruction will convert a 12-bit binary number to a BCD number (from 0 to 4095). The BCD number will not exceed 004095 when it is converted from a 12-bit binary number. The upper 4 bits of the binary data will be transferred to the lower 4 bits of the lower BCD address.

If the binary data changes while the rung is true, the BCD result will also change. If the binary value is greater than 4095 (for example, if the reading from an analog input module is an overflow condition), the overflow bit, bit 14 of the binary address will be set ON.

6.7.1 Programming a Binary-to-BCD Conversion Instruction

To program a Binary-to-BCD conversion, press keys [CONVERT] 1. A display represented by Figure 6.19 will appear.

Figure 6.20 shows the symbolic format of Figure 6.19 after the following conditions have been entered:

Convert the Binary number 111111111111 to BCD

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

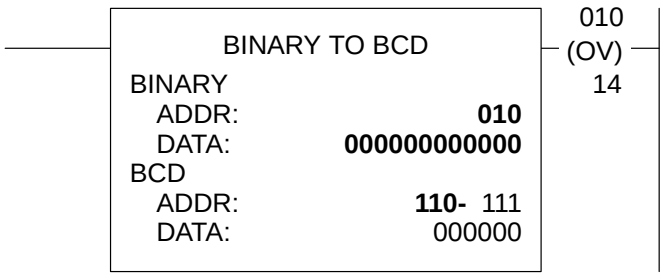
BINARY

ADDR – 125
DATA – 111111111111

BCD

ADDR – The BCD number is stored in adjacent data table words 200 and 201
DATA – The industrial terminal will display 004095, the BCD equivalent of the binary value for this example.

Figure 6.19
Binary-to-BCD Conversion Format

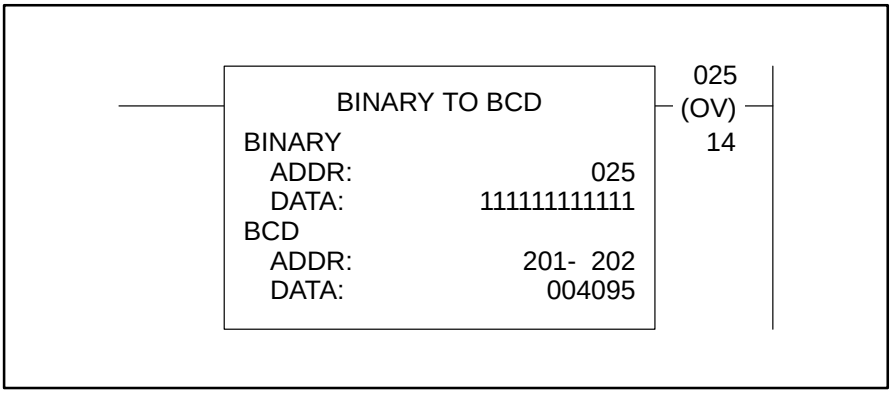


Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

BINARY ADDR	:	Stores the binary number.
BINARY DATA	:	The 12 bits of the binary number.
BCD ADDR	:	Address where the first three digits of the BCD number are stored. The second three-digit address is where the three least-significant BCD digits are stored.
BCD DATA	:	The BCD number that is equivalent to the 12 bits of the binary data block.
OV	:	Overflow bit. Set high when binary number is > 12 ones or a decimal equivalent of 004095. It is in a word where the binary word is to be stored.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 6.20
Binary-to-BCD Conversion Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 7

Output Override and I/O Update Instructions

7.0 General

The user may need programming instructions for certain applications requiring output overrides or I/O updates. They are:

- Master Control Reset instruction –(MCR)–
- Zone Control Last State instruction –(ZCL)–
- Immediate Input instruction –|I|–
- Immediate Output instruction –(IOT)–

7.1 Output Overrides

The two output instructions that can be used to override a group of outputs are:

- Master Control Reset –(MCR)–
- Zone Control Last State –(ZCL)–

These instructions are similar to a hard-wired master control relay in that they can affect a group of outputs in the user program. The MCR and ZCL instructions, however, are not a substitute for a hard-wired relay, which provides emergency stop capabilities for all I/O devices.



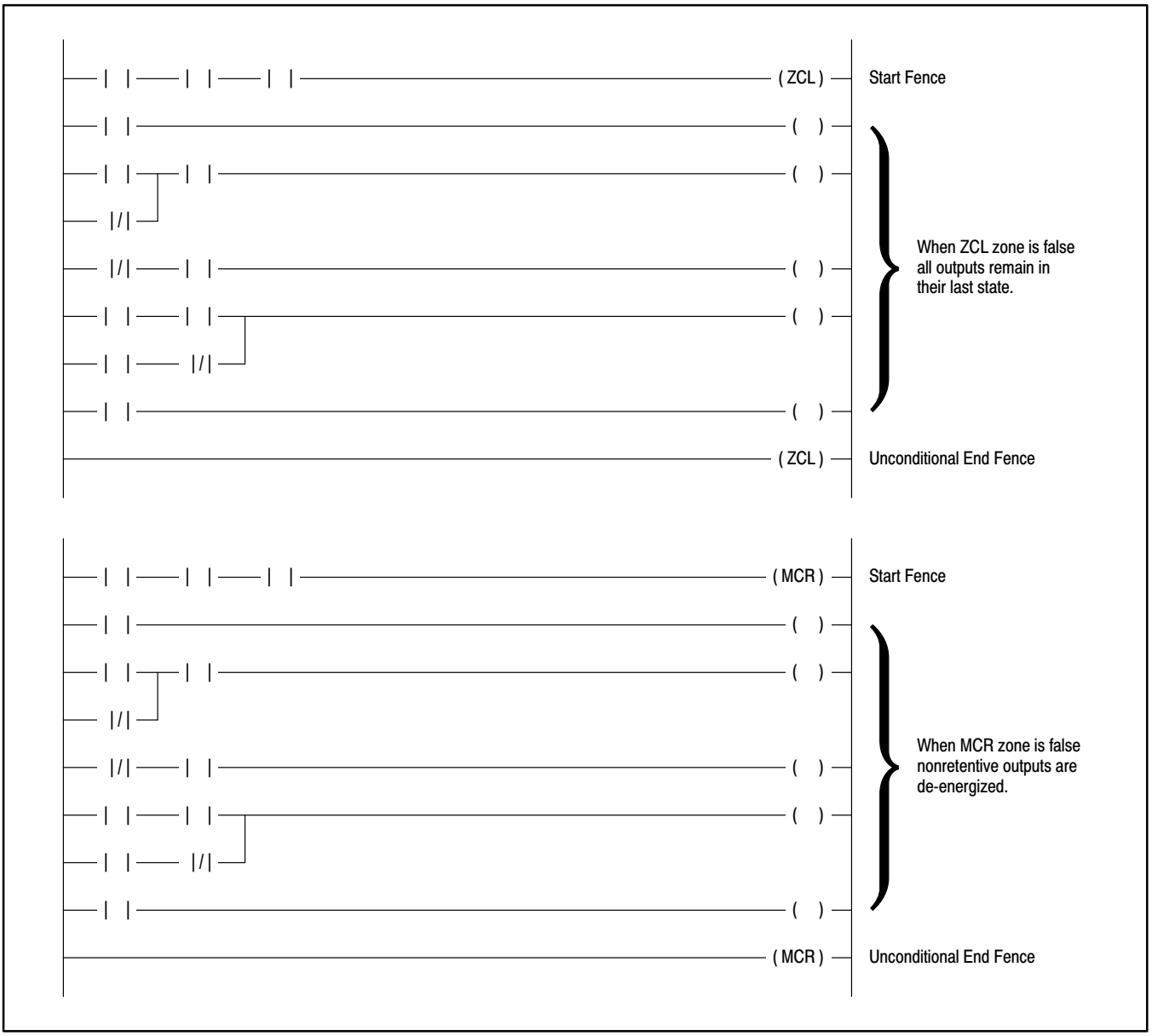
WARNING: A programmable controller system should not be operated without a hard-wired master control relay and emergency stop switches to provide emergency I/O power shut down. Emergency stop switches can be monitored but should not be controlled by the user program. These devices should be wired as described in the PLC-2/30 Assembly and Installation Manual, publication no. 1772-805.

To override a group of output devices, two MCR or ZCL instructions are required: one to begin the zone and one to end the zone (Figure 7.1). The start fence is always programmed with a set of input conditions. The end fence must be programmed unconditionally.

When the MCR or ZCL start fence is true, all outputs within the zone are controlled by their respective rung conditions. When the MCR or ZCL start fence is false, the outputs within the zone are controlled by the MCR or ZCL instruction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.1
MCR and ZCL Zone Programming



The MCR and ZCL instructions control the zoned outputs differently:

- MCR — When false, all nonretentive outputs within the MCR zone are de-energized or turned off.
- ZCL — When false, the outputs within the ZCL zone are left in their last state: either on or off.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

WARNING: MCR or ZCL zones should not be overlapped or nested. Each zone should be separate and complete. Overlapping MCR or ZCL zones may result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation with possible damage to equipment or personal injury.

7.2 I/O Updates

Two instructions used to update I/O data during the execution of the user program are:

- Immediate Input –|I|–
- Immediate Output –(IOT)–

These instructions are used to transfer critical I/O data ahead of the normal scan sequence. This speeds up the response of output devices to the program and the update of input data for program use.

The immediate I/O instructions are usually used where I/O modules interface with I/O devices that operate in a shorter period than the processor scan time. These may include TTL logic or fast response input or output devices.

Most electromechanical devices have a response time longer than the processor scan time. Thus, data to and from these devices need not be updated ahead of the normal I/O scan.

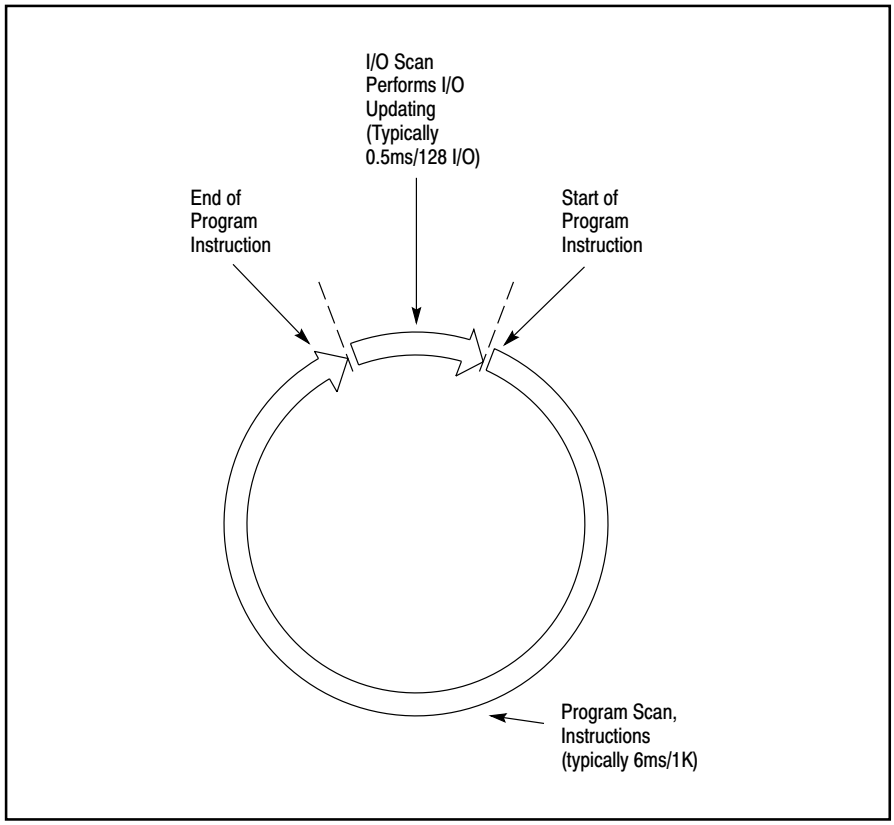
7.2.1 Scan Sequence

The PLC-2/30 processor scan sequence can be divided into 2 parts (Figure 7.2):

- Program Scan
- I/O Scan

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.2
Scan Sequence



Upon power up, the processor begins the scan sequence with the program scan and then the I/O scan. During the I/O scan, data from the input modules is transferred to the input image table. Data from the output image table is transferred to the output modules.

After completing the I/O scan, the processor begins the program scan for the second time. Here, all user program instructions are scanned and executed in the order in which they were entered except where jumps and subroutines are used. The scan sequence when jumps and subroutines are employed is described in those sections.

The I/O scan and program scan are synchronously performed in a local system, one after the other. The time required to complete both scans is typically 6 msec/1K instructions plus 0.5 msec/128 I/O Rack. Refer to Chapter 5 for remote systems.

It is clear that 40-50 msec may pass before I/O data is updated with a 16K memory. The purpose of the immediate I/O instructions is to interrupt the program scan to update a word of critical input data or output device response in advance of the normal update sequence.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

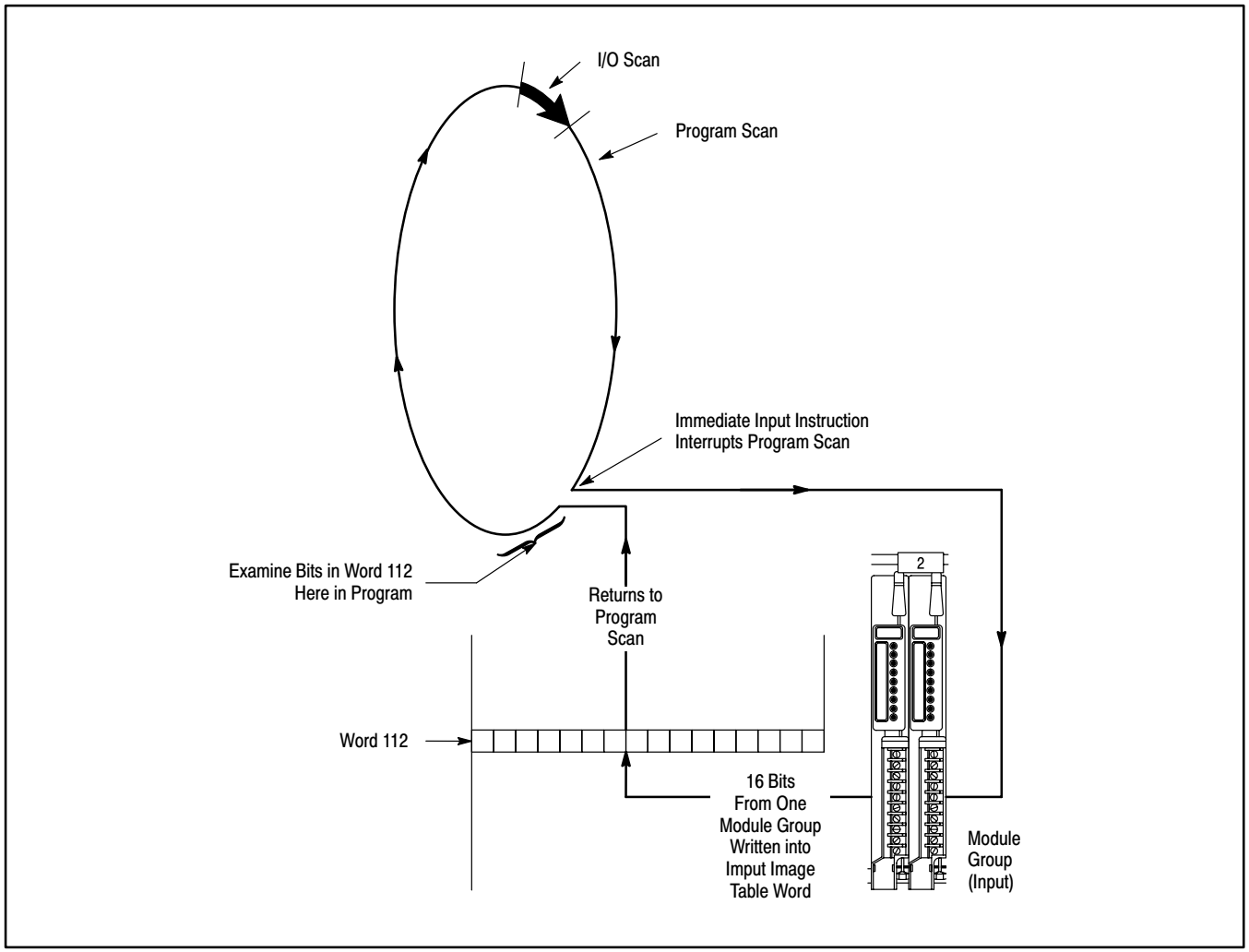
7.2.2 Immediate Input Instruction

The Immediate Input instruction updates one word of the input image table data in advance of the normal scan sequence (Figure 7.3). The image table word represents one module group in the I/O chassis.

The Immediate Input instruction is programmed in the condition area of the ladder diagram rung. The Immediate Input instruction can be considered as always true; it is always executed, whether or not other rung conditions allow logic continuity.

Program the Immediate Input instruction only when necessary. This depends on both the response time of the specific input devices and modules and on the position of the rungs examining these inputs in the program. It is best to program the Immediate Input instruction just before inputs in the modules group are examined in the program.

Figure 7.3
Immediate Input Instruction



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

7.2.3 Immediate Output Instruction

The Immediate Output instruction updates one module group with data from one output image table word ahead of the normal scan sequence (Figure 7.4).

The Immediate Output instruction is programmed as an output instruction in the ladder diagram rung. This instruction is executed when rung conditions allow logic continuity. Unconditional programming can also be used to cause the module group to be updated during each program scan.

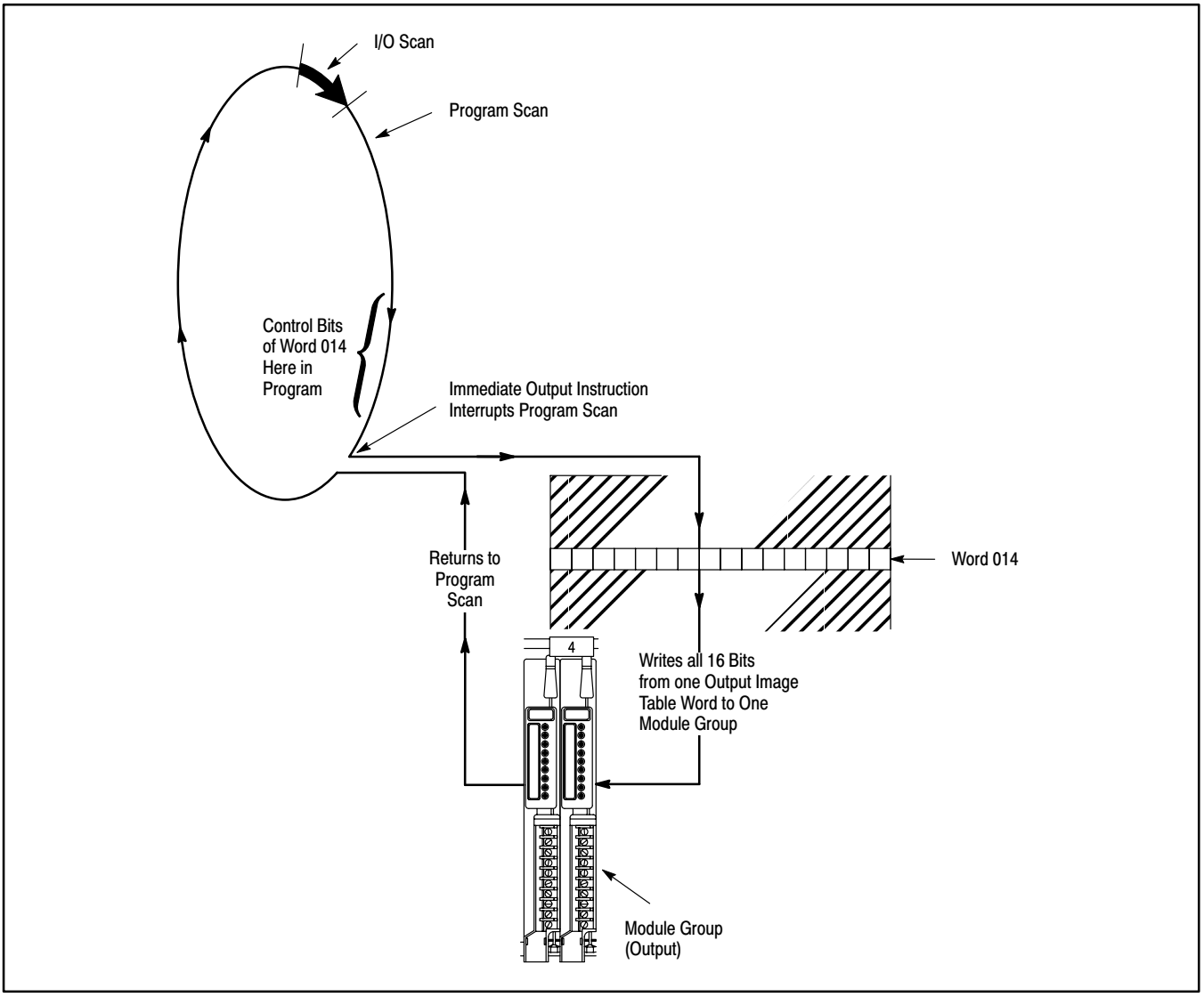
Program the Immediate Output instruction only when necessary. This depends on the response time of output modules and devices, and on the position of the rungs addressing the module group.

The Immediate Output instruction should be programmed just after the rungs that control the bits in the addressed output image table word.

In programmable controller applications, this instruction only gives a slight advantage when entered near the end of the program scan, since output data will soon be updated in the I/O scan. This instruction is best applied when entered near the middle of the user program.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.4
Immediate Output Instruction



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

7.3 Programming Immediate I/O Instructions

The Immediate I/O instructions are programmed with the processor in the program mode. When entered from the industrial terminal, they will be displayed as intensified and blinking with the reverse-video cursor positioned on the first digit of the default word address. The number of digits in the default address can range from 4 to 5 depending on data table size. Refer to Table 7.A for a summarized description of these instructions.

The 4- or 5-digit default word address with leading zeros will automatically appear above the instruction provided the data table has been expanded accordingly. To enter a 4- or 5-digit address when 4 or 5 digits are displayed, the programmer must enter leading zeros before entering the word address.

Table 7.A
Output Override and I/O Update Instructions

NOTE: The MCR and ZCL boundary instructions have no word address.

The word addresses, XXX, of the IMMEDIATE INPUT and OUTPUT instructions are limited to the Input and Output Image Tables respectively.

Displayed word addresses will be 3, 4, or 5 digits long, depending on Data Table size. When entering the word address, use a leading zero if necessary.

Keytop Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
–(MCR)–	MASTER CONTROL RESET	–(MCR)–	Two MCR instructions are required to control a group of outputs. The first MCR instruction is programmed with input conditions to begin the zone. The second MCR instruction is programmed unconditionally to end the zone. When the first MCR rung is FALSE, all outputs within the zone, except those forced ON or latched ON, will be de-energized. Do not overlap MCR zones, or nest with ZCL zones. Do not JUMP to LABEL in MCR zones.
–(ZCL)–	ZONE CONTROL LAST STATE	–(ZCL)–	Two ZCL instructions are required to control a group of outputs. The first ZCL instruction is programmed with input conditions to begin the zone. The second ZCL instruction is programmed unconditionally to end the zone. When the first ZCL rung is FALSE, outputs in the zone will remain in their last state. Do not overlap ZCL zones, or nest with MCR zones. Do not JUMP to LABEL in ZCL zones.
–[I]–	IMMEDIATE INPUT	XXX –[I]–	Processor interrupts program scan to update Input Image Table with data from the corresponding Module group. It is updated before the normal I/O scan and executed each program scan.
–(IOT)–	IMMEDIATE OUTPUT	XXX –(IOT)–	When the rung is TRUE, Processor interrupts program scan to update Module group with data from corresponding Output Image Table word address. It is updated before the normal I/O scan and executed each program scan when the rung is TRUE. Can be programmed unconditionally.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

7.4 Remote Fault Zone Programming

The remote fault zone programming technique is used to disable parts of or the entire user program when a fault occurs in a remote I/O rack. Remote I/O racks are controlled by the processor via the 1772-SD2 distribution panel and can be located up to 10,000 feet from the panel. Up to two local I/O racks can be used with remote I/O racks in a system (Figure 7.5).

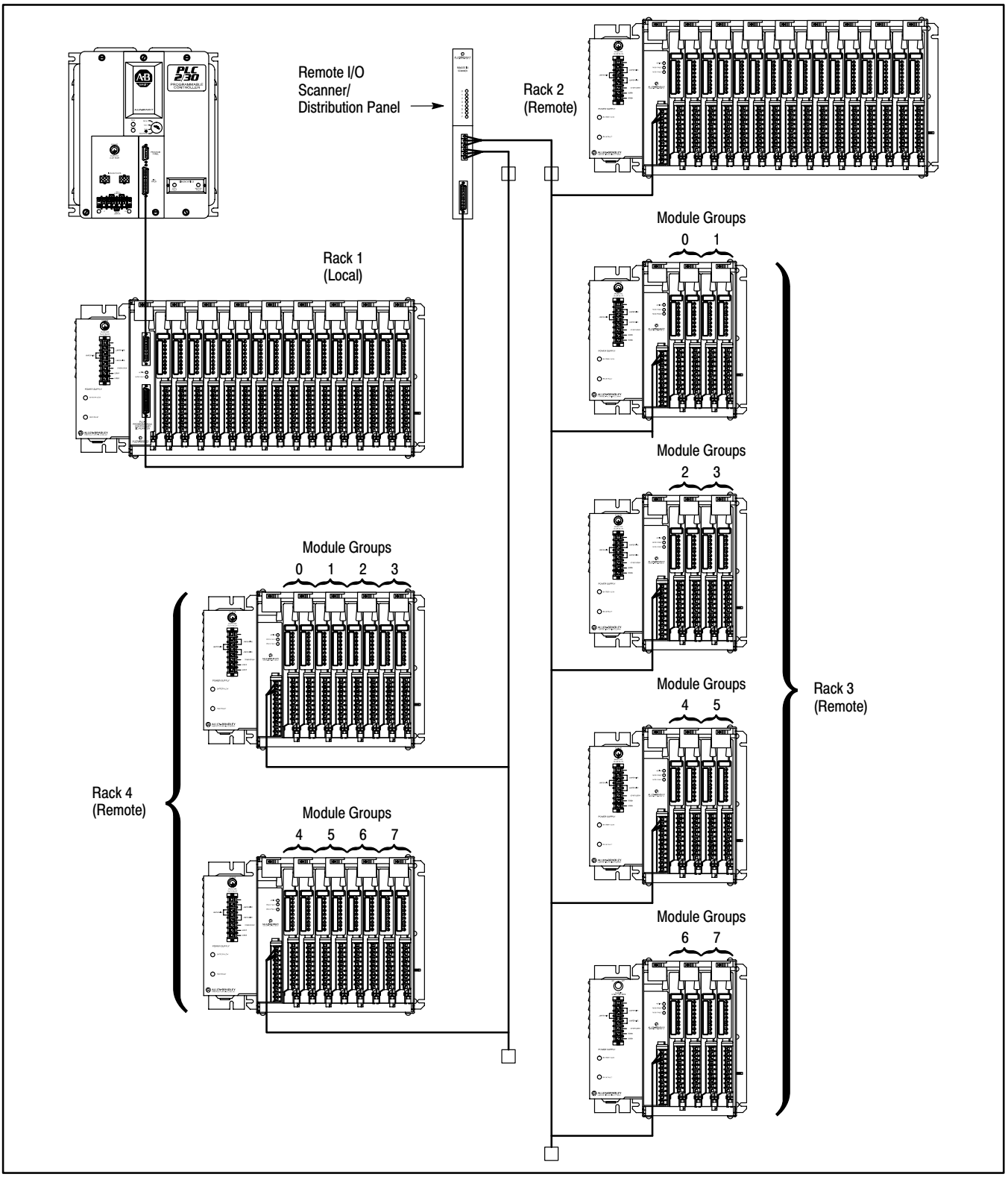
Unlike local I/O racks, each remote I/O rack can have up to 128 I/O points using one of the following arrangements:

- One 128-I/O chassis
- Two 64-I/O chassis
- One 64-I/O chassis and two 32-I/O chassis
- Four 32-I/O chassis

The PLC-2/30 can control up to 14 I/O racks when using the 1772-SD2 distribution panel. For information on wiring, switch settings and use of the 1772-SD2 distribution panel, refer to the Allen-Bradley Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution Panel Product Data (publication no. 1772-929).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.5
Remote I/O Configuration Example



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Fault zones can be programmed around certain parts of the program or the entire program using fault status bits and MCR or ZCL zones. The fault status bits used for remote fault zone programming are located in data table words 125_8 and 126_8 (Table 7.B).



CAUTION: Input modules cannot be located in rack 2, module groups 5 and 6 if words 125 and 126 are used for fault status bits.

A group of four fault status bits corresponds to a single I/O rack (Table 7.B). For example, bits $125/07_8$–$125/04_8$ correspond to rack 1, and bits $125/03_8$–$125/00_8$ correspond to rack 2. Although bits $126/13_8$–$126/10_8$ are not used as fault status bits, they cannot be used for storage.

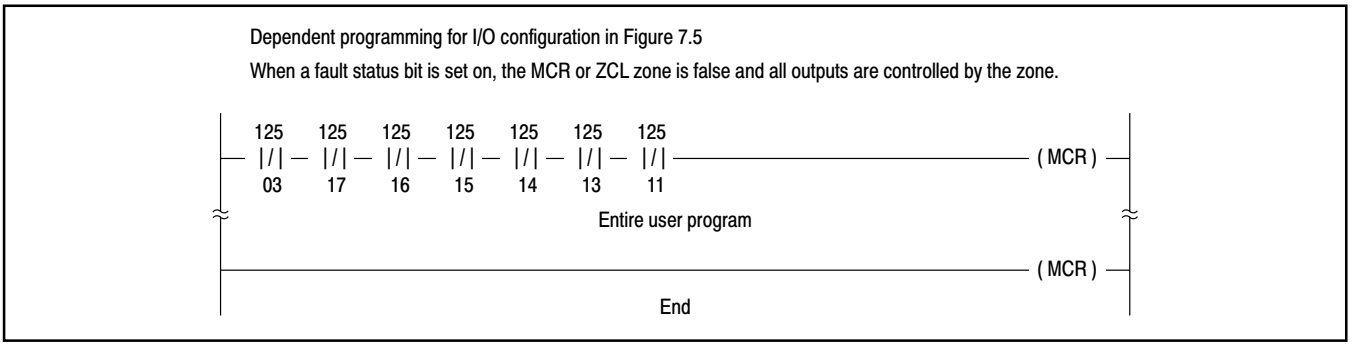
Table 7.B
Fault Status Bits

I/O Rack	Module Groups	Fault Status Bit
1	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	125/07 125/06 125/05 125/04
2	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	125/03 125/02 125/01 125/00
3	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	125/17 125/16 125/15 125/14
4	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	125/13 125/12 125/11 125/10
5	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	126/07 126/06 126/05 126/04
6	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	126/03 126/02 126/01 126/00
7	0, 1 2, 3 4, 5 6, 7	126/17 126/16 126/15 126/14

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Each fault status bit within a group of four corresponds to two consecutive module groups of 32 I/O points (Table 7.B). When a fault occurs in a remote rack, one or more of the four status bits are set on depending on the configuration of the I/O rack.

Figure 7.6
Dependent Fault Zone Programming



In Figure 7.5, rack 1 is a local 128-I/O rack. Rack 2 consists of a 128-I/O chassis. Rack 3 consists of four 32-I/O chassis and rack 4 consists of two 64-I/O chassis.

If a fault occurs in rack 2, all four status bits (bits $125/00_8$–$125/03_8$) will be set on. If a fault occurs in the first I/O chassis of rack 3, bit $125/17_8$ will be set on. Similarly, if a fault occurs in the first I/O chassis of rack 4, bits $125/13_8$ and $125/12_8$ will be set on.

By selecting either dependent or independent fault zone programming, the user can disable certain parts of the program or the entire program when a fault occurs in a remote I/O rack. Alternate parts of the program can also be enabled when a fault occurs.

7.4.1 Dependent Programming

Dependent fault zone programming is used to disable the entire program when a fault occurs in one remote I/O chassis. The entire user program is zoned off using an MCR or ZCL zone (Figure 7.6). The appropriate fault status bits for the remote I/O chassis are programmed as Examine Off conditions for the zone. When a fault occurs in a remote I/O chassis, the corresponding fault status bit is set on, causing the MCR or ZCL zone to go false. All outputs will then be controlled by the MCR or ZCL zone, including outputs of local I/O racks.

In addition to programming a dependent fault zone, the user must ensure that the fault control switch on the 1772-SD2 distribution panel is set off for dependent mode. Refer to publication no. 1772-929 for the switch locations and settings on the panel.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

NOTE: If a fault occurs in a local rack, all racks will behave according to their last state switch whether dependent or independent mode has been selected.

7.4.2 Independent Programming

Independent fault zone programming is used to zone off independent sections of user program. The programming for each I/O chassis can be contained in separate MCR or ZCL zones or more than one I/O chassis can be contained in a single zone (Figure 7.7). The user may also wish to enable alternate parts of a program when a fault occurs in a remote I/O chassis (Figure 7.8).

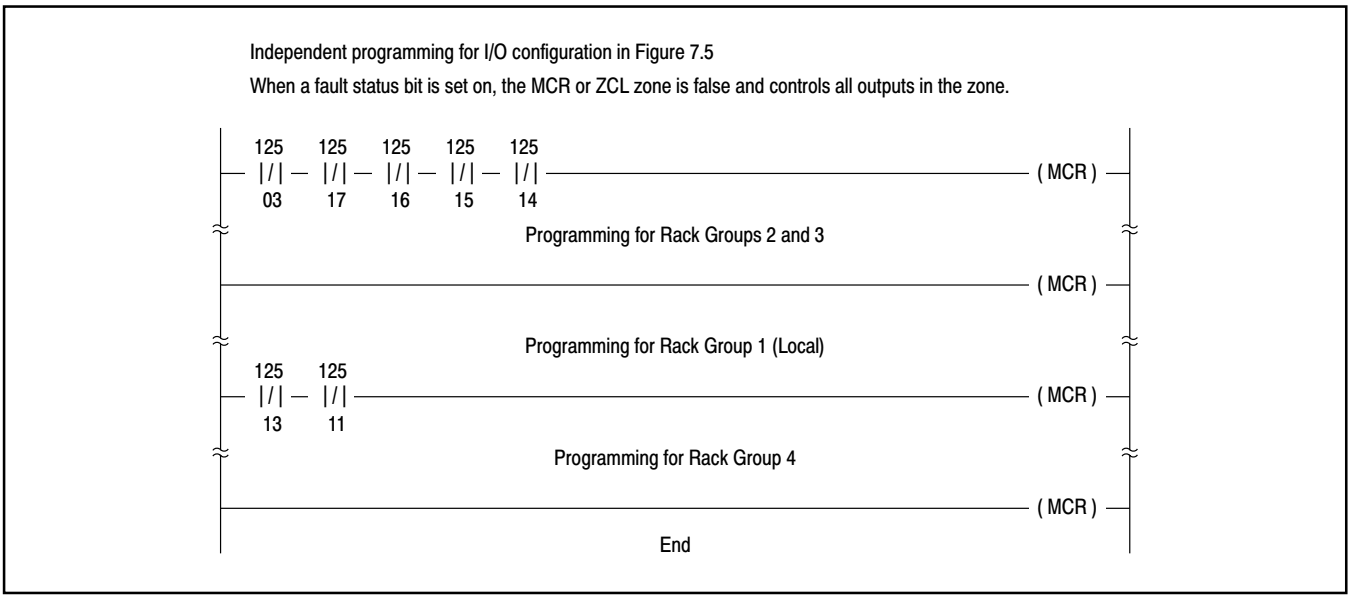
Independent fault zones are programmed using the appropriate fault status bits as Examine Off conditions for the MCR or ZCL zones (Figures 7.7 and 7.8). When a fault occurs in a remote I/O chassis, the corresponding fault status bit is set on. The MCR or ZCL zone conditioned by that fault status bit will go false, enabling the zone. All outputs within the zone will be controlled by the zone.

In addition to programming independent fault zones, the user must ensure that the fault control switch on the S/D panel is set on for independent mode. Refer to publication no. 1772-929 for the switch locations and settings of the 1772-SD2 distribution panel.

NOTE: If a fault occurs in a local rack, all racks will behave according to their last state switch whether dependent or independent mode has been selected.

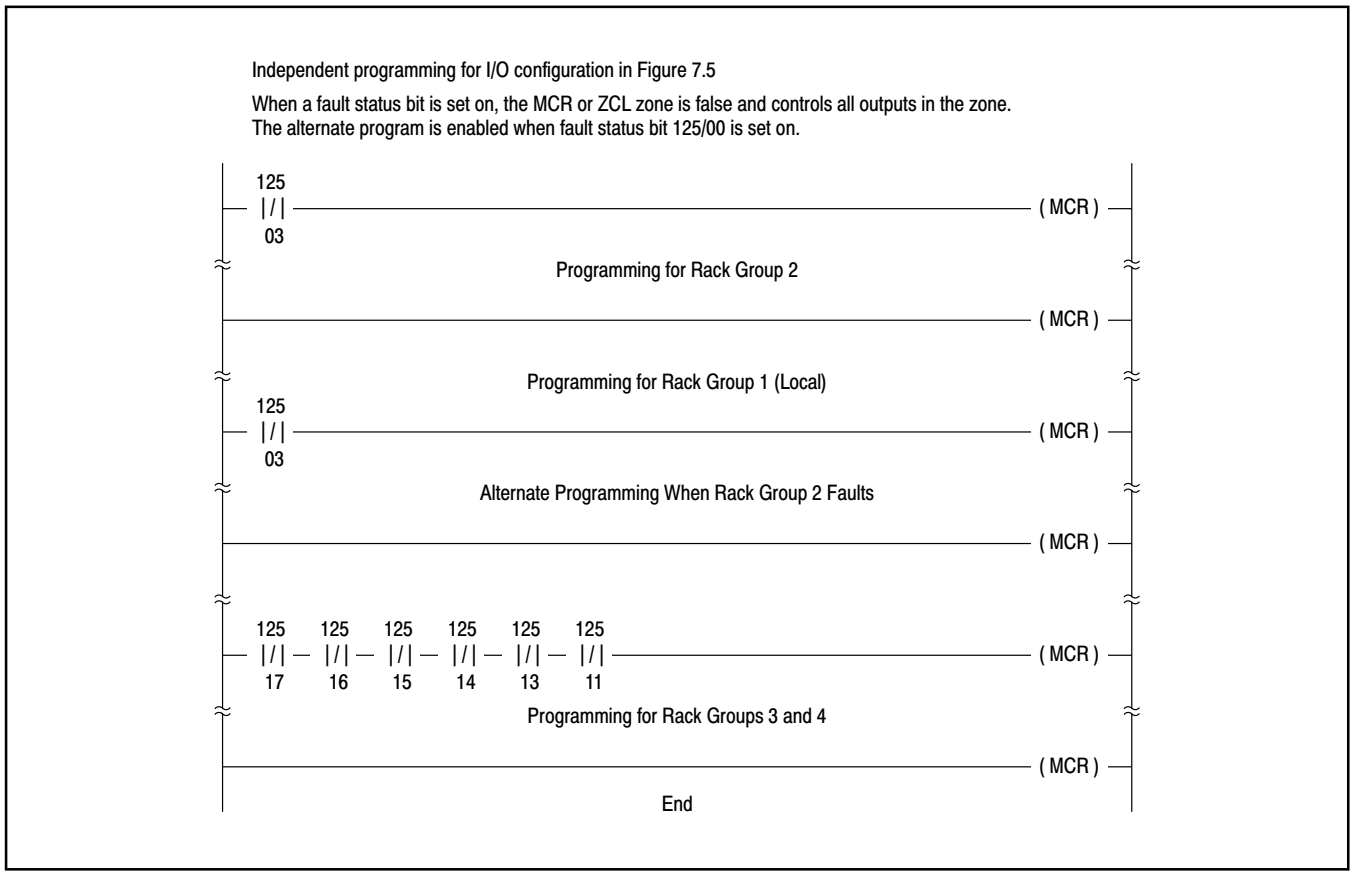
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.7
Separate Independent Fault Zone Programming for Individual I/O Chassis



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 7.8
Alternate Independent Fault Zone Programming for Individual I/O Chassis



7.5 I/O Update Times

The time required to perform scans of I/O differs depending upon whether the I/O racks are local or remote.

7.5.1 Local Systems

The scan time for local systems is 0.5 ms per rack.

7.5.2 Remote Systems

The scan time for remote systems depends upon the baud rate for which the 1772-SD2 distribution panel is configured by the on-board switches. If no block transfer modules are used in remote racks, the scan times per 1771-AS adapter 8.5 ms and 7 ms for rates of 57.6K and 115.2K baud respectively. Block transfer times vary depending on system configuration and are discussed in detail in documentation on the remote PLC-2 I/O system.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The 1772-SD2 scans remote I/O racks and stores the information in its buffer. The processor, during the I/O scan, updates any local I/O racks and then gets the information from the 1772-SD2 buffer. This information in the buffer may be combination of new and old data depending on where the 1772-SD2 was in its scan when the processor requested the information. To get the information from the 1772-SD2 takes 0.5 ms per remote rack.

NOTE: A remote rack is defined as 128 I/O.

The scan time determined by using the program Section 5.2.2 is the summation of program scan time + local I/O update time + time to update remote I/O from the 1772-SD2. Therefore:

Program scan time = total scan time (from program of Section 5.2.2) + local I/O time + (1772-SD2) time.

7.6 Watchdog Timer

The timer is used to monitor logic circuits controlling the processor. It is set at 115 milliseconds and if it times out a processor fault occurs and the system shuts down. If the time for complete scan exceeds 115 milliseconds, the watchdog timer will time out and the processor will fault. The watchdog is reset every I/O scan.

Some instructions (Tables 5.E, 5.F, 7.B) can require many times the scan time of the simple instructions of Table 5.D or cause the program to loop. Therefore, to avoid exceeding the 115 millisecond watchdog timer limit, the watchdog is automatically reset when the processor responds to certain instructions. Table 7.D lists the instructions that reset the watchdog timer.



WARNING: The lower limit of input device cycle time should not be less than the scan time of the processor. If so, incorrect input data could be used during program execution and damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result. Critical inputs can be monitored and critical outputs can be controlled in an accelerated manner using the I/O update instructions described in Section 7.2.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 7.C
Average Execution Times in Microseconds for FILE-TO-FILE AND, OR, XOR Instructions when Instruction is True

Rate Per Scan	Dist. Complete Mode	Complete Mode
5	174	148
10	223	197
15	272	246
25	370	344
50	615	589
100	1105	1079
256	2648	2622
512	5171	5145

Formula for more exact approximations can be found in Section C.6.

Execution Time for incremental mode is 100 microseconds per scan.

When FALSE, execution time is 17.6 microseconds.

Table 7.D
The Following Instructions Reset the Watchdog Timer

File-To-File Move Word-To-File Move File-To-Word Move
File-To-File AND, OR, XOR Word-To-File AND, OR, XOR File Complement
File Search File Diagnostic
Return
End T.End SBR
Sequencer In Sequencer Out Sequencer Load
Fifo Load Fifo Unload
Shift File Up Shift File Down
Shift Bit Left Shift Bit Right
Block Transfer (for processors equipped with cat. no. 1772-LG, processor module, Rev. J firmware or later)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 8

Peripheral Functions

8.0 General

There are several functions that can be performed with a PLC-2/30 and the industrial terminal. Some require the use of a peripheral divide connected to channel C of the industrial terminal. The functions include:

- Contact histogram
- Cassette recorder dump and load
- Data cartridge recorder dump and load
- Ladder diagram dump
- Total memory

The contact histogram and report generation functions can be monitored by the industrial terminal without a peripheral device

8.1 Communication Rate Setting

The communication rate for channel C must be set to match the rate of the peripheral device when a peripheral device other than the Data Cassette Recorder (Cat. No. 1770-SA) or Digital Cartridge Recorder (Cat. No. 1770-SB) is used. The communication rate is the number of bits per second (baud) sent to/from channel C. The baud for channel C can be set in one of two ways:

- Setting switches 1, 2 and 3 of the switch group assembly on the industrial terminal's main logic board (Table 8.A).

Table 8.A
Switch Group Settings

Switch			
1	2	3	Baud Rate
Down	Down	Down	110
Down	Down	Up	300
Down	Up	Down	600
Down	Up	Up	1200
Up	Down	Down	2400
Up	Down	Up	4800
Up	Up	Down	9600

- Pressing [RECORD] and a number from 2 to 8 on the industrial terminal (Table 8.B). The settings of Table 8.B will override those of Table 8.A, if used.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Channel C must be on to receive input from a peripheral device. It is initially on. It can be toggled on/off by pressing [RECORD] 9 (Channel C status display) and pressing 2.

Table 8.B
Key Sequence for Setting Baud Rate

Key Sequence	Baud Rate
[RECORD] [2]	110
[RECORD] [3]	300
[RECORD] [4]	600
[RECORD] [5]	1200
[RECORD] [6]	2400
[RECORD] [7]	4800
[RECORD] [8]	9600

8.2 Contact Histogram

The contact histogram function displays the on/off history of a specific memory bit. This can be monitored on the industrial terminal and can also be printed by a peripheral printer. If a peripheral device is used, the baud for channel C of the industrial terminal must be set.

Any data table bit, excluding the processor work areas, can be accessed by the contact histogram command. The status of the bit (on or off) and the length of time the bit remained on or off (in hours, minutes and seconds) will be displayed. The seconds are displayed to within 00.01 second (10 msec.) resolution.

There are two operating modes for the contact histogram, shown in Table 8.C:

- Continuous: Accessed by pressing [SEARCH]6. Once started, the histogram is displayed from that instant.
- Paged: Accessed by pressing [SEARCH]7. The histogram is displayed one page at a time by user command.

After pressing [SEARCH]6 or [SEARCH]7, enter the bit address to be monitored. Bit addresses larger than 5 digits do not require leading zeros or the EXPAND ADDR key.

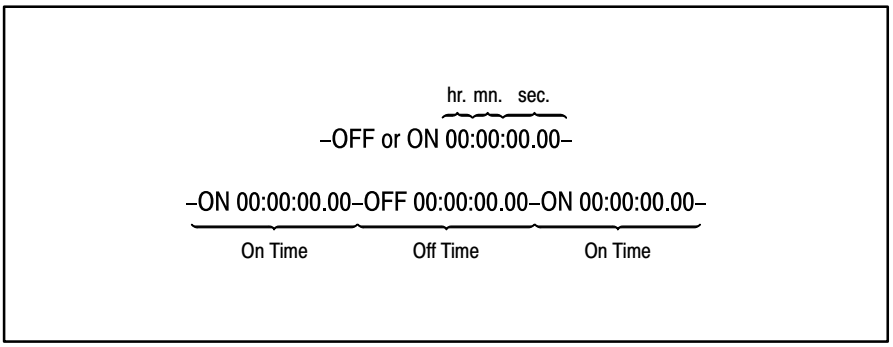
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 8.C
Contact Histogram Functions

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Contact Histogram Continuous	RUN RUN/PROGRAM or TEST	[SEARCH] [6] [Bit Address] [DISPLAY] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Provides a continuous display of the ON/OFF history of the addressed bit in hours, minutes, and seconds. Can obtain a hardcopy printout of contact histogram by connecting a peripheral device to Channel C and selecting proper baud rate before indicated key sequence. To terminate.
Contact Histogram Paged	RUN RUN/PROGRAM or TEST	[SEARCH] [7] [Bit Address] [DISPLAY] [DISPLAY] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Displays 11 lines of the ON/OFF history of the addressed bit in hours, minutes, and seconds. Displays the next 11 lines of contact histogram. Can obtain a hard copy printout of contact histogram by connecting peripheral device to Channel C and selecting proper baud rate. To terminate.

After pressing [DISPLAY], the data of the histogram will be displayed on every other line with 5 frames of data per line. Each frame of data contains the on or off status and the length of time in hours, minutes and seconds [read between the dash (–) symbols] in the format shown in Figure 8.1.

Figure 8.1
Contact Histogram Display



If the bit is changing states faster than can be printed or displayed, a buffer is maintained to store these changes. If the buffer becomes full, all monitoring stops and a BUFFER FULL message will be displayed. Subsequent changes in the on-off status of the device are lost until the histogram function finishes printing out or displaying the data in the buffer. Then a BUFFER RESET message will be displayed and the histogram function will resume.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The industrial terminal screen can display up to 11 lines of data at one time. In the continuous mode, the screen will automatically display a new page of data when the screen is full.

In the paged mode, 11 lines will fill the screen and stop. Subsequent changes are stored in the buffer until [DISPLAY] is pressed. The data stored in the buffer will then be displayed, one page at a time.

To terminate the contact histogram, press [CANCEL COMMAND].

8.3 Digital Cassette Recorder

The 1770-SA digital cassette recorder is a peripheral device that connects to channel C of the industrial terminal. It is used to dump memory onto tape, to load memory from tape and to verify memory.

8.3.1 Dumping Memory Content to Cassette Tape

The cassette dump command is used to dump (RECORD) the contents of the data table, user program and messages onto a cassette tape. Although accessible in any mode, it is recommended that the dump be performed only in the program mode because data table values are constantly changing in other modes.

To dump the complete memory onto the cassette tape, position the cursor on the first rung. The cassette dump command is then activated by pressing [RECORD]0 on the PLC-2 Family overlay, and by pressing [RECORD ON TAPE] on the cassette recorder.

As memory is being recorded, the industrial terminal will count and display the number of data table words and program words that were recorded on tape. This information is displayed as follows:

- ABCD Program Words
- EFGH Data Table Words

The cassette dump command is self-terminating. At completion, the content on the tape should be verified. The operation is terminated by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

8.3.2 Loading Memory from Cassette Tape

Loading the processor memory from cassette tape can be done only in program mode only when the memory write protect is not active. The data table must be configured to the size which will match the data table of the taped program. Set the data table size as described in Section 3.2.1, Data Table Configuration. If the size of the data table on tape is not immediately available and the processor is configured differently, the load operation will abort automatically. The industrial terminal will display the data table configuration contained on the tape along with a prompt to configure the processor data table.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The cassette load command is accessed by pressing [RECORD] 0 on the PLC-2 family overlay and by pressing either [READ FROM TAPE] or [PLAY] on the cassette recorder. To load the complete memory, rewind the tape to the beginning of the program.

As memory is being loaded, the number of data table words and program words will be counted and displayed. When loading is complete, the processor memory content should be verified. The operator must rewind the tape and press [READ FROM TAPE] on the recorder.

8.3.3 Verification

This command can be accessed immediately after dumping or loading memory to/from the cassette tape to verify that an error-free transfer was made. The processor must be in the program mode to verify the data table.

This command is accessed by first pressing [REWIND] and then either [READ FROM TAPE] or [PLAY] on the cassette recorder. During verification, the number of data table words and program words will be counted and displayed.

Once verification is complete, the number of program errors and whether the data table was verified will be displayed. The automatic verification command will self-terminate when complete. If program errors exist, they can be displayed and located by the procedure in Section 8.3.5 unless the cassette function is terminated by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

8.3.4 Program Verification

Accessible in any mode, this command is used to verify the user program and messages in memory with the version on the cassette tape, or vice versa. Although the data table size and configuration are checked, the data table values are not verified.

This command is accessed by pressing [RECORD][1] on the PLC-2 family overlay and by pressing either [READ FROM TAPE] or [PLAY] on the cassette recorder. Rewind the tape to the beginning of the program beforehand.

When verification is complete, the command will self-terminate and display the number of program discrepancies, if any. If discrepancies are found, either the tape can be re-recorded using the memory dump procedure, or the processor memory can be corrected using the procedure in Section 8.3.5.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8.3.5 Displaying and Locating Errors

During automatic or program verification, the processor will identify discrepancies between memory content and the content on the cassette tape. By pressing [SEARCH] 9 on the PLC-2 family overlay, the number of program and data table discrepancies found and whether or not the data table was verified will be displayed. Up to 19 discrepancies can be detected.

Each program discrepancy can be searched for and located by pressing [SEARCH] and a number from 01 to 19. Each time a discrepancy is searched for, the rung containing it will be displayed with the cursor positioned on the instruction that doesn't match the corresponding message on tape. A hard copy printout of the tape program is required for visual comparison. If the Processor memory is in error, it can be corrected using the editing procedure described in Section 4.4.4.

This function can be terminated at any time by pressing the [CANCEL COMMAND] key.

8.4 Data Cartridge Recorder

The 1770-SB data cartridge recorder is a peripheral device used for program storage and retrieval. It connects to channel C of the industrial terminal and uses a magnetic data cartridge tape to record (dump), load and verify processor memory.

The data cartridge recorder can be operated from the industrial terminal keyboard. It can also be operated in the same manner as a 1770-SA digital cassette recorder using both the recorder control panel and the industrial terminal keyboard. In either case, the baud rate switch in the data cartridge recorder must be set to 1200.

It should be noted that when a data cartridge tape is inserted and the recorder is on, the recorder will automatically rewind the tape to correct tape tension. This process should not be confused with the dump, load or verify operation.

Remote operation of the data cartridge recorder from the industrial terminal keyboard is discussed in the following paragraphs. For operation in the same manner as a digital cassette recorder, refer to Section 8.3.

8.4.1 Dumping Memory Content onto Data Cartridge Tape

Data table, user program and messages can be recorded onto a data cartridge tape and the transfer verified by a single command from the industrial terminal. The processor should be in program mode to ensure that the data table values are not changing.

Once the cursor is positioned on the first instruction in user program, the cartridge dump command is initiated by pressing [RECORD] [SHIFT] [B].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

As memory content is being recorded on tape, the industrial terminal will count the number of user program and data table words and display them as follows:

- ABCD Program Words
- EFGH Data Table Words

After memory content has been recorded, the tape is automatically rewound and the content verified with the content in memory to be sure that no discrepancies occurred during the recording operation. During verification, the number of user program and data table words are again counted and displayed.

Once verification is complete, a message stating the number of discrepancies between processor memory and tape content, if any, will be displayed. If 1 or more discrepancies are found, the entire recording operation should be repeated.

The memory dump command can be aborted at any time by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

8.4.2 Loading Memory from a Data Cartridge Tape

Processor memory can be loaded from a data cartridge tape and the transfer verified automatically by pressing [RECORD] [SHIFT] [A] on the industrial terminal keyboard. The processor must be in program mode.

The data table must be configured to the size which will match the data table of the taped program. Set the data table size as described in Section 3.2.1, Data Table Configuration. If the size of the data table on tape is not immediately available and the processor is configured differently, the load operation will abort automatically. The industrial terminal will display the data table configuration contained on the tape along with a prompt to configure the processor data table.

The number of user program and data table words are counted and displayed while memory content is loaded and again during verification. After verification, a message displays the number of discrepancies found, if any. Instructions in memory that don't match corresponding instructions on the data cartridge tape can be located and displayed using the procedure described in Section 8.3.5, Displaying and Locating Errors. The discrepancies can be corrected if a hard copy printout of the program is available showing the correct instructions. Otherwise erase the entire memory (put the cursor on the first instruction and press [CLEAR MEMORY] 99) and repeat the memory loading procedure.

The cartridge load command can be aborted at any time by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

8.4.3 Data Cartridge Verification

This command is used to verify user program and messages in processor memory with the content in data cartridge tape, or vice versa. Although the data table size and configuration are checked, the data table content is not verified.

With the processor in any mode, verification can be done by pressing the keys [RECORD] [SHIFT] [C] on the industrial terminal keyboard. The number of user program and data table words are counted and displayed while tape content and memory content are being compared. When verification is complete, the number of discrepancies in processor memory can be located and displayed as described in Section 8.3.5 and corrected by reference to a hard copy print out. The verification process can be aborted at any time by pressing [CANCEL COMMAND].

8.5 Ladder Diagram Dump

Accessible in any mode, the ladder diagram dump command is used to print out a hard copy of the user program using a peripheral printer that is connected to channel C.

This command is accessed by pressing the keys [SEARCH] 44 on the PLC-2 family overlay. The printout will begin from the current rung, allowing all or part of the program to be printed.

When the printout is complete, this command is automatically terminated. This command can be terminated before completion by pressing [ESC] on the peripheral device or [CANCEL COMMAND] on the PLC-2 family overlay.

8.6 Total Memory Dump

The total memory dump command is accessible in the program mode only. It is used to print out a hard copy of the data table, user program and messages using a peripheral printer connected to channel C.

This command is accessed by pressing:

- [RECORD]
- Set the baud rate (Table 8.B)
- [SEARCH 45]

The complete memory will print out regardless of cursor position.

The data table will be printed in hexadecimal. The bit pattern for each data table word will be as shown in Figure 8.2. In each row, the 4-digit octal word address is the address where the left-most hex value is stored. For example, the hex values ECCB and 024C are stored in word addresses 0020 and 0025, respectively. For more information on the hexadecimal numbering system, refer to Appendix B, Number Systems.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The data table printout will be followed by the user program in ladder diagram and block format. The messages will be printed out and identified by number.

When the printout is complete, this command is automatically terminated. The total memory dump command can be terminated prior to completion by pressing [ESC] on the peripheral printer or [CANCEL COMMAND] on the PLC-2 family overlay.

Figure 8.2
Data Table Printout in Hexadecimal

Word Addr	Data							
0010	26C1	A4FF	952B	F073	D572	43C3	FFFF	300F
0020	ECCB	9A00	4721	002F	5101	024C	312B	AC0B
”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”
”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”
”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”
0177	2EC4	6F6D	ABCD	1C2D	4F6C	D10D	21F6	5BA2
”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”
”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”	”

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 9

Report Generation

9.0 General

The report generation function of the T3 industrial terminal, performed in the PLC-2 mode, can be used to generate messages that contain ASCII and graphic characters, and variable data table information. The messages are stored in the processor's memory after the END of program statement.

We also have a PLC-2 Family Report Generation Module (Cat. No. 1770-RG) which performs the report generation function. This feature is used to generate messages stored in the processor's memory. These messages may be generated manually or automatically.

The T3 industrial terminal and the RG module features include:

- Up to 70 messages – you can choose the number of messages to be stored
- Simple programming – only 2 or 3 rungs of programming are required to display a message by program logic
- Intelligent printer interface – the RG module can monitor a busy/ready signal from the printer
- Selectable communication rates – you can choose from seven communication rates: 110, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800 or 9600 bits per second
- Selectable parity bit – you can choose odd, even or no parity

In addition to these features, the RG module features include:

- Stored messages – Up to 198 messages can be stored
- On-Line message store, edit or delete – you can store, edit or delete a message while the processor is executing its program
- Message protection – module guards against inadvertent deletion of a message
- Real-time clock – you can enter and display the time, and use the time in a message. Time format is the 24-hour (military) format — 4:15 PM is 16:15 hours

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

- Real-time calendar – you can enter and display the date, and use the date in a message. Date format is month/day/year — July 16, 1984 is 7/16/84.
- Peripheral fault detection – module sets bit 027/06 in the processor data table when the module detects a fault in the peripheral device
- Module reconfiguration – you can reconfigure the module's operational configuration (internal switch settings) from the peripheral device keyboard
- Selectable communications configuration – you can select EIA RS-232C communication (up to 50 feet) or A-B long line communication (up to 5,000 feet) with the RG module
- Selectable communication rates – allow you to increase the communication rate to 19,200 bits
- Selectable number of data bits – you can choose either seven or eight data bits per character

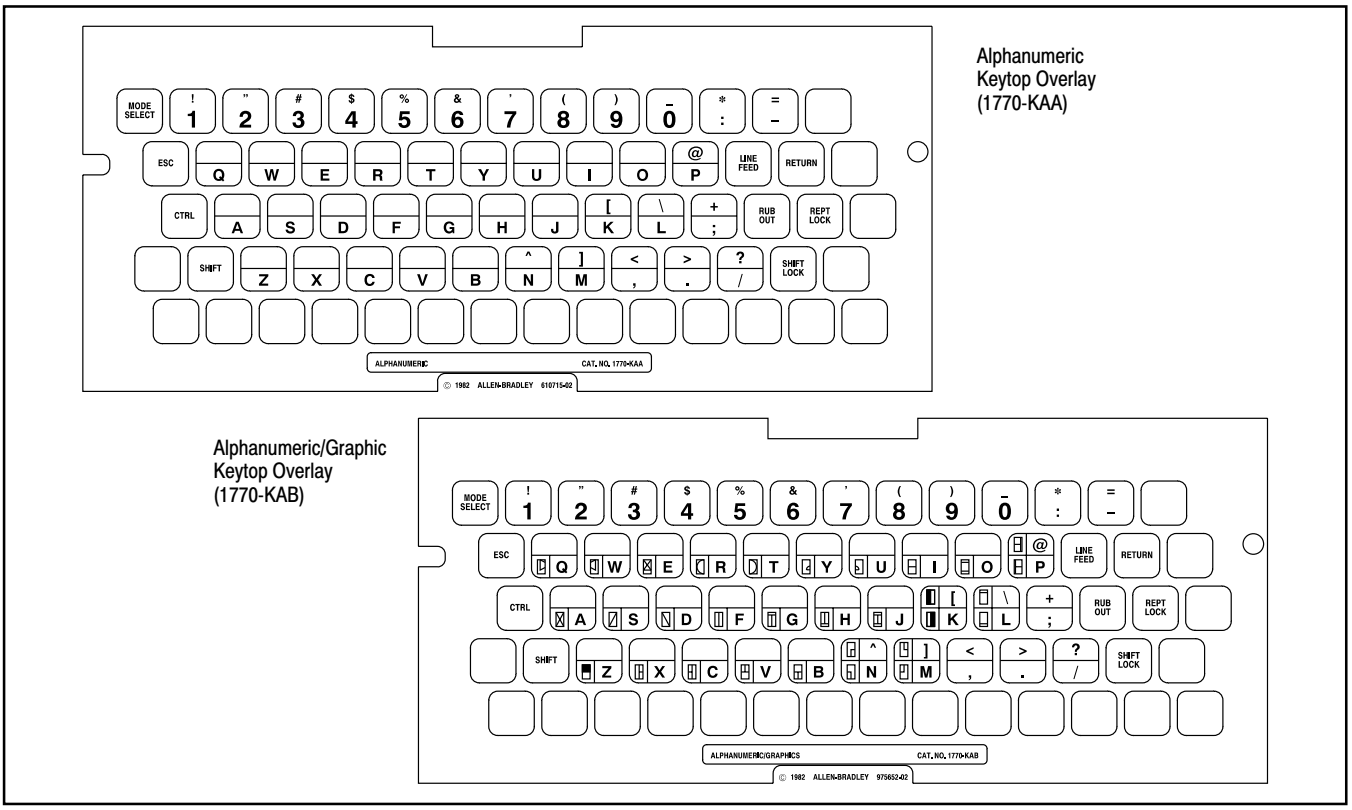
Messages can be entered into memory from either the T3 industrial terminal or a peripheral device connected to channel C of the industrial terminal. If the industrial terminal is used, one of two keytop overlays can be used, depending on whether graphic characters are desired (Figure 9.1):

- Alphanumeric Keytop Overlay (Cat. No. 1770-KAA)
- Alphanumeric/Graphics Keytop Overlay (Cat. No. 1770-KAB)

The messages can be manually displayed or printed on the T3 industrial terminal or peripheral device by a key sequence each time a message is desired. They can also be activated through program control by programming specific data table bits in the ladder diagram program (Section 9.3).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 9.1
Alphanumeric Keytop Overlays



9.1 Report Generation Commands

The report generation function is entered by pressing [RECORD] [DISPLAY] on the PLC-2 Family keytop overlay. There are 6 report generation commands used to enter control words and to store, print, report and delete messages and to display an index of existing messages. These are summarized in Table 9.A.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 9.A
Report Generation Commands

Command	Key Sequence	Description
Enter Report Generation Function	[RECORD] [DISPLAY]	Puts Industrial Terminal into Report Generation Function.
Message Store	[M] [S] [,] [message number] [RETURN]	Stores message in Processor memory. Use [ESC] to end message.
Message Print	[M] [P] [,] [message number] [RETURN]	Prints message exactly as entered.
Message Report	[M] [R] [,] [message number] [RETURN]	Prints message with current Data Table values or bit status.
Message Delete	[M] [D] [,] [message number] [RETURN]	Removes message from Processor memory.
Message Index	[M] [I] [RETURN]	Lists messages used and the number of words in each message.
Automatic Report Generation	[SEARCH] [4] [0] or [M] [R] [RETURN]	Allows messages to be printed through program control.
Exit Automatic Report Generation	[ESC] or [CANCEL COMMAND][1]	Terminates Automatic Report Generation.
Exit Report Generation Function	[ESC] [ESC] [ESC][2] or [CANCEL COMMAND][1]	Returns to ladder diagram display. Terminates Report Generation Function.

[1] [CANCEL COMMAND] can only be used if the function was entered by a command from a peripheral device.

[2] Requires Series B, Revision F (or later) keyboard.

9.1.1 Message Control Word File – MS, 0

Bits from eight consecutive user-selected words control the 64 additional messages (1770-FD Series B and all its subsequent revisions).

The eight message control words are determined by establishing a 2-word message in memory, called message 0. Message 0 is stored as follows:

[M] [S] [,] 0 [RETURN]

A prompt, MESSAGE CONTROL WORDS (Y DIGITS REQUIRED): will be printed. (Y is the number of digits, 3, 4 or 5, of a word address for the selected data table size). The beginning word address of the message control word file must be entered. The industrial terminal will calculate and display the words in the message control word file. The message control word file can be located in any unused data table area except processor work areas and input image table areas. If memory write protect is active, the message control word file must be placed in the area of data table which can be changed (010_8-377_8). Once the start address is chosen,

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

the industrial terminal will also display a table (Table 9.B) which shows the message numbers associated with each message control word.

Table 9.B
Example Message Control Word-Message Number Relationship

Control Words	Message Numbers
200	010-017
201	110-117
202	210-217
203	310-317
204	410-417
205	510-517
206	610-617
207	710-717

NOTE: This table assumes user-selected message control words begin at 200_8.

9.1.2 Message Store – MS

Accessible only in the program mode, this command is used to enter messages in memory. The message store command is accessed by pressing [M][S][,] [message number][RETURN]. Valid message numbers are 1-6, 010-017, 110-117, 210-217, 310-317, 410-417, 510-517, 610-617 and 710-717.

After pressing the key sequence, a READY FOR INPUT message is displayed as a prompt to enter the desired message. Any subsequent keys pressed then become part of the message. If you try to use a message number that already exists, the terminal will display a prompt MESSAGE ALREADY EXISTS.

While entering a message, each key pressed, except the [SHIFT], [CTRL], [ESC], or [RUB OUT] keys, generates a code that is stored in one byte of memory. This includes ASCII and graphic characters, as well as other keys such as [LINE FEED], [RETURN] or the [SPACE] keys. The [RUB OUT] key is not stored in memory. The [SHIFT] and [CTRL] keys and the next character in the sequence are stored together in one byte of memory.

Messages can be entered which, when reported, will give the current value of a data table word or byte or the on/off status of a data table bit by using the delimiters shown in Table 9.C. The desired delimiter is entered before and after the bit, byte or word address. The delimiter is used to tell the industrial terminal to print the current status or value of the bit, byte, or word at the address. As many addresses as needed can be entered consecutively by sharing the same delimiter, such as *XXX*XXX*XXX*. The asterisk delimiters, *, should only be used if the data table size is less than 512 words (not exceeding address 777_8).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 9.C
Address Delimiters

Delimiter Format	Explanation	Message Report Format
XXX	Enter 3-digit word address between delimiters.	Displays BCD value at assigned word address.
XXX1 or *XXX0*	Enter 3-digit word address and a “1” for upper byte or a “0” for lower byte between delimiters.	Displays the octal value at assigned byte address.
XXXXX	Enter 5-digit bit address between delimiters.	Displays the ON or OFF status of the assigned bit address.
#XXX#	Enter 3-, 4-, or 5-digit word address between delimiters.	Displays the BCD value at assigned word address.
!XXX!	Enter 3-, 4-, or 5-digit word address between delimiters.	Displays the 4-digit hex value at address.
&XXX1& &XXX0&	Enter 3-, 4-, or 5-digit word address and a “1” for upper byte or a “0” for lower byte between delimiters.	Displays the octal value at the assigned byte address.
^XXXXX^	Enter 5-, 6-, or 7-digit bit address between delimiters.	Displays the ON or OFF status of the assigned bit address.

As an example, suppose it was desired to report the output condition, or or off, of a device, SR6, during each cycle of machine operation. Delimiters would be used to denote the output address 013/05, and the cycle counter accumulative value (stored at 030_8). The desired message, SR6 is (on or off) in cycle (xxx), would be entered into memory with the following keystrokes: [S][R][6][ ][I][S][ ][*][0][1][3][0][5][*][ ][I][N][ ][C][Y][C][L][E][ ][#][0][3][0][#][.][ESC].

The message entry must be terminated with the escape ([ESC]) key. Until [ESC] is pressed, all keystrokes become part of the message. Pressing [ESC] again will return to ladder diagram display. Pressing [CANCEL COMMAND] on the PLC-2 Family keytop overlay will also terminate message store and return to ladder diagram display if a peripheral device was used to enter report generation mode.

9.1.3 Message Print – MP

Accessible in any mode, the message print command is used to print the contents of a message to verify it. This command is accessed by pressing [M] [P] [,] [message number] [RETURN]. Valid message numbers are listed under MESSAGE STORE.

In the example, the message print command would give the following:

SR6 IS *01305* IN CYCLE #030#.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The message print command is self-terminating. [ESC] or [CANCEL COMMAND] can be used to return to ladder diagram display.

9.1.4 Message Report – MR

Accessible in any mode, the message report command is used to print a message with the current data table value or bit status that corresponds to an address between the delimiters. This command is accessed by pressing [M] [R] [,] [message number] [RETURN].

In the example, the message report command would give the following: (e.g., bit 013/05 is on and counter 030 accumulated value is 5)

SR6 IS ON IN CYCLE 005

The message report command is self-terminating. When [ESC] or [CANCEL COMMAND] is pressed, ladder diagram operation will resume.

9.1.5 Message Delete – MD

Accessible only in program mode, the message delete command is used to delete messages from memory. This command is accessed by pressing [M] [D] [,] [message number] [RETURN].

The message delete command cannot be terminated before completion. It will self-terminate after the message has been cleared from memory and a MESSAGE DELETED prompt will be printed. [ESC] or [CANCEL COMMAND] can be used to return to ladder diagram display.

9.1.6 Message Index – MI

Accessible in any mode, the message index command prints a list of the message numbers used and the amount of memory (in words) used for each message. In addition, the number of unused memory words available will be listed.

The message index command is accessed by pressing [M] [I] [RETURN]. This command cannot be terminated before completion. It will self-terminate after the list is completed. To return to ladder diagram display, press [ESC] or [CANCEL COMMAND].

9.1.7 Control Codes and Special Commands

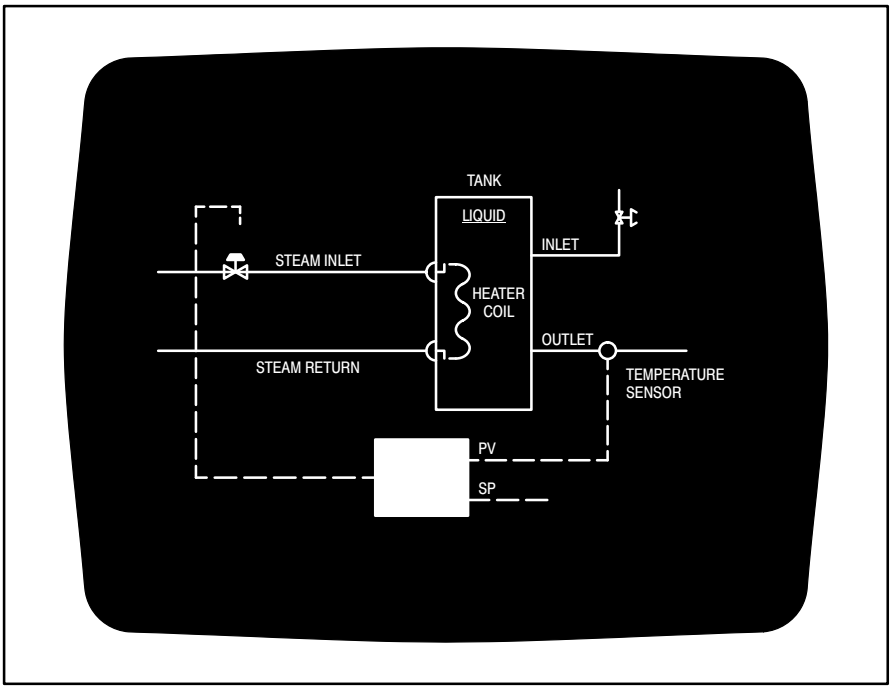
When entering a message, there are several keys and special industrial terminal control codes that are used to move through the display and perform a variety of functions (Tables 9.D and 9.E). For example, graphic capability can be accessed by the control code, [CTRL] [P] [5] [G]. In addition, standard ASCII control codes can be used with the industrial terminal (Table 9.F). These codes, although not displayed, can be interpreted and acted on by a peripheral device connected to channel C.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The T3 industrial terminal screen size is an 80 x 24 format: 80 columns across by 24 lines down. An example message using graphic and alphanumeric characters is shown in Figure 9.2.

The control code, [CTRL] [P] [Column #] [;] [Line #] [A], should be used for cursor positioning to conserve memory when possible. For example, [CTRL] [P] [3] [9] [;] [9] [A] uses 3 words of memory, storing CRTL P in one byte and each remaining character in one byte each. If the cursor had been at column 0, line 0 and normal space and line feed commands were used, it would have taken 24 words of memory to accomplish the same thing! Note that the column and line numbers begin at zero rather than one.

Figure 9.2
Example Graphic/Alphanumeric Message



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 9.D
Alphanumeric/Graphic Keytop Definitions

Key	Function
[LINE FEED]	Moves the cursor down one line in the same column.
[RETURN]	Returns the cursor to the beginning of the next line.
[RUB OUT]	Deletes the last character or control code that was entered.
[REPT LOCK]	Allows the next character that is pressed to be repeated continuously until [REPT LOCK] is pressed again.
[SHIFT]	Allows the next key pressed to be a shift character.
[SHIFT LOCK]	Allows all subsequent keys pressed to be shift characters until [SHIFT] or [SHIFT LOCK] is pressed.
[CTRL]	Used as part of a key sequence to generate a control code.
[ESC]	Terminates the present function.
[MODE SELECT]	Terminates all functions and returns the Mode Select display to the screen.
Blank Yellow Keys	Space keys. Move the cursor one position to the right.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 9.E
Industrial Terminal Control Codes

Control Code Key Sequence	Function
[CTRL] [P] [Column #] [;] [Line #] [A]	Positions the cursor at the specified column and line number. [CTRL] [P] [A] will position the cursor at the top left corner of the screen.
[CTRL] [P] [F]	Moves the cursor one space to the right.
[CTRL] [P] [U]	Moves the cursor one line up in the same column.
[CTRL] [P] [5] [C]	Turns cursor ON.
[CTRL] [P] [4] [C]	Turns cursor OFF.
[CTRL] [P] [5] [G]	Turns ON graphics capability.
[CTRL] [P] [4] [G]	Turns OFF graphics capability.
[CTRL] [P] [5] [P]	Turns Channel C Outputs ON.
[CTRL] [P] [4] [P]	Turns Channel C Outputs OFF.
[CTRL] [I]	Horizontal tab that moves the cursor to the next preset 8th position.
[CTRL] [K]	Clears the screen from cursor position to end of screen and moves the cursor to the top left corner of the screen.
Key Sequence	**Attribute[1]**
[CTRL] [P] [0] [T]	Attribute 0 = Normal Intensity
[CTRL] [P] [1] [T]	Attribute 1 = Underline
[CTRL] [P] [2] [T]	Attribute 2 = Intensify
[CTRL] [P] [3] [T]	Attribute 3 = Blinking
[CTRL] [P] [4] [T]	Attribute 4 = Reverse Video

[1] Any three attributes can be used at one time using the following key sequence: [CTRL] [P] [Attribute #] [;] [Attribute #] [;] [Attribute #] [T].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 9.F
ASCII Control Codes

Control Code[1]	Display[2]	ASCII Mnemonic	Name
CTRL 0[3]	$^{N}_{U}$	NUL	NULL
CTRL A[3]	$^{S}_{H}$	SOH	START OF HEADER
CTRL B[3]	$^{S}_{X}$	STX	START OF TEXT
CTRL C[3]	$^{E}_{X}$	ETX	END OF TEXT
CTRL D	$^{E}_{T}$	EOT	END OF TRANSMISSION
CTRL E	$^{E}_{Q}$	ENQ	ENQUIRE
CTRL F	$^{A}_{K}$	ACK	ACKNOWLEDGE
CTRL G	$^{B}_{L}$	BEL	BELL
CTRL H	$^{B}_{S}$	BS	BACKSPACE
CTRL I	$^{H}_{T}$	HT	HORIZONTAL TAB
CTRL J	$^{L}_{F}$	LF	LINE FEED
CTRL K	$^{V}_{T}$	VT	VERTICAL TAB
CTRL L	$^{F}_{F}$	FF	FORM FEED
CTRL M	$^{C}_{R}$	CR	CARRIAGE RETURN
CTRL N	$^{S}_{O}$	SO	SHIFT OUT
CTRL O	$^{S}_{I}$	SI	SHIFT IN
CTRL P	$^{D}_{L}$	DLE	DATA LINK ESCAPE
CTRL Q	$^{D}_{1}$	DC1	DEVICE CONTROL 1
CTRL R	$^{D}_{2}$	DC2	DEVICE CONTROL 2
CTRL S	$^{D}_{3}$	DC3	DEVICE CONTROL 3
CTRL T	$^{D}_{4}$	DC4	DEVICE CONTROL 4
CTRL U	$^{N}_{K}$	NAK	NEGATIVE ACKNOWLEDGE
CTRL V	$^{S}_{Y}$	SYN	SYNCHRONOUS IDLE
CTRL W	$^{E}_{B}$	ETB	END OF TRANSMISSION BLOCK
CTRL X	$^{C}_{N}$	CAN	CANCEL
CTRL Y	$^{E}_{M}$	EM	END OF MEDIUM
CTRL Z	$^{S}_{B}$	SUB	SUBSTITUTE
ESCAPE	$^{E}_{C}$	ESC	ESCAPE
CTRL ,	$^{F}_{S}$	FS	FILE SEPARATOR
CTRL –	$^{G}_{S}$	GS	GROUP SEPARATOR
CTRL .	$^{R}_{S}$	RS	RECORD SEPARATOR
CTRL /	$^{U}_{S}$	US	UNIT SEPARATOR
DELETE	$^{D}_{T}$	DEL	DELETE

[1] Some ASCII control codes are generated using nonstandard keystrokes.

[2] Will be displayed when Control Code Display option is set ON in Alphanumeric mode only. (Not in Report Generation mode.)

[3] Invalid key in Report Generation mode.

9.2 Manually Initiated Report Generation

The processor will go into manual mode if the keyswitch is in the PROG position. If the processor keyswitch is changed to the PROG position, the processor will automatically change from automatic to manual report generation mode.

Every time the mode of operation is changed, the peripheral device displays a prompt to indicate the current operating mode.

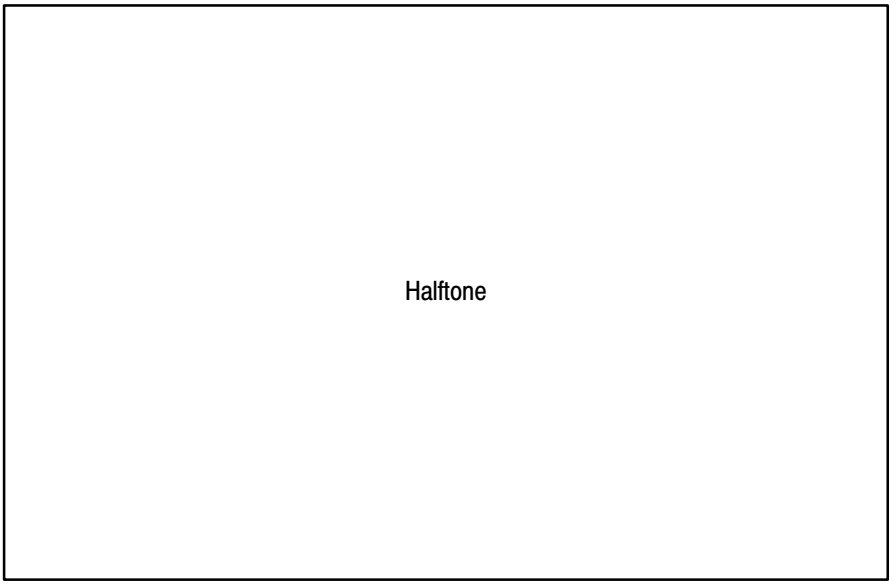
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

9.3 Automatic Report Generation

Messages can be printed through program control automatically be energizing specific message request bits using output latch and output unlatch instructions.

Automatic report generation can be accessed if the keyswitch is in the TEST, RUN, or RUN/PROGRAM position by pressing [SEARCH] 40 or by pressing [M] [R] [RETURN]. It can also be activated automatically upon initialization of the industrial terminal by setting parity switches 4 and 5 up on the industrial terminal's main logic board (Figure 9.3).

Figure 9.3
Parity Switch Location



Once automatic report generation is activated, the message request bits are scanned by the industrial terminal for zero to one transition. Each time one of the request bits goes true, the corresponding message will be printed automatically.

Automatic report generation can be terminated by pressing [ESC]. To return to ladder diagram display, press [ESC] again. Pressing [CANCEL COMMAND] will also terminate automatic report generation and return to ladder diagram display if automatic report generation was entered by a command from a peripheral device.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

9.3.1 Messages 1-6

Messages 1-6 use bits 10-15 of word 027 as message request bits. All other messages use a user-defined file of message request bits for control. These two categories will be discussed separately.

The upper byte of word 027 is used to control messages 1-6. Bit 027/10 is the request bit for message number 1; bit 027/11 is the request bit for message number 2 and so on. Bit 027/16, the busy bit, is set on when any of messages 1-6 are requested and will remain on until all requested messages have been printed. Once all messages are generated, bit 027/17 will stay on for 300 ms and is then set off.

9.3.2 Additional Messages

The upper byte of each message control word contains the request bits for eight messages. There is an easy way to determine the message number from the bit which requests it. The three right-most digits in the bit address are coded to the message number. For example, if message number 312 were of interest, bit 12 of the third message control word would request message 312 on a false-to-true transition (Figure 9.4).

Figure 9.4
Bit Address-Message Number Relationship

Control Word Number	Control Word Address	Message Numbers
0	200	010-017
1	201	110-117
2	202	210-217
3	203	310-317
4	204	410-417
5	205	510-517
6	206	610-617
7	207	710-717

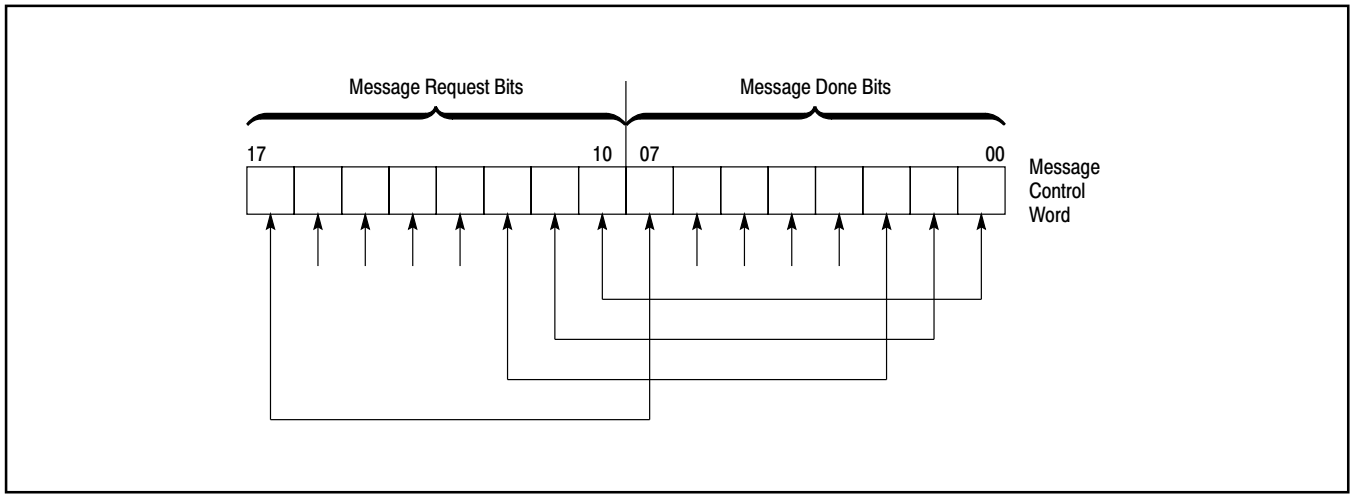
The control word addresses are user-selected.

Message number 3XX has a message request bit at address 203/XX. Message request bit 203/XX, when enabled, will activate message number 3XX where XX are bit numbers 10-17.

Unlike messages 1-6 which share a common done bit (027/17), the additional 64 messages each have a separate done bit. After a particular message has been printed, the done bit is set until the user program resets the request bit. Done bits are located in the lower byte of the message control words. Figure 9.5 shows this relationship. For example, if 404/15 is the request bit for a message, the done bit is located at 404/05, 10_8 (one byte) below the request bit.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 9.5
Message Request Bit-Done Bit Relationship



The message print command is valid for message 0. It will print out the message control word addresses such as tabular form shown in Table 9.B. If the location of the message control file is to be changed or if message 0 is no longer needed, it can be deleted with the message delete command and re-entered at any time.

WARNING: Message control words should not be used for any other purpose. Message control words also must not be used in output image table locations when output or block transfer modules are placed in corresponding slots. Hazardous or unexpected machine operation could result. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

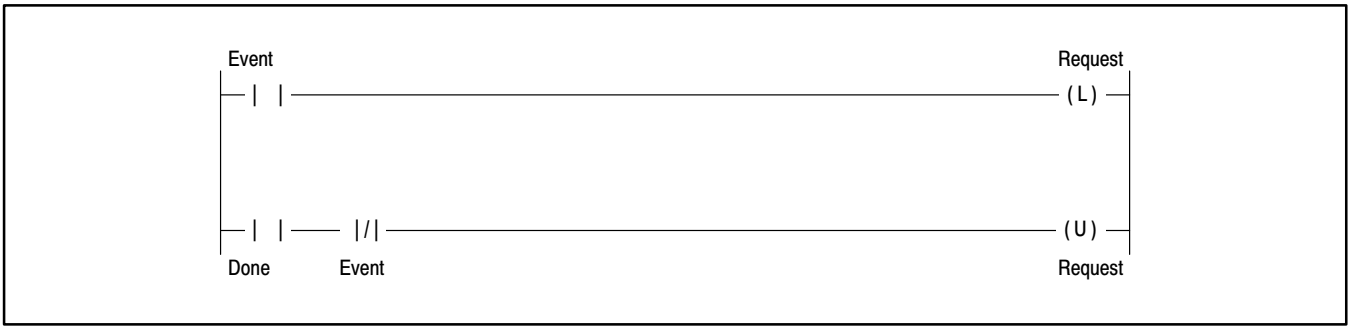
9.3.3 Example Programming

Using latch and unlatch instructions, automatic report generation can easily be programmed to handle multiple or simultaneous message requests. Simultaneous requests are handled by a priority system – the lower the message number, the higher the priority.

Figure 9.6 shows a sample program that can be used to activate each message. When the event occurs which requests the message, the request bit is latched. After the event has occurred and the message is printed (the done bit comes on), the request bit is unlatched. This technique also ensures the requested message only gets printed one time per request.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 9.6
Example Program to Request a Message



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 10

Block Transfer

10.0 General

Block transfer is a combination of an instruction and support rungs used to transfer up to 64 16-bit words of data in one scan from I/O modules to/from the data table. It is used with intelligent I/O modules such as the analog, PID, servo positioning, stepper positioning, ASCII, thermocouple, or encoder/counter modules which have this capability. Block transfer can be compared to single transfer programming in which only one word of data is transferred per scan.

Block transfer can be performed as a read, write or bidirectional operation, depending on the I/O module being used. An input module uses the block transfer read operation, an output module uses the block transfer write operation and a bi-directional module can use both the read and write operations. During a read operation, data is read into the processor's memory from the module. During a write operation, data is written to the output module from the processor's memory.

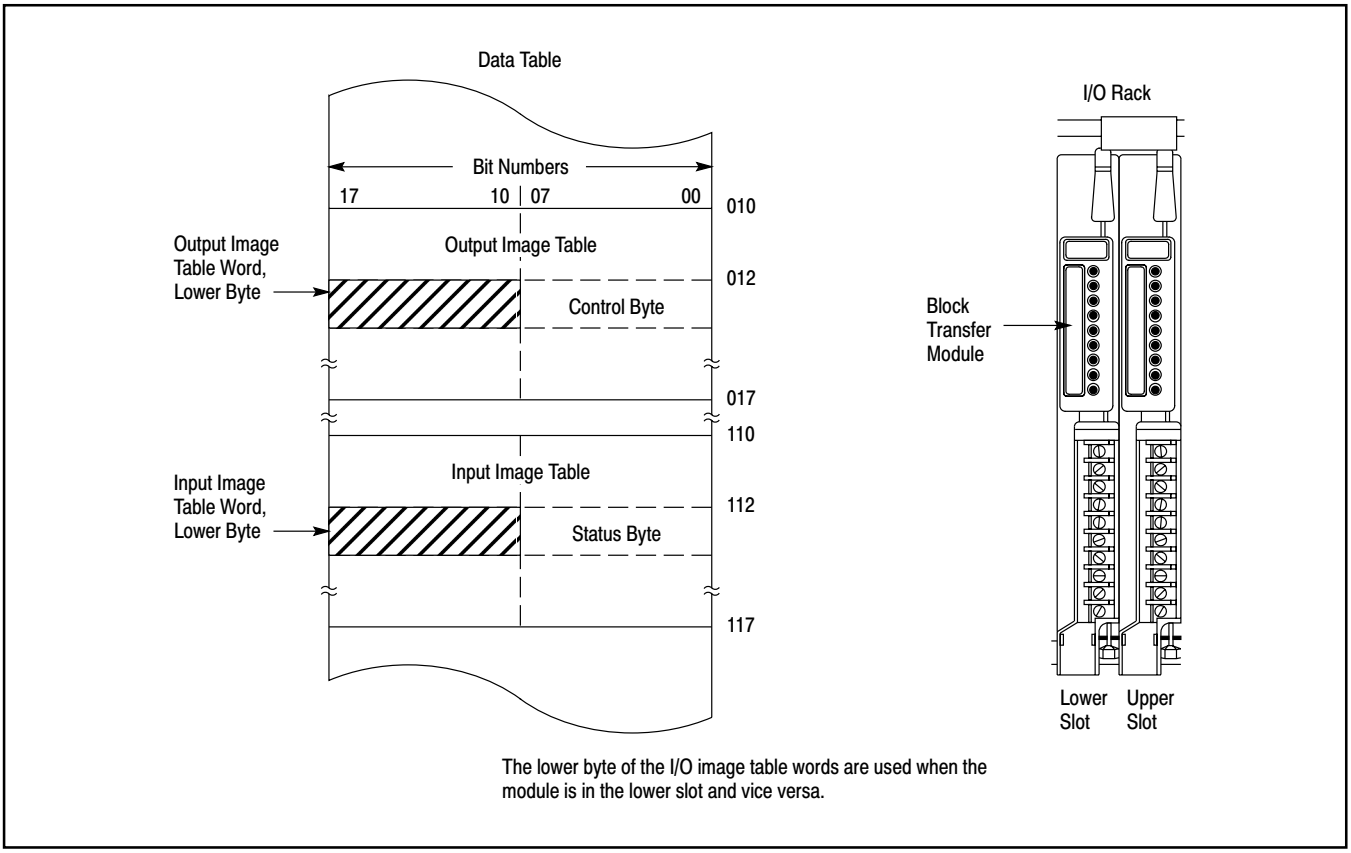
10.1 Basic Operation

The processor uses two (2) I/O image table bytes to communicate with block transfer modules. The byte corresponding to the module's address in the output image table (control byte) contains the read or write bit for initiating the transfer of data. The byte corresponding to the module's address in the input image table (status byte) is used to signal the completion of the transfer.

Whether the upper or lower byte of the I/O image table word is used depends on the position of the module in the module group. When in the lower slot, the lower byte is used and vice versa (Figure 10.1).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.1
Module Position-Image Table Byte Relationship



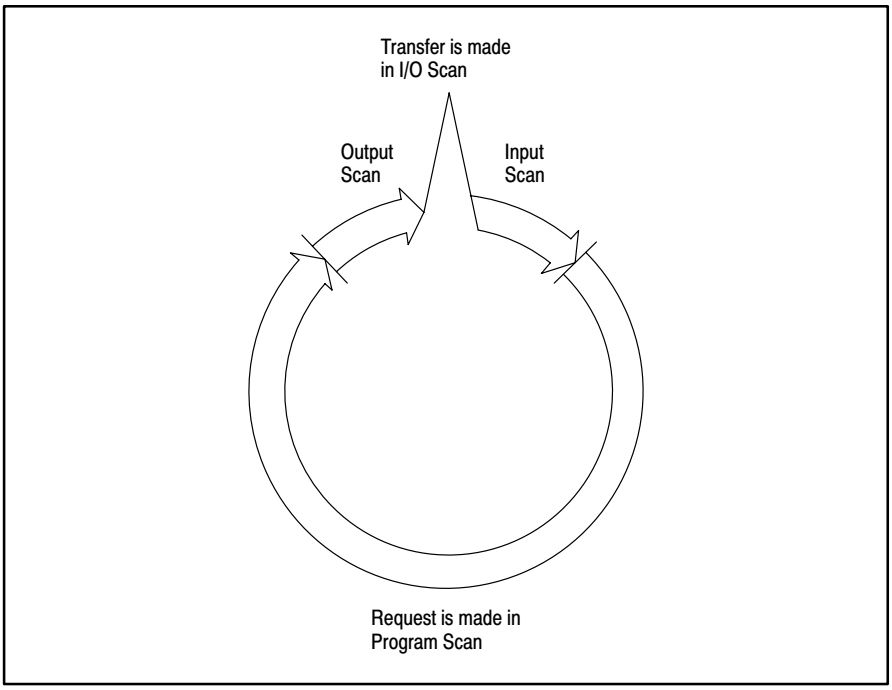
The block transfer read or write operation (Figure 10.2) is initiated in the program scan and completed in the I/O scan as follows:

1. Program scan – When the rung goes true, the instruction is enabled. The number of words to be transferred and the read or write bit that controls the direction of transfer are set by a bit pattern in the output image table byte.

2. I/O scan – The processor requests a transfer by sending the output image table byte data to the block transfer module during the scan of the output image table. The module signals that it is ready to transfer. The processor then interrupts the I/O scan and scans the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table, looking for the address of the module that is ready to transfer. The module address is stored in BCD at a word address in the same manner as an accumulated value of a timer is stored. The module address was entered by the programmer when entering the block instruction parameters. The word address at which the module address is stored is called the data address of the instruction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.2
Block Transfer Diagram



Once the module address is found, the processor locates the address of the file to which (or from which) the data will be transferred. The file address is stored in BCD at an address 100_8 above the address containing the module address. This is done in the same manner that the processor locates the preset value of a timer in a word address 100_8 above the accumulated value address. The analogy between block transfer and timer/counter data and addresses is shown in Table 10.A.

After locating the file address in the timer/counter area of the data table, the processor then duplicates and transfers the file data consecutively one word at a time until complete, starting at the selected file address.

At the completion of the transfer, a done bit for the read or write operation is set in the input image table byte as a signal that a valid transfer has been completed.

Table 10.A
Timer/Counter Block Transfer Analogy

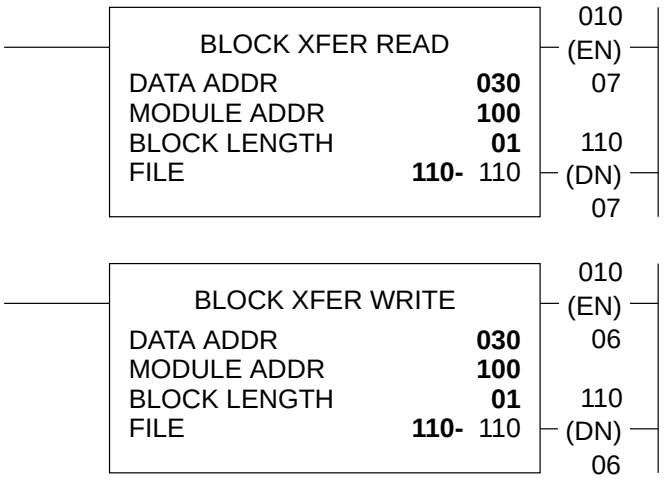
Address of Accumulated Value	↔	Data Address of Instruction
Accumulated Value in BCD	↔	Module Address in BCD
Address of Preset Value	↔	100_8 Above Data Address
Preset Value in BCD	↔	File Address in BCD

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.2 Block Transfer Instructions

The format of a block transfer read and a block transfer write instruction with default values is shown in Figure 10.3.

Figure 10.3
Block Transfer Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed (3 or 4) will depend on the size of the data table.

DATA ADDRESS	:	First possible address in accumulated value area of data table.
MODULE ADDRESS	:	RGS for R = Rack, G = Module Group, S = Slot Number.
BLOCK LENGTH	:	Number of words to be transferred (00 can be entered for default value or for 64 words).
FILE	:	Address of first word of the file, 100_8 above the data address.
ENABLE BIT –(EN)–	:	Automatically entered from the module address. Set on when rung containing the instruction is true.
DONE BIT –(DN)–	:	Automatically entered from the module address. Remains on for 1 scan following successful transfer.

10.2.1 Data Address and Module Address

The data address is used to store the module address of the block transfer module. The data address must be assigned the first available address in the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table. This depends upon the number of I/O racks being used (Table 10.B). When more than one block transfer module is used, consecutive data addresses must be assigned ahead of address for timer and counter instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 10.B
The First Available Address in Timer/Counter Area of Data Table

# I/O Racks	First Available Address in Timer/Counter Area
1	020
2	030
3	040
4	050
5	060
6	070
7	200

The module address is stored in BCD by r=rack, g=module group and s=slot number. When block transfer is performed, the processor searches the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table for a match of the module address.

10.2.2 Block Length

The block length is the number of words that the module will transfer. It depends on the type of module and the number of channels connected to it. The number of words requested by the instruction must be a valid number for the module: i.e. from 1 up to the maximum of 64. The maximum number is dependent on the type of module that is performing block transfer. The block length can also be set at the default value of the module, useful when programming bidirectional block transfers. For some modules, the default value allows the module to decide the number of words to be transferred. See the data sheet or user's manual pertaining to the module for additional information.

The block length heading of the instruction will accept any value from 00–63 whether or not valid for a particular module. A value of 00 is entered for the default value and/or for a block length of 64.

The block length is stored in binary in the byte corresponding to the module's address in the output image table.

10.2.3 File Address

The file address is the first word of the file to which (or from which) the transfer will be made. The file address is stored 100_8 words above the data address of the instruction. When the file address is entered into the instruction block, the industrial terminal computes and displays the ending address based on the block length.

When reserving an area for a block transfer file, an appropriate address must be selected to ensure that block transfer data will not write over assigned timer/counter accumulated and preset values. The file address cannot exceed address 17777_8.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.2.4 Enable Bit and Done Bit

The read and write bits are the enable bits for block transfer modules. Either one (or both for a bidirectional transfer) is set on in the program scan when the rung containing the block transfer instruction is true.

The done bit is set on in the I/O scan that the words are transferred, provided that the transfer was initiated and successfully completed. The done bit remains on for only one scan.

Block transfer will be requested in each program scan that the read and/or write bit remains on. The read and/or write bits are turned off when the rung containing the instruction goes false.

10.3 Instruction Notes for Block Transfer Read and Write Instructions

- Output Instruction
- Block length depends on the kind of module.
- Request is made in the program scan.
- I/O scan is interrupted for the transfer.
- Entire file is transferred in 1 scan.
- Done bit remains on for 1 scan after a valid transfer.
- Request requires 2 words of the data table.
- Key sequence [BLOCK XFER] 0 for write and [BLOCK XFER] 1 for read.

10.4 Causes of Run-Time Errors

Misuse and/or inadvertent changes of instruction data can cause run-time errors when:

- The module address is given a non-existent I/O rack number.
- A read transfer overruns the file into a processor work area or into user program by an inadvertent change of the block length code.

10.5 Programming Block Transfer Read and Write Instructions

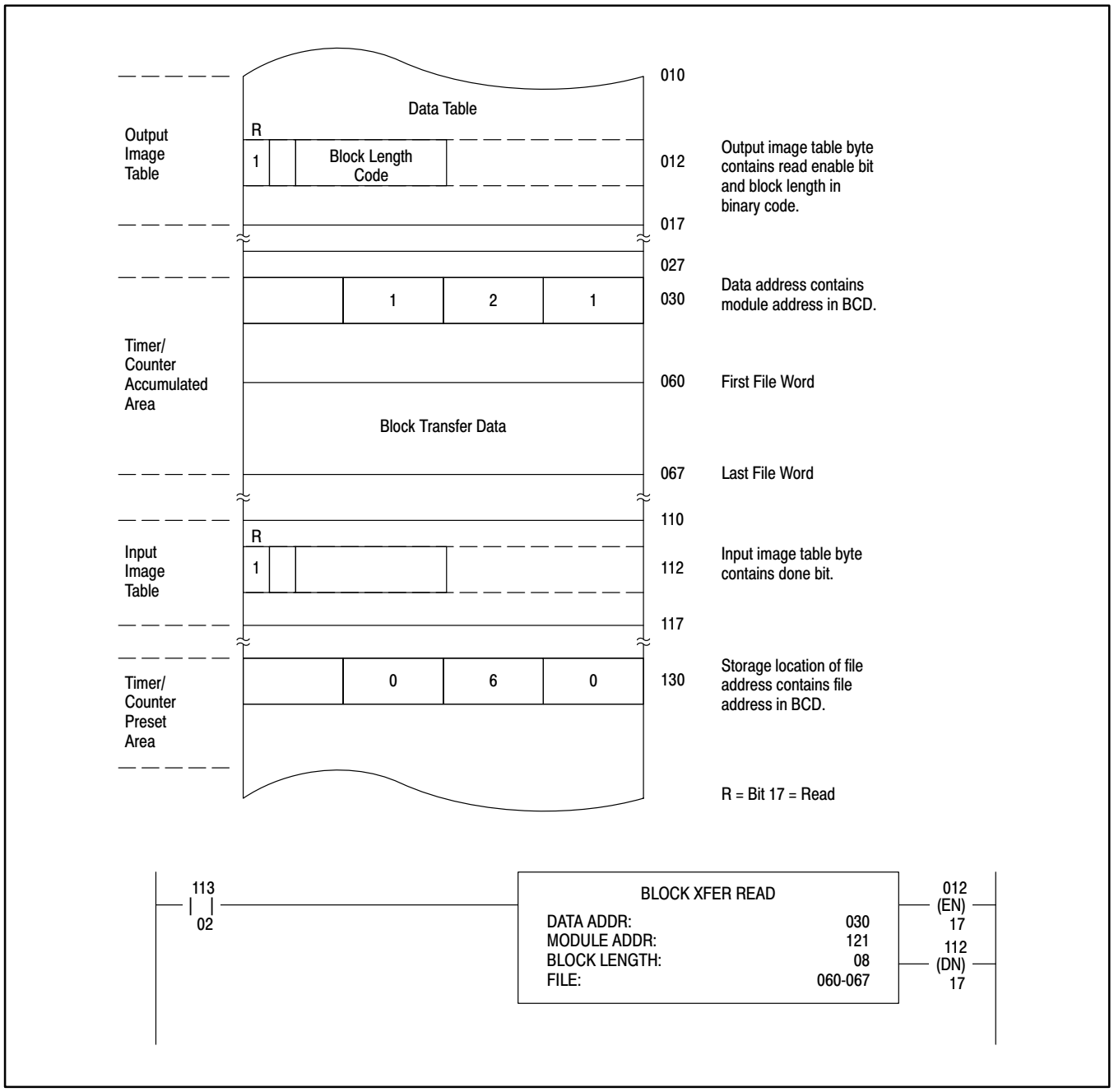
To program a block transfer read instruction, press keys [BLOCK XFER] 1 and enter the instruction parameters. To program a block transfer write instruction, press [BLOCK XFER] 0 and enter the instruction parameters.

An example rung containing a block transfer read instruction and the data table areas used by the instruction are shown in Figure 10.4. The following parameters have been entered into the instruction:

- Data address 030
- Module address 121
- Block length 08
- File 060

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.4
Data Table Locations for a Block Transfer Read Instruction



The module is located in rack 1, module group 2, slot 1. Therefore, the control and status bytes corresponding to the module's address in the output and input image tables are at word address 012 and 112 (upper bytes) respectively. The address of the read bit and done bit for the instruction are 012/17 and 112/17, respectively.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

During the program scan when input switch 113/02 is closed, the instruction is enabled and read bit 012/17 is set to 1. In the next scan of the output image table, the upper byte data of word address 012 is sent to the module. The module responds that it is ready for transfer. The processor interrupts the output image table scan and starts searching the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table. It finds the module address 121 in word address 030 and the file address, 060, in word address 130.

The processor then transfers the data from the module into the 8-word file beginning at word address 060 through 067. At the completion of the transfer, done bit 112/17 is set to 1. The processor then completes the I/O scan.

10.6 Multiple Reads of Different Block Lengths from One Module

Under certain conditions, it may be desirable to transfer part of a file rather than the entire file. For example, a processor could be programmed to read the first two or three channels of an analog input module periodically but read all channels less frequently. To do this, two or more block transfer read instructions would be used: one for each desired transfer length starting at the same first word. The read instructions would have the same module address, data address and file address but different block lengths. The size of the file would equal the largest transfer.

When two or more block transfer instructions have a common module address, careful programming is required to compensate for the following possible situations:

First, during any program scan, data in the output image table byte can be changed alternately by each successive block transfer instruction having a common module address. The enable bit can be turned on or off alternately according to the true or false condition of the rungs containing these instructions. The on or off status of the last rung will govern whether the transfer will occur.

Second, the block length can be changed alternately in accordance with the block lengths of the enabled instructions. The block length of the last enabled block transfer instruction having a common module address will govern the number of words transferred.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

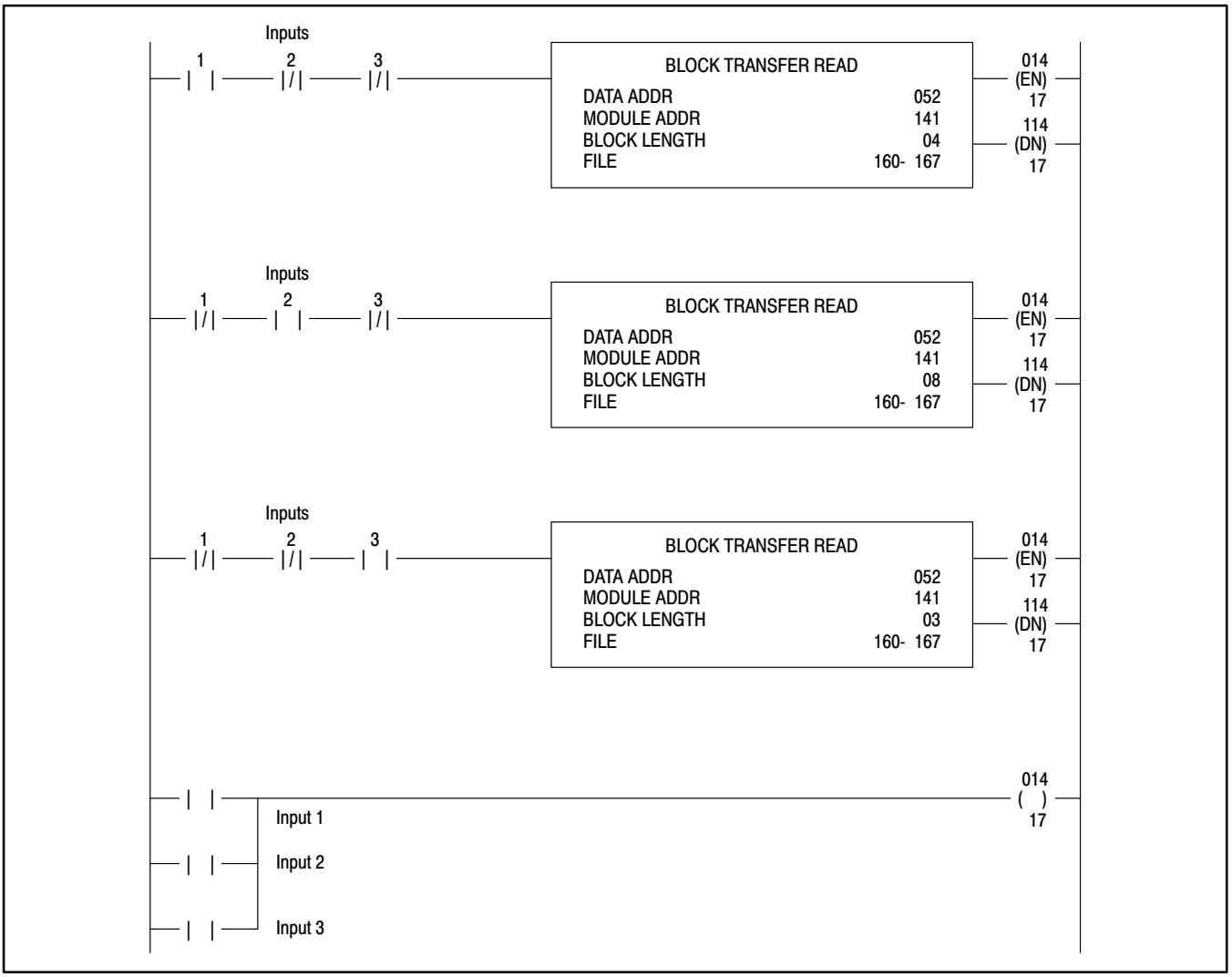
WARNING: When programming multiple writes (or reads) to the same module, it is possible that a desired transfer will not take place or the number of words transferred will not be the number intended. Invalid data could be sent to an analog output device (or could be operated upon in subsequent scans) resulting in unpredictable and/or hazardous machine operation.

Refer to the module user's manual for any information unique to that module.

The programming example shown in Figure 10.5 illustrates how multiple reads of different block lengths from one module can be programmed. When any one of the input switches is closed, the rung is enabled and the block length is established. The last rung enables the block transfer instruction regardless of the previous changes in status of the enable bit. The examine off instructions prevent more than one of the the block transfer instructions from being energized in the same scan.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.5
Programming Multiple Reads from One Module



NOTES:

1. The same discussion applies when programming multiple writes of different block lengths to one module.

2. Up to 50 read or write block transfers is the maximum amount that can be handled by Rev J firmware of the 1772-LG processor module.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

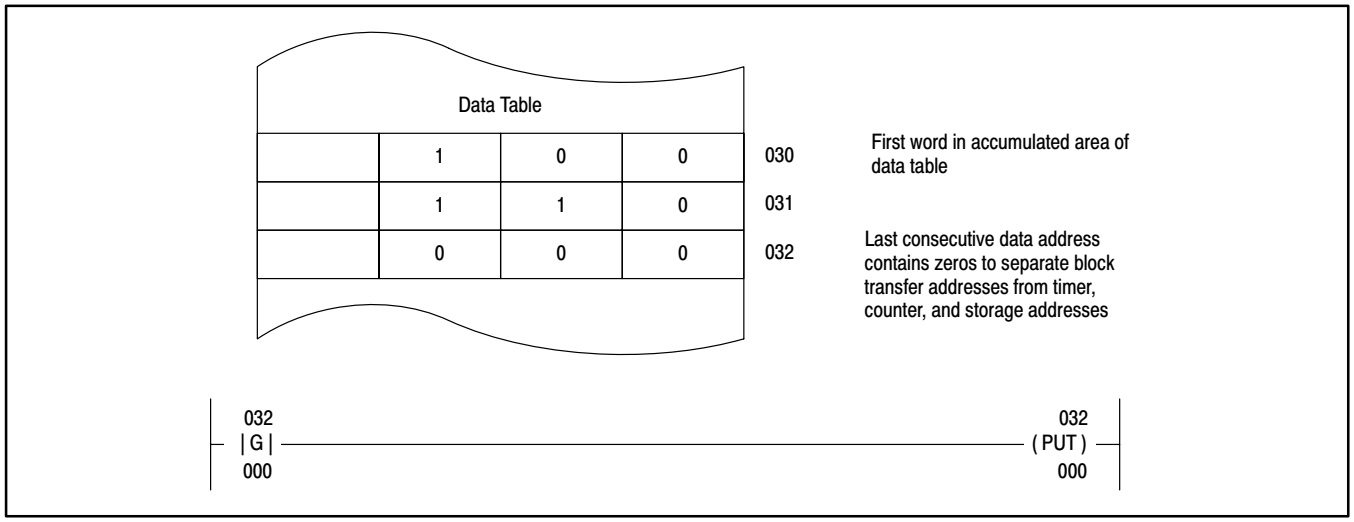
10.7 Defining the Block Transfer Data Address Area

When the block transfer instructions are used, the first word and consecutive words of the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table must be reserved for block transfer data addresses.

Block transfer data addresses should be separated from the addresses of timer and counter instructions by inserting a boundary. The last consecutive word in the accumulated area following the words reserved for block transfer data addresses should be loaded with zeroes. When the processor sees this boundary word, it will not search further for block transfer data. In addition, the processor is prevented from finding other BCD values that could, by chance, be in the same configuration as the rack, group and slot numbers found in block transfer data addresses.

The boundary word data bits can be set to zero manually using bit manipulation [SEARCH] 53, or by Get/Put transfer. The Get/Put transfer can be programmed by assigning the Get and Put instructions to the address immediately following the last block transfer data address (Figure 10.6). The value of the Get instruction is set to 000 when programmed.

Figure 10.6
Defining the Data Address Area



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.8 Buffering Data

The purpose of block transfer data buffering is to allow the data to be validated before it can be used. Data that is read from the block transfer module and transferred to data table locations must be buffered. Data that is written to the module need not be buffered because block transfer modules perform this function internally.

Transferred data is buffered to ensure that both the transfer and the data are valid. As an example, readings from an open-circuited temperature sensor (invalid data) could have a valid transfer from an analog input module to the data table. The processor examines data-valid and/or diagnostic bits contained in the transferred data to determine whether or not the data is valid. The block transfer done bit is set if the transfer is valid.

The data-valid and/or diagnostic bits differ for each block transfer module. Some modules set one or both for the entire file of words transferred, while others set a data-valid diagnostic bit in each word. Refer to the respective user's manual for the block transfer module to determine the correct usage of the diagnostic and/or data valid bit(s).

One technique of buffering data is to store the transferred data in a temporary buffer file. If the data in the buffer is valid, it is immediately transferred to another file in the data table where it can be used. If invalid, it is not transferred but written over in the next transfer.

Another technique uses only one file. The technique prevents invalid data from being operated upon by preconditioning the rungs that would transfer data out of a file one word at a time. Diagnostic and/or data-valid bits are examined in these rungs.

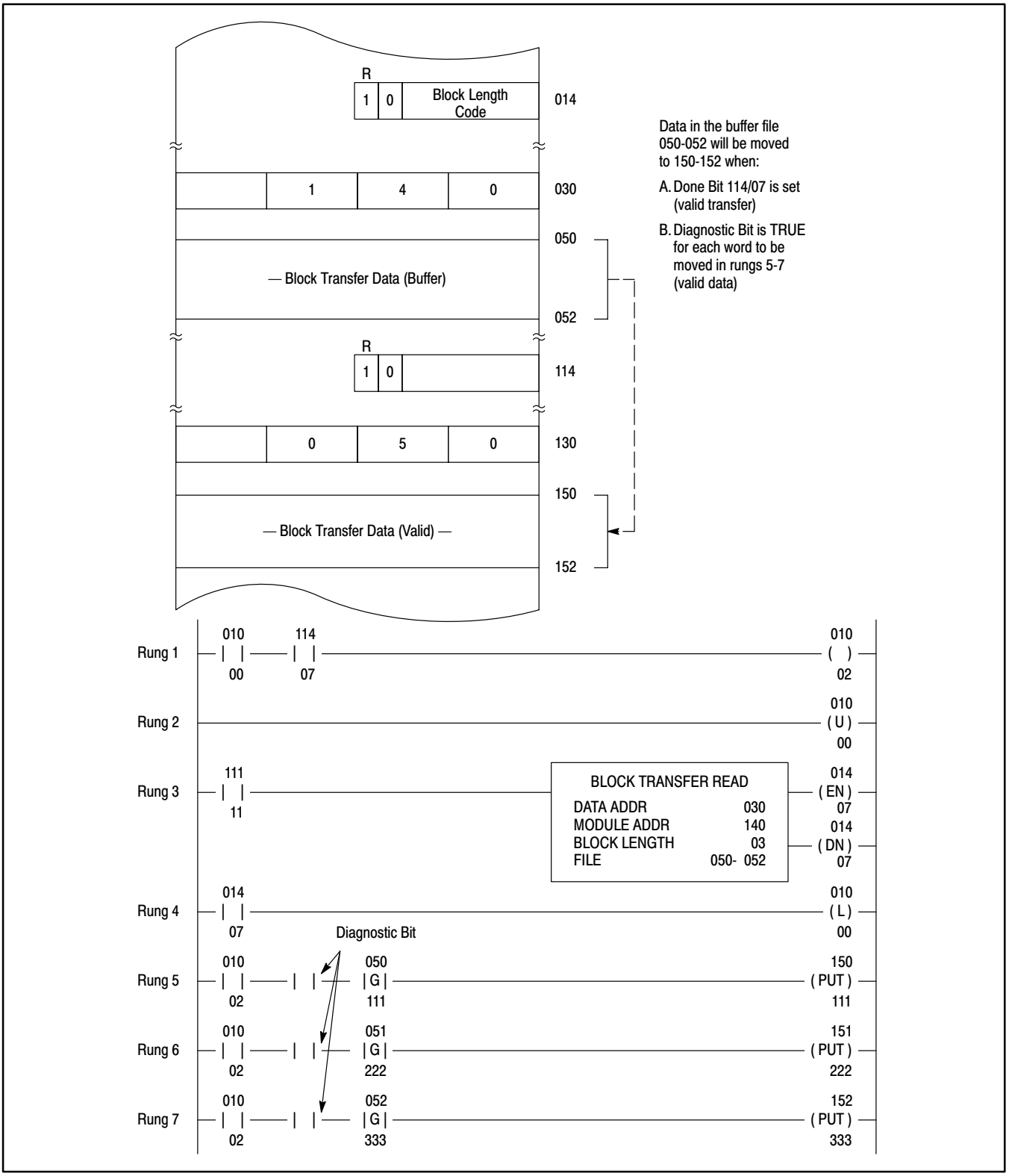
Data can be moved from the buffer word-by-word using Get/Put transfers, or the entire file can be moved at once using a FILE-TO-FILE MOVE instruction. The choice depends on the kinds of diagnostic and/or data-valid bits and the objectives of the user program. Generally, when one diagnostic bit is contained in each word, a Get/Put transfer is used. When one is set for the entire file, a FILE-TO-FILE MOVE instruction is used. In either case, the diagnostic bits are examined as conditions for enabling the file move or word transfer.

The example in Figure 10.7 shows the memory map and ladder diagram rungs for buffering 3 words of data that are read from the block transfer module. The data is read and buffered in the following sequence:

1. When rung 3 goes true, bit 014/07 (the block transfer enable bit) will be turned on and block transfer will be requested. This latches on storage bit 010/00 in rung 4.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.7
Buffering Data



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

2. Block Transfer will be enabled during the program scan. The transfer will be performed during an interruption of the next I/O scan. Data from the module will be loaded into words 050-052. When block transfer is complete, done bit 114/07 is set in the input image table byte. This indicates that the block transfer was successfully performed. The processor then continues with the I/O scan and program scan.

3. During the program scan, rung 1 will be true because bit 010/00 is still latched on and bit 114/07 (the block transfer done bit) is on because block transfer was performed. This will turn bit 010/02 on. In rung 2, bit 010/00 is then unlatched.

4. In rung 5, bit 010/02 is still on and a diagnostic bit is examined to ensure the data read from the module is valid. Assuming the data is valid, the diagnostic bit will be on and the data will be transferred from word 050 to 150. In rungs 6 and 7, the data in words 051 and 052 will be transferred to words 151 and 152 if the diagnostic bit is on.

10.9 Bidirectional Block Transfer

Bidirectional block transfer is the sequential performance of both operations. The order of operation is generally determined by the module.

Two rungs of user program are required, one containing the block transfer read instruction, the other containing the block transfer write instruction. When both instructions are given the same module address, the pair are considered as bidirectional block transfer instructions. See Figure 10.3 for block transfer format and definitions.

10.9.1 Operation

The operation of bidirectional block transfer is similar to that described in section 10.1, basic operation. Additional considerations for bidirectional operation will be described using an example read and write instruction with equal block lengths having the following parameters:

Read instruction
- Data address 040
- Module address 130
- Block length 05
- File 070-074

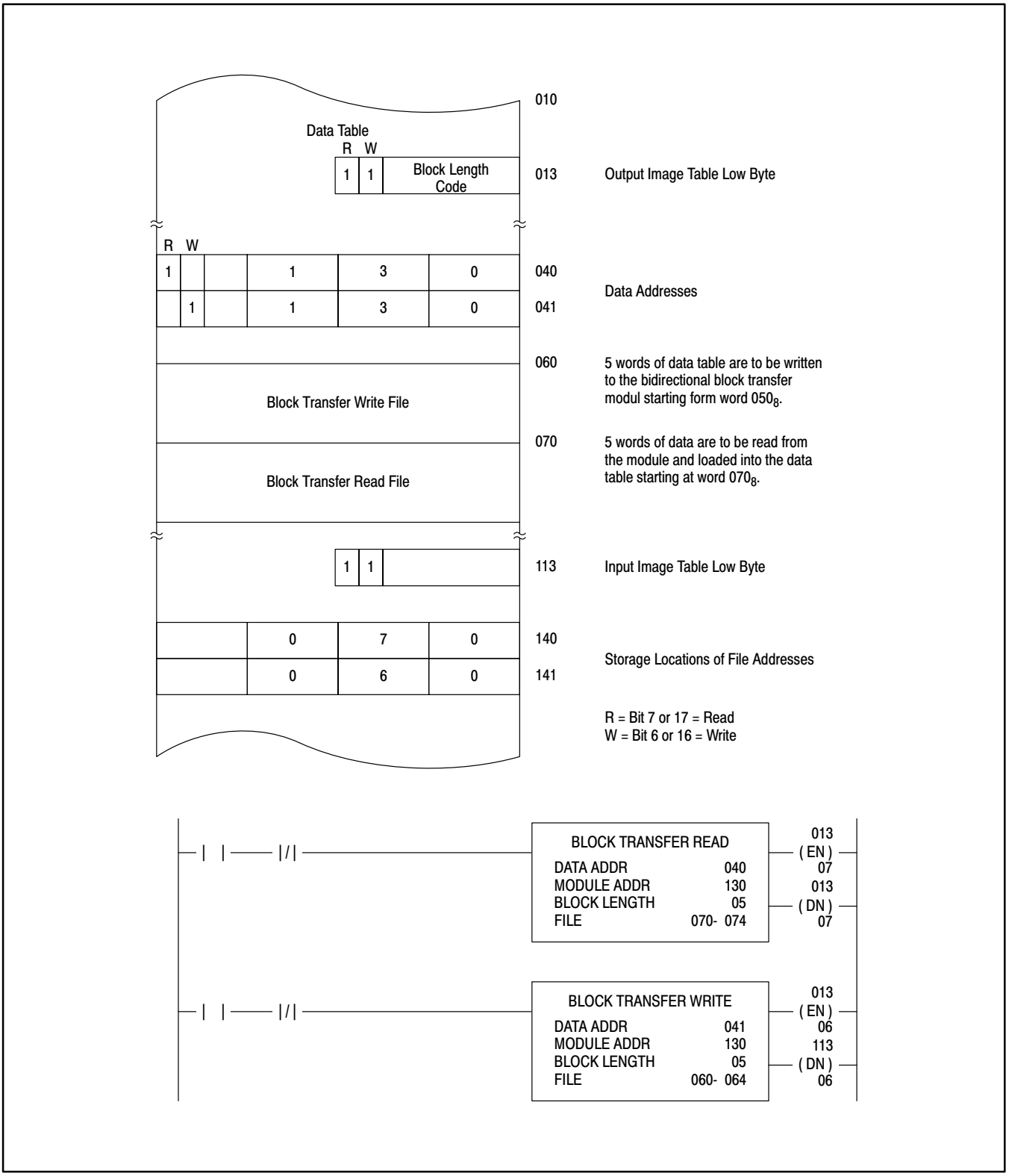
Write instruction
- Data address 041
- Module address 130
- Block length 05
- File 060-064

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The data table locations and block instructions for this example are shown in Figure 10.8.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 10.8
Data Table Locations for Bidirectional Block Transfer



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.9.2 Data Address and Module Address

The module address is stored in BCD in the data address of the read and write instructions. In this example, the module address is 130: rack 1, module group 3, slot 0.

Two data addresses must be used. In this example, they are 040 and 041. Both contain the module address. For bidirectional operation, each data address word also contains an enable bit; bit 16 for a write operation (in 041) and bit 17 for a read operation (in 040). When the processor searches the data addresses in the timer/counter accumulated area of the data table, it finds two consecutive data addresses both containing the same module address. The read bit is set high in one data address (040). The write bit is set high in the other (041). When the processor finds a match of the module address and the enable bit (read or write bit) for the desired direction of transfer, it then locates the file address to which (or from which) the data will be transferred.

10.9.3 File Address

Generally two file addresses are required: one to receive data transferred from the module, the other containing data to be transferred to the module. In this example, they are 060 and 070. The consecutive storage locations containing the file addresses in BCD are found in the preset area of the data table at addresses 140 and 141. They are found 100_8 above the corresponding consecutive data addresses in the accumulated area of the data table.

10.9.4 Block Length

The block lengths of the read and write instructions can be set equal or unequal to each other up to any value not exceeding the default (maximum) block length of the module. If the default value is used, it instructs the module to control the number of words transferred. Although the default value varies from one kind of module to another, it can be entered into the instruction block as the number 00 for all block transfer modules. See the module data sheet for additional information on the block transfer module of interest.

In the example, both block lengths are set equal to 05.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

10.9.5 Programming Considerations

The programming of a bidirectional block transfer module depends on whether the read and write instruction block lengths are equal or unequal.

Equal Block Lengths

When the block lengths are set equal or when the default block length is specified by the programmer, the following considerations are applicable:

- Read and write instructions could and should be enabled in the same scan (separate but equal input conditions).
- Module decides which operation will be performed first when both instructions are enabled in the same scan.
- Alternate operation will be performed in a subsequent scan.
- Transferred data should not be operated upon until the Done bit is set.

Unequal Block Lengths

Consult the user's manual for the block transfer module of interest for programming guidelines when setting the block lengths to unequal values.



WARNING: When the block lengths of bidirectional block transfer instructions are set to unequal values, the rung containing the alternate instruction must not be enabled until the done bit of the first transfer is set. If they are enabled in the same scan, the number of words transferred may not be the number intended, invalid data could be operated upon in subsequent scans or analog output devices could be controlled by invalid data. Unexpected and/or hazardous machine operation could occur. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 11

Jump Instructions and Subroutine Programming

11.0 General

The Jump instruction and subroutine programming allow programming flexibility and efficiency. Four instructions are used to implement program jumps and subroutines:

- Jump – JMP
- Label – LBL
- Jump to Subroutine – JSR
- Return – RET

The Jump and Label instructions allow portions of a program to be selectively jumped over in order to reduce scan time. When more than one program section each controls a separate process or operation, these instructions allow the required program to be executed as needed.

The Jump to Subroutine, Label and Return instructions are used together to access reserved sections of program called subroutines. A subroutine can be called upon repeatedly from selected points in the main program. Subroutines can be used to conserve memory in applications where repetitive programming is required or when sections of program do not need to be executed each scan.

This section will describe how Jump instructions and subroutine programming are used and how they direct the path of the program scan through the main program and the subroutine area.

11.1 Jump Instruction

The Jump instruction shown in Figure 11.1 is an output instruction. It has an identification number from 00-77. When its rung is true, it instructs the processor to jump forward in the main program to the Label instruction having the same identification number (Figure 11.2). The main program is then executed from that point.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 11.1
JUMP Format

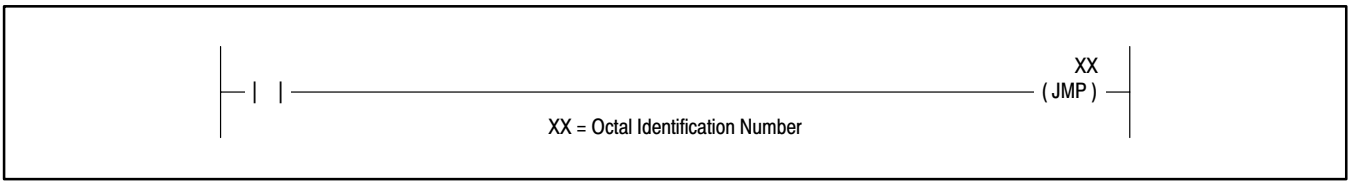
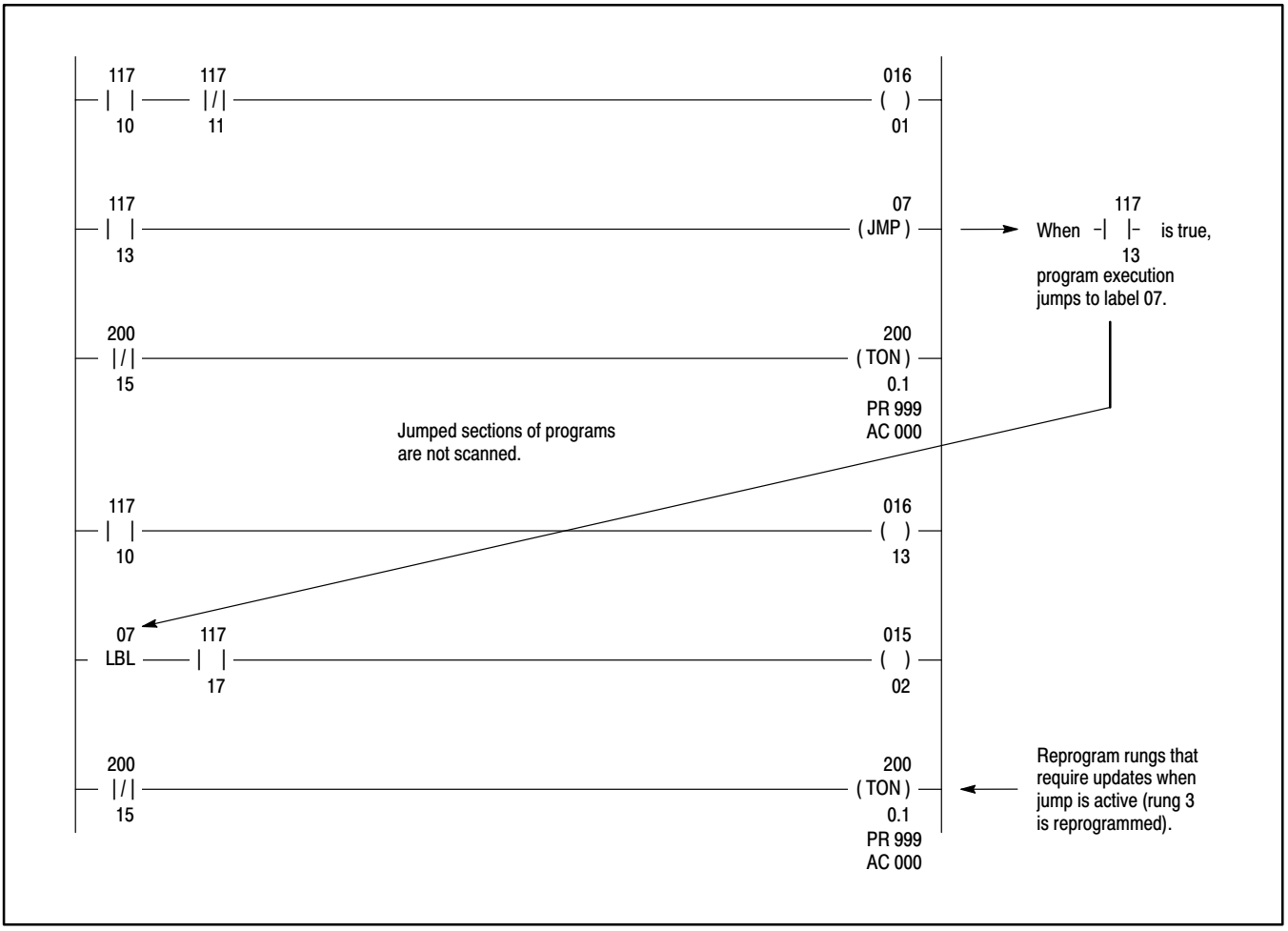


Figure 11.2
JUMP to LABEL Operation



A Jump instruction can be programmed anywhere within the main program, or within the subroutine area. However, a Jump instruction may not be programmed to cross the boundary between the main program and subroutine area or to jump backwards in memory.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Can jump 1 or more times to the label with the same identification number.
- Uses 1 word of memory
- Has 2 digit octal identification number
- Caution is advised when jumping over timers or counters.

Causes of run-time errors:

NOTE: Do not misuse the Jump instruction. Misuse generally results in a run-time error which causes the processor to fault. Misuse of the Jump instruction will cause the following run-time errors:

- Jumping over a temporary end instruction
- Jumping from main program into subroutine area
- Jumping backward in memory
- Jumping to an undefined label



CAUTION: The programmer should make allowances for conditions which could be created by the use of the Jump instruction. Jumped program rungs are not scanned by the processor, so inputs are not updated and outputs remain in their last state. Timers and counters cease to function. Critical rungs should be reprogrammed outside the jumped section of the program.

11.1.1 Programming Jump/ Subroutine Instructions

The Jump/Subroutine instructions are programmed from the industrial terminal keyboard with the processor in program mode. When entered, they are displayed as intensified and blinking. The reverse-video cursor will position itself at the first digit of the identification number above the instruction. It will continue to blink until the two-digit identification number is entered. A zero must be entered in the first position. Refer to Table 11.A for a complete summary of the Jump/Subroutine instructions.

11.1.2 Multiple Jumps to the Same Label

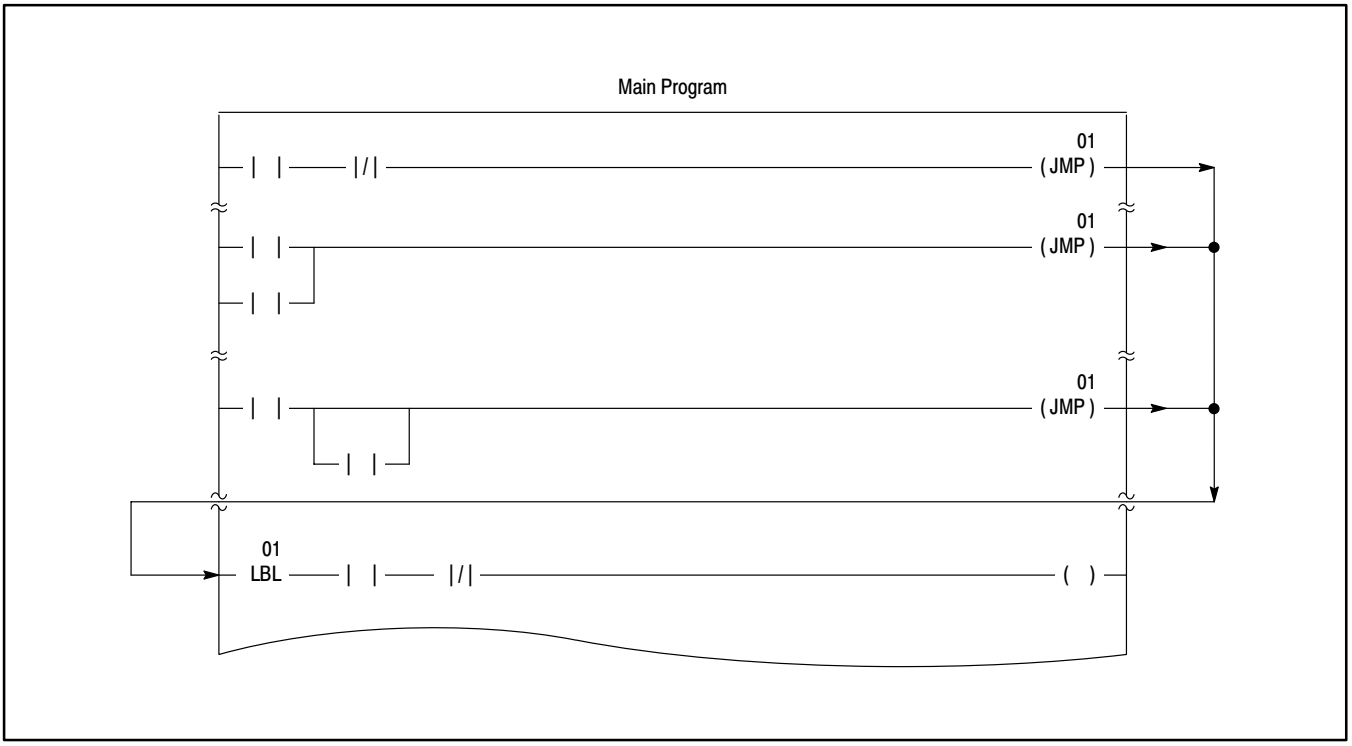
There can be many combinations of multiple jumps to the same label in the user program or subroutine area. Some of these combinations are illustrated in Figures 11.3, 11.4, and 11.5.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 11.A
Jump/Subroutine Programming

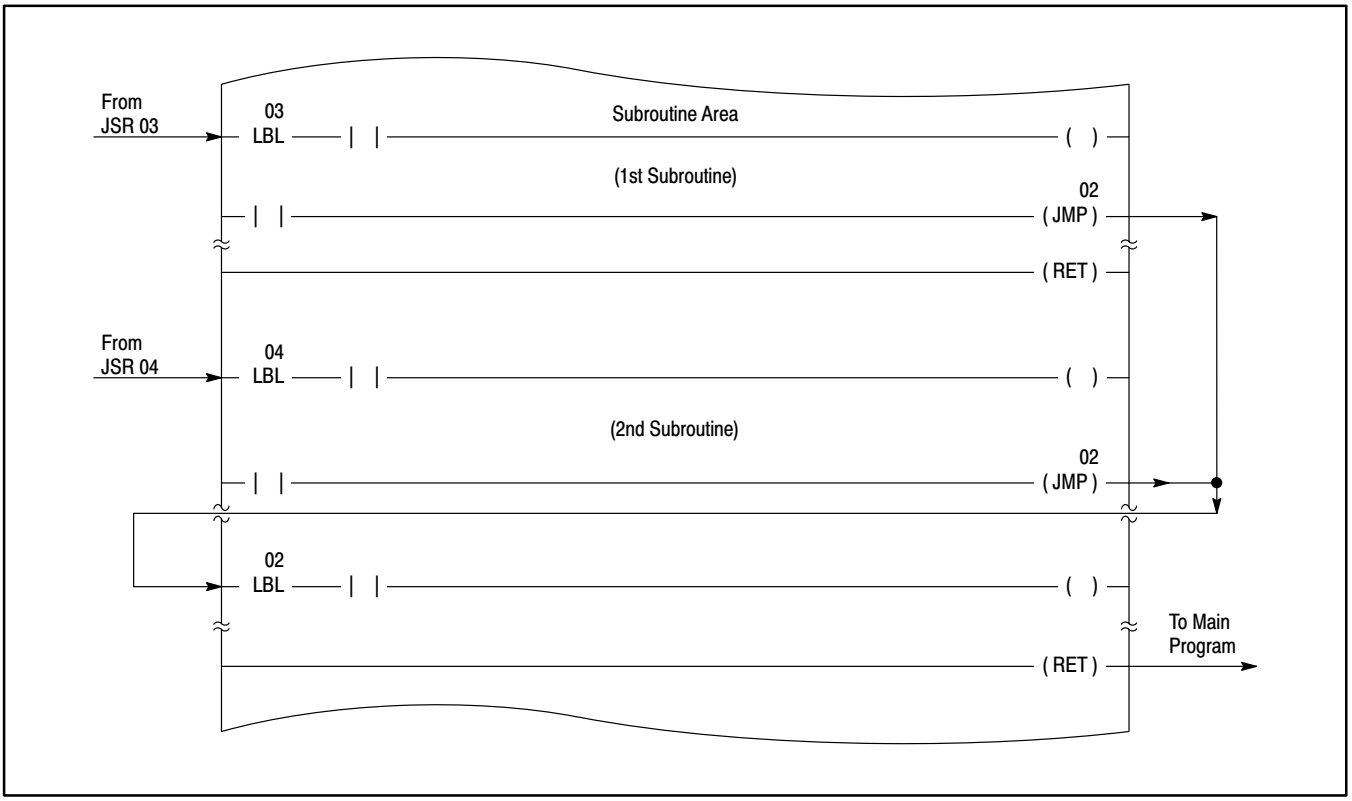
Key Symbol	Instruction Name	1770-T3 Display	Description
SBR T.END	SUBROUTINE AREA	SUBROUTINE AREA	Establishes the boundary between Main Program and Subroutine Area. Subroutine Area is not scanned unless directed to do so by a JSR instruction.
LBL –(JMP)–	LABEL	XX –LBL–	This condition instruction is the target destination for JMP and JSR instructions. XX – two-digit octal identification number, 00-07.
LBL **–(JMP)–**	JUMP	XX –(JMP)–	When rung is TRUE, processor jumps forward to the referenced LABEL in Main Program. XX – two-digit octal identification number. Same as LBL with which it is used.
–(RET)– **–(JSR)–**	JUMP TO SUBROUTINE	XX –(JSR)–	When rung is TRUE, Processor jumps to referenced LABEL in Subroutine Area. XX – two-digit octal identification number. Same as LBL with which it is used.
–(RET)– –(JSR)–	RETURN	–(RET)–	No identification number. Can be used unconditionally. Returns Processor to instruction immediately following the JSR that initiated the jump to subroutine.

Figure 11.3
Multiple JUMPS to LABEL in User Program



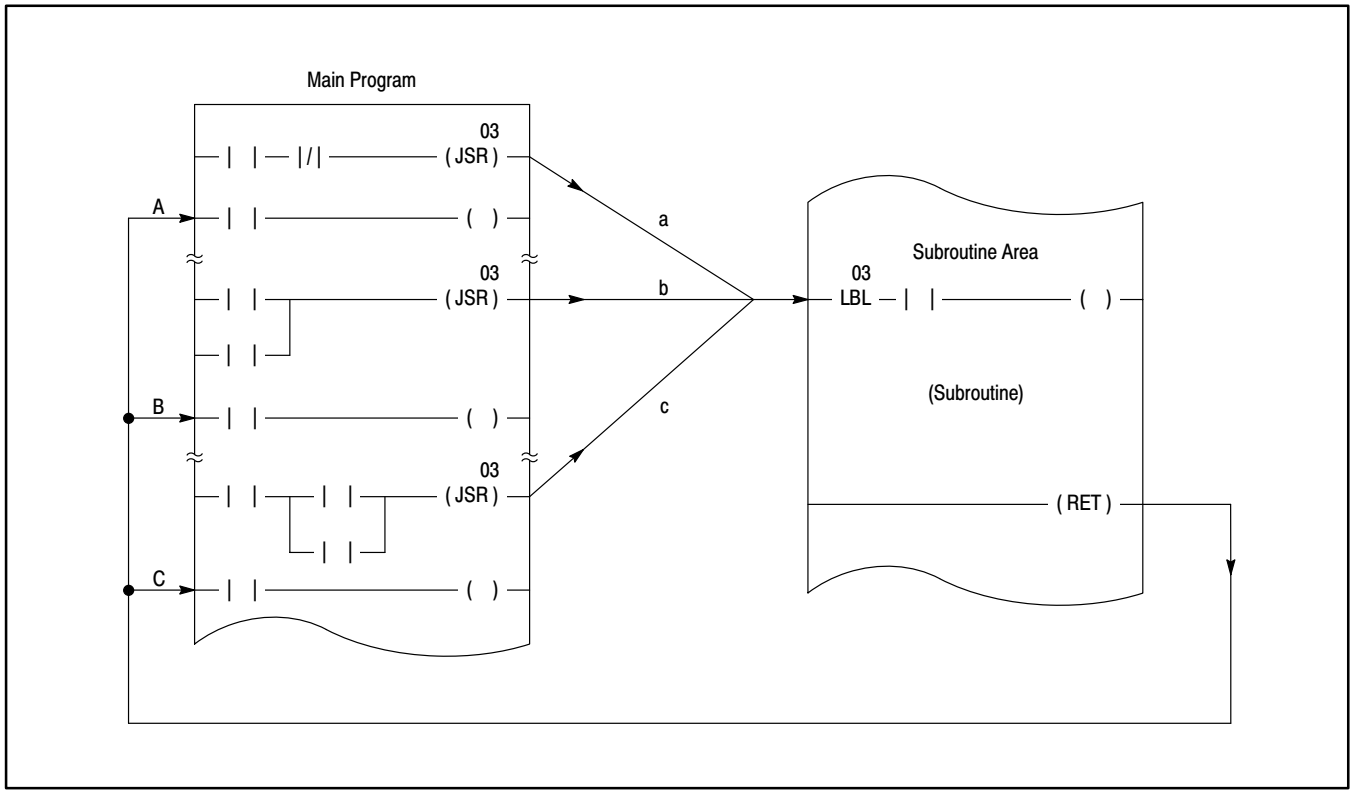
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 11.4
Multiple JUMPS to LABEL in Subroutine Area



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

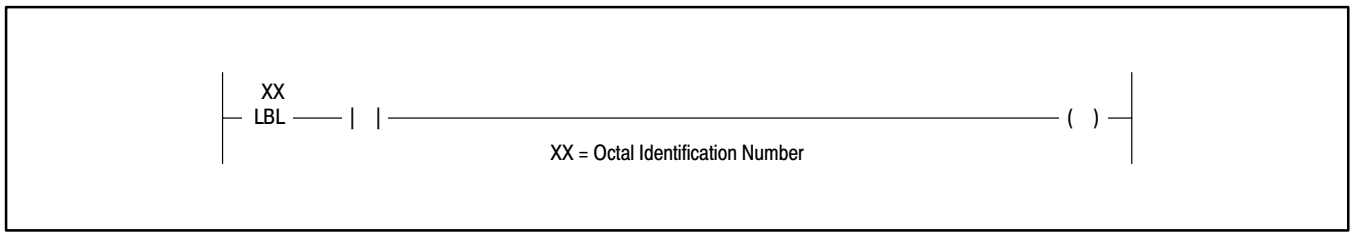
Figure 11.5
Multiple JUMPS to LABEL in Subroutine Area and Multiple Return Paths to Main Program



11.2 Label Instruction

The Label instruction shown in Figure 11.6 is the target destination for both the Jump and Jump to Subroutine instructions. Labels are assigned octal identification numbers from 00-77. The label identification number must be the same as that of the Jump and/or Jump to Subroutine instruction with which it is used. A label instruction can be defined only once, meaning that a label with a given identification number can appear in only one location. However, a Label instruction can be the target of jumps from more than one location.

Figure 11.6
LABEL Format



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The Label instruction is always logically true. It should be programmed as the first condition instruction in the rung. If conditions precede a Label instruction in a rung, they will be ignored by the processor during a jump operation.

Instruction overview:

- Condition instruction, always logically true
- Up to 64 label 2-digit octal identification numbers available
- Each label can be defined only once
- Can be the target of multiple jump or jump to subroutine instructions
- Uses one word of memory



WARNING: Do not place a Label instruction in a ZCL or MCR zone. When jumping over a start fence, the processor will execute the program from the label to the end fence as if the start fence had been true, i.e., outputs controlled by the rungs. The start fence may have been false, intending that all outputs within the zone be controlled by the output override instruction, i.e., Off for MCR or last state for ZCL instructions (Section 7.1). Unpredictable machine operation and damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

NOTE: Care should be taken not to misuse the Jump instructions and subroutine programming. Misuse generally results in a run-time error which causes the processor to fault. Misuse of the Label instruction will cause the following run-time errors:

- Multiple placement of the same label.
- Removing a Label instruction but leaving the Jump or Jump to Subroutine instruction(s) to which it was referenced.

11.3 Jump to Subroutine Instruction

The Jump to Subroutine instruction shown (Figure 11.7) is an output instruction. It has an octal identification number from 00-77. When its rung is true, it instructs the processor to jump from the main program to the label instruction having the same identification number in the subroutine area (Figure 11.8). Subroutine execution begins at that point.

When used in the main program area, this instruction must always cause the processor to cross the boundary from the main program to the subroutine area.

The Jump to Subroutine instruction can also be used to jump from one subroutine to another subroutine in the subroutine area. These nested subroutines will be explained in Section 11.3.2. The JSR instruction also

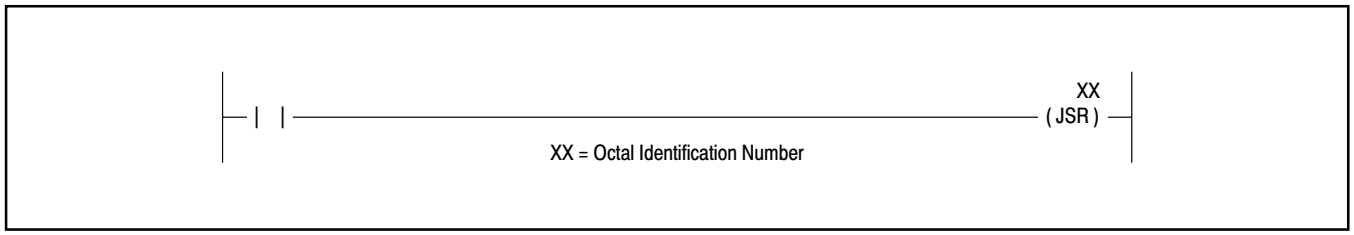
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

enables a subroutine to call itself or loop. This will be explained in Section 11.3.3.

Instruction overview:

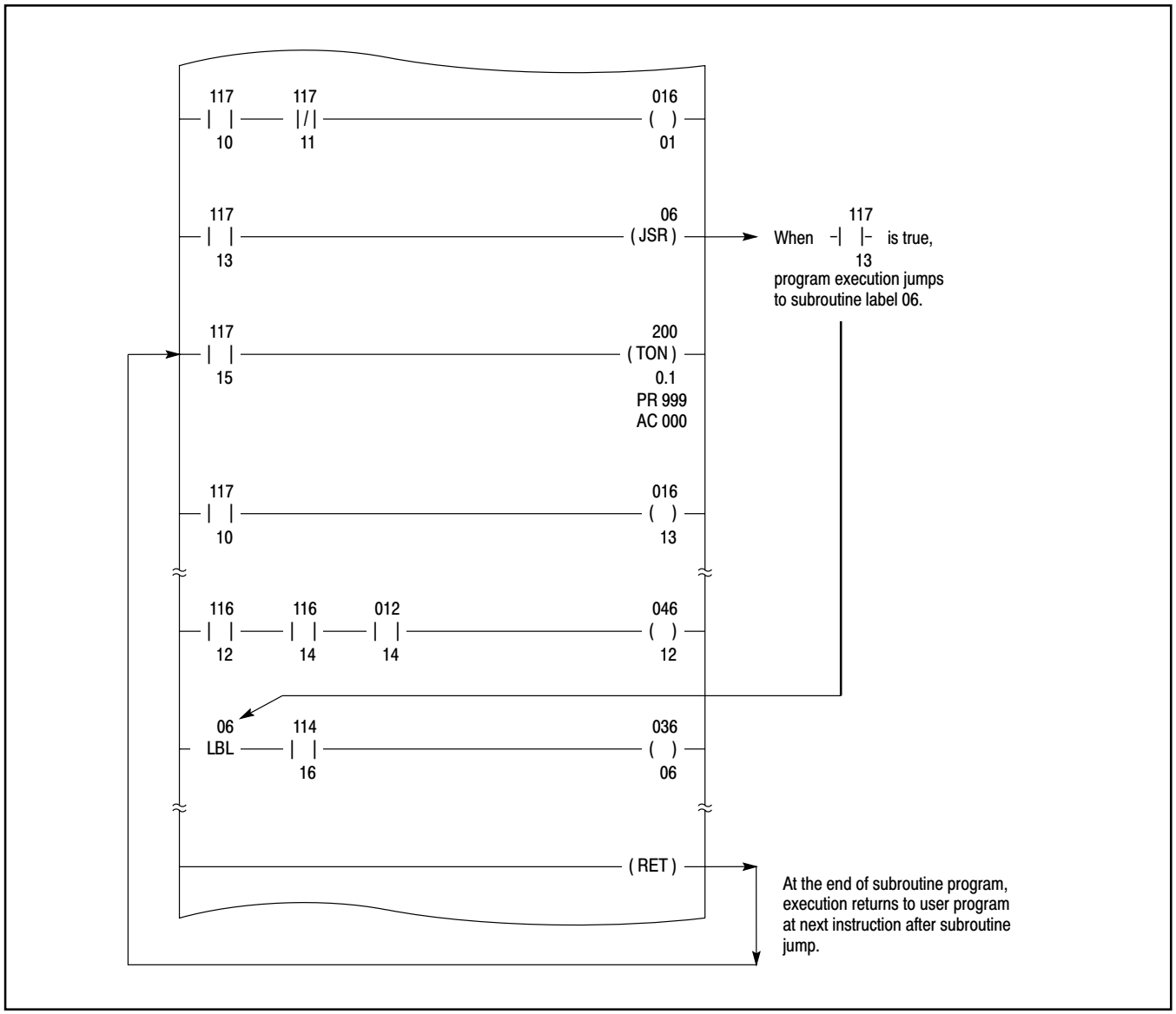
- Output instruction
- Must always jump from main program into subroutine area or from one subroutine to another
- Can jump 1 or more times to the label with the same identification number
- Uses 1 word of memory

Figure 11.7
JUMP-TO-SUBROUTINE Format



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 11.8
JUMP-TO-SUBROUTINE LABEL Operation



NOTE: Do not misuse the Jump to Subroutine instruction. Misuse generally results in a run-time error which causes the processor to fault. Misuse will cause the following run-time errors:

- Jumping over a temporary end instruction
- Using the jump to subroutine instruction in the main program to jump forward in the main program.
- Jumping to an undefined label or to a label which is defined twice
- Looping or nesting JSR instructions more than 8 times (Section 11.3.2)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

11.3.1 Subroutine Area

The area reserved for subroutines is located in memory between the main program and the message store areas. Its boundary is displayed as subroutine area, and serves as the end of program statement for the main program. Subroutines are not scanned by the processor unless directed to do so by the Jump to Subroutine instruction.

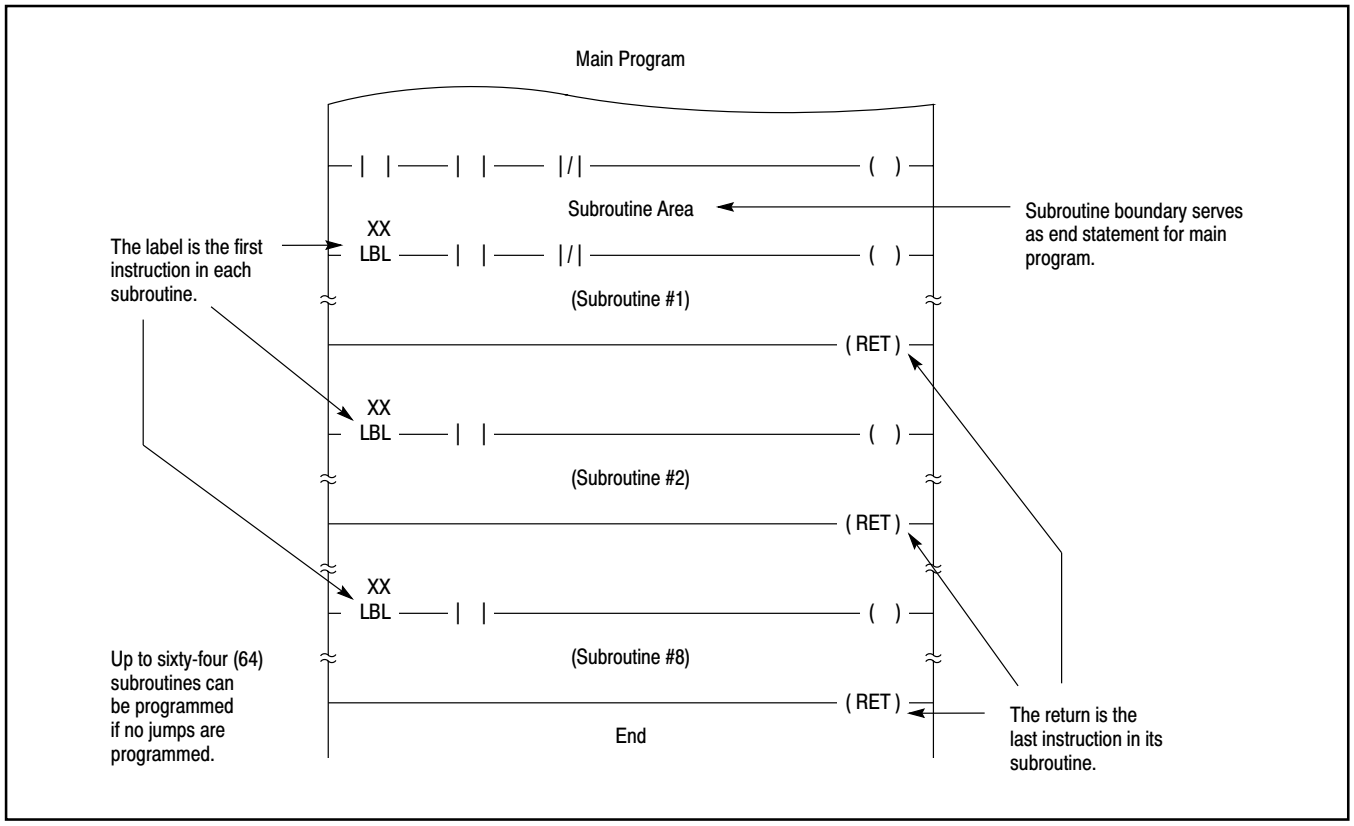
The subroutine area can only be established by placing the cursor on the last instruction in main program and pressing the key sequence [SHIFT][SBR]. The boundary marker, SUBROUTINE AREA, will appear. A subroutine area instruction can only be programmed as the last instruction in the main program. It cannot be inserted between rungs. It requires one memory word, can be programmed only once, and cannot be removed except by clearing the entire subroutine area or the entire memory.

Up to 64 subroutines can be programmed in the subroutine area. Each subroutine begins with a Label instruction and ends with a return instruction. The Return instruction returns program execution to the instruction immediately following the Jump to Subroutine instruction that caused the specific subroutine to be executed. Program execution continues from that point. Figure 11.9 shows a representative subroutine area.

Rungs which are part of the subroutine are entered by placing the cursor on the subroutine area and pressing [↓], then entering the rung.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 11.9
Representative Subroutine Area



11.3.2 Nested Subroutines

A subroutine may call another subroutine (Figure 11.10a) which, in turn, may call another subroutine. This nesting process can continue until eight levels of calls are involved.

Figure 11.10 (a) shows three levels of nested subroutines. The main program calls Level 1 at label 01 (a). Level 1, in turn, calls Level 2 at label 02 (b). Note that Level 1 subroutine issued the command to jump to label 02 before all the steps in Level 1 were completed. Likewise, Level-2 subroutine issued the command to jump to label 03 (c) before completing all Level-2 steps.

Level-3 subroutine, the last subroutine in the next, is executed to its return instruction (d). Each return instruction returns processor execution to the instruction immediately following the JSR that initiated the subroutine (e and f). Execution continues from that point.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

11.3.3 Recursive Subroutine (Looping) Calls

A subroutine can loop or call itself (Figure 11.10b). If this procedure is used, it is recommended that a scan counter be used to ensure that a maximum of 9 JSR's (including the original one in the main program) is not exceeded. If 9 JSR's are exceeded, it would cause a processor fault. For example, if the looping occurs in Level-1 subroutine, the counter preset value should be a maximum of 009. If looping is in Level 3 subroutine, the counter preset value should be a maximum of 006.

Instruction overview:

- Subroutine nesting is permitted to 8 Levels (Section 11.3.2)
- Recursive subroutine calls (looping) is permitted to 8 levels (Section 11.3.2)

More than 9 Levels of subroutine calls or a JSR to Label in the main program are causes of run time error.

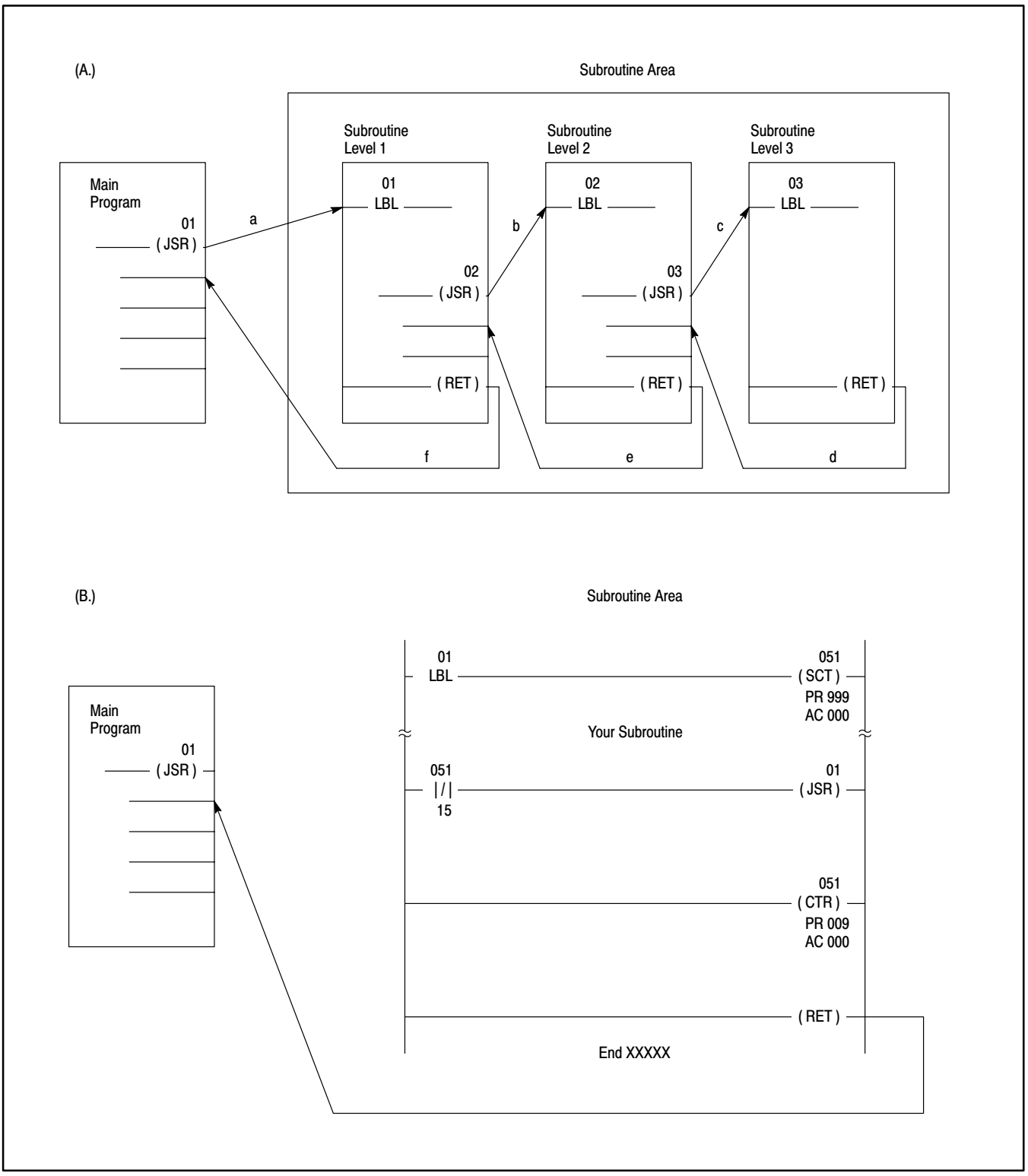
11.3.4 Subroutine Programming Considerations

If an output instruction in the subroutine area is left on after the processor has completed the program scan, the output will remain on regardless of its rung condition. No action will be taken to control that output until the processor is directed back to the subroutine area or a rung in the main program is executed which also controls that same output. Instructions in a subroutine area are acted on only during an actual scan of a subroutine. This includes status bits of subroutine timers, counters and block instructions.

For example, in the program below, Rungs 3 and 4 have been added to the main program to turn off the outputs of rungs 5 and 6, respectively, if these outputs were left on after the processor completed the subroutine scan.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 11.10
(a) Three Levels of Nested Subroutines
(b) A Subroutine Can Call Itself or Loop



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

11.4 Return Instruction

The Return instruction is an output instruction (Figure 11.11). It is used only in the subroutine area to terminate a subroutine and to return program execution to the main program (Figure 11.8) or, in the case of nested subroutines, to return program execution to the preceding subroutine (Figure 11.11). It returns program execution to the instruction immediately following the JSR that initiated the subroutine. Program execution continues from that point.



CAUTION: Every subroutine must have a Return instruction. If not, the processor will scan the subsequent subroutine(s) until a Return instruction is found. For this reason, it is recommended that Return instructions be programmed unconditionally.

The return instruction does not have a user-assigned identification number because it may be paired by the processor with any one of several JSR instructions as the result of multiple jumps to the subroutine area. This is illustrated by Figure 11.3.

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Every subroutine must have a return instruction.
- Should be used in an unconditional rung.
- Processor is returned to the instruction after the JSR that initiated the subroutine
- Uses 1 word of memory.
- Does not have a 2-digit identification number

Causes of run-time errors:

NOTE: Do not misuse the Return instruction. Misuse generally results in a run-time error which causes the processor to fault. Misuse will cause the following run-time errors:

- Processor finds no return from the subroutine area.
- Using a return instruction outside the subroutine area

Figure 11.11
RETURN Format



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 12

Data Transfer File Instructions

12.0 General

This chapter introduces concepts in two major areas:

- Files
- Data monitor mode

Later chapters of this manual are written with the assumption that the concepts and terms covered in this chapter have been thoroughly learned. In particular, do not proceed into Chapters 13-17, File, Sequencer, and Shift Register instructions, until this chapter is completely understood.

12.1 File Concepts

The definition of a file, the pictorial representation of the File instruction and the modes of File instruction operation are covered in this chapter. The illustrations help to describe these concepts.

12.1.1 File Definition

A file is a group of consecutive data table words used to store information . It is defined by a counter and the starting word address of the file. The counter has two functions:

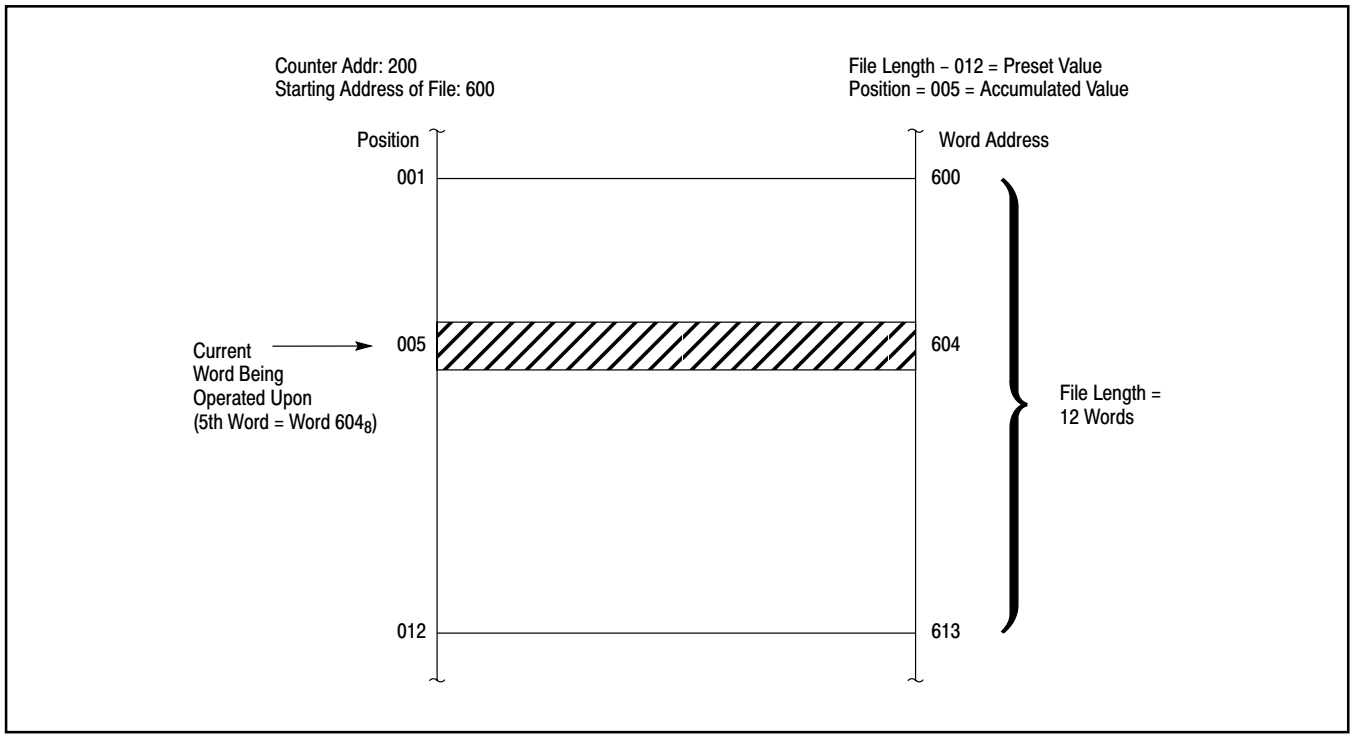
- It defines the number of words in the file (file length) with its preset value.
- It points to a particular word in the file (position) with its accumulated value.

The counter address is also referred to as the instruction address. It is the address used by the processor to search for the instruction. The words in the file must be located one after the other. A file can be from one to a maximum of 999 words in length. The first word in a file is defined as word 1 and is located at position 001.

The structure of a file is presented in Figure 12.1. This figure illustrates a 12-word file starting at word address 600_8. The counter (at address 200_8) has an accumulated value of 005. It points to the fifth word in the file, word address 604_8. This word will be either the source or destination of the data that is currently being operated upon by the File instruction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.1
File Structure



12.1.2 File Planning

Although files can be located anywhere within the data table, they usually should be located after the last timer/counter preset area. Timer/Counter accumulated values and preset values are 100_8 apart. Files are made up of consecutive words. Therefore, a file which begins in a timer/counter accumulated area could continue on into the preset area and write over the preset values found there. A file should not be inadvertently programmed to overlap or be totally contained within another. Care should be taken in assigning file areas to avoid unintentionally altering the contents of one file by the operation of another.

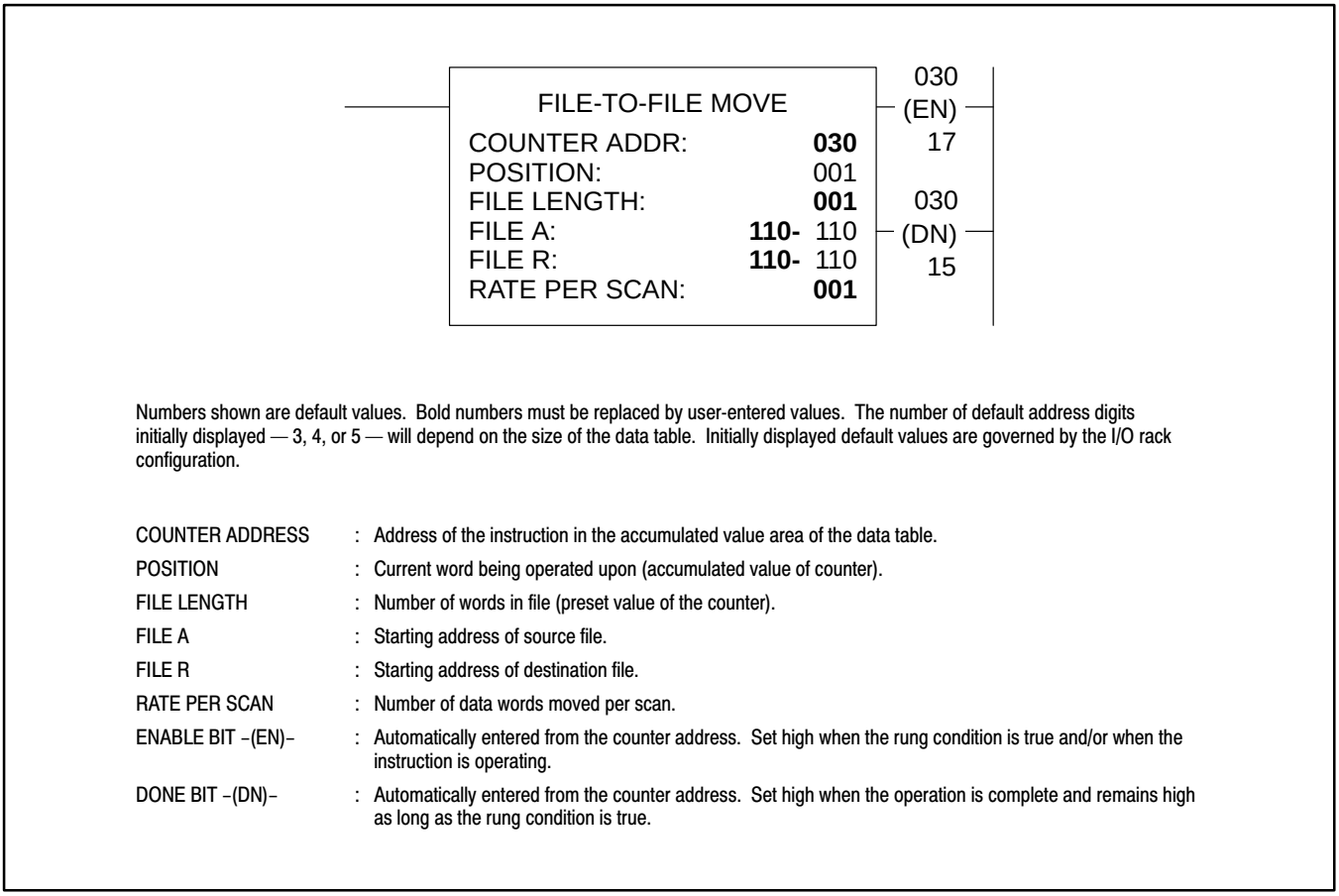
To avoid programming errors of this kind,, data table documentation sheets, described in Chapter 3, should be used. These are tally sheets on which all data table words are logged as they are assigned and/or reserved for I/O devices, timers, counters, bit/word storage and file storage. Documentation of this kind should be included as a necessary part of the control system documentation.

12.1.3 File Instructions

File instructions are displayed in block format. Figure 12.2 illustrates an example file instruction. Each address or data entry required is identified within the block and defined beneath it.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.2
File Instruction Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE A	:	Starting address of source file.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file.
RATE PER SCAN	:	Number of data words moved per scan.
ENABLE BIT –(EN)–	:	Automatically entered from the counter address. Set high when the rung condition is true and/or when the instruction is operating.
DONE BIT –(DN)–	:	Automatically entered from the counter address. Set high when the operation is complete and remains high as long as the rung condition is true.

To the right of the instruction are they enable (EN) and done (DN) bits. These bits have the same word address as the instruction counter. The industrial terminal enters the address of the status bits when the counter address is entered by the user. The status bits intensify on the screen when true. The enable bit is true when:

- The rung is true
- Instruction is operating

The done bit is true when the instruction operation is complete (counter accumulative value equals preset value).

There are two kinds of file instructions. Each instruction is one of these types. The difference between the two is the manner in which the counter accumulated value is indexed. The two types are:

- Externally indexed — indexed by other instructions in the user program
- Internally indexed — indexed by the instruction

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

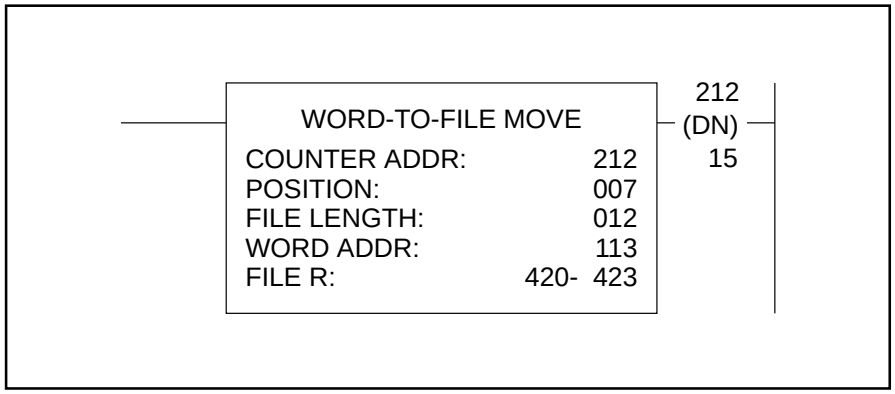
Externally Indexed Counter

When the counter is externally indexed, the accumulated value must be positioned to point to a word in the file by instructions in the user program. The counter can be indexed randomly by using a Get/Put transfer or sequentially by using another counter. In either case, the other instructions are addressed to the accumulated value of the file instruction counter.

Instructions with externally indexed counters will operate when the rung condition is true. As long as the rung is true, the operation will take place each scan. If the counter accumulated value (position) changes while the rung is true, the data at the new position will be operated upon.

An example of a file instruction with an externally indexed counter is shown in Figure 12.3.

Figure 12.3
Example of an Externally Indexed File Instruction

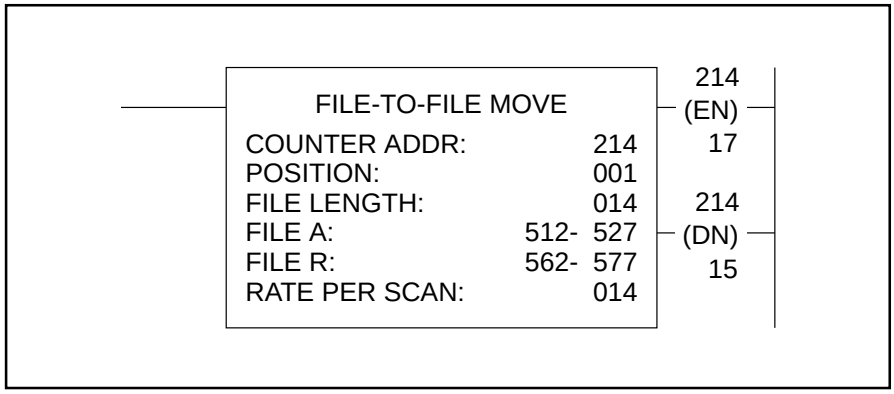


Internally Indexed Counter

An example of a file instruction with an internally indexed counter is shown in Figure 12.4. The instruction contains an enable bit in addition to the done bit.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.4
Example of an Internally Indexed File Instruction



Notice that another term has been added to the instruction block: rate per scan. It defines the number of words in the file operated upon during one scan. Its value is user-chosen according to how the file operation is to take place. There are three modes of operation based on rate per scan. They are:

- Complete
- Distributed complete
- Incremental

The relationship between the rate per scan and the modes of operation are summarized in Table 12.A.

Table 12.A
Modes of Instruction Operation

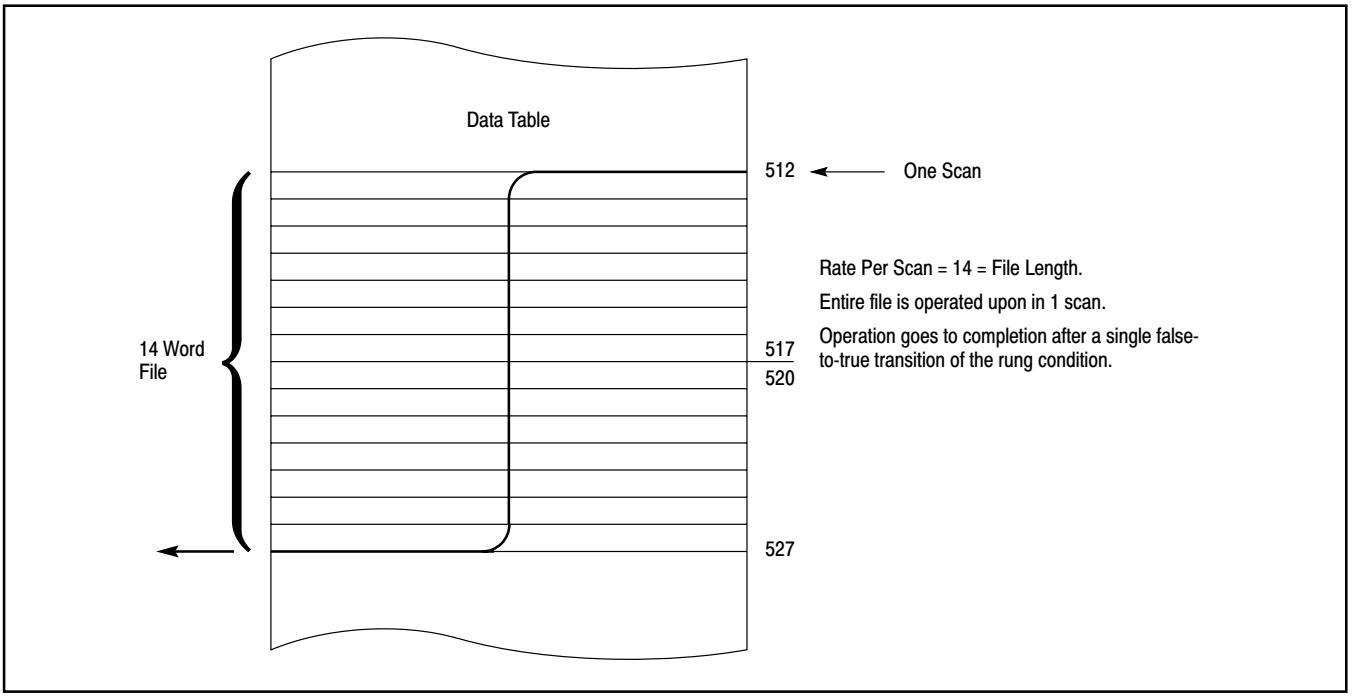
Mode of Operation	R = Rate Per Scan	Number of Words Operated Upon
COMPLETE	R = File Length	Entire file per scan
DISTRIBUTED COMPLETE	0 < R < File Length	R words per scan
INCREMENTAL	R = 0	One word per rung transition

Complete Mode

In the complete mode, the rate per scan is equal to the file length, and the entire file is operated upon in one scan. On a false-to-true transition of the rung condition, the instruction is enabled and the accumulated value of the file counter is internally indexed from the first to the last word of the file. As the accumulated value points to each word, the operation defined by the File instruction is performed. The operation of a File instruction in the complete mode is shown in Figure 12.5.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

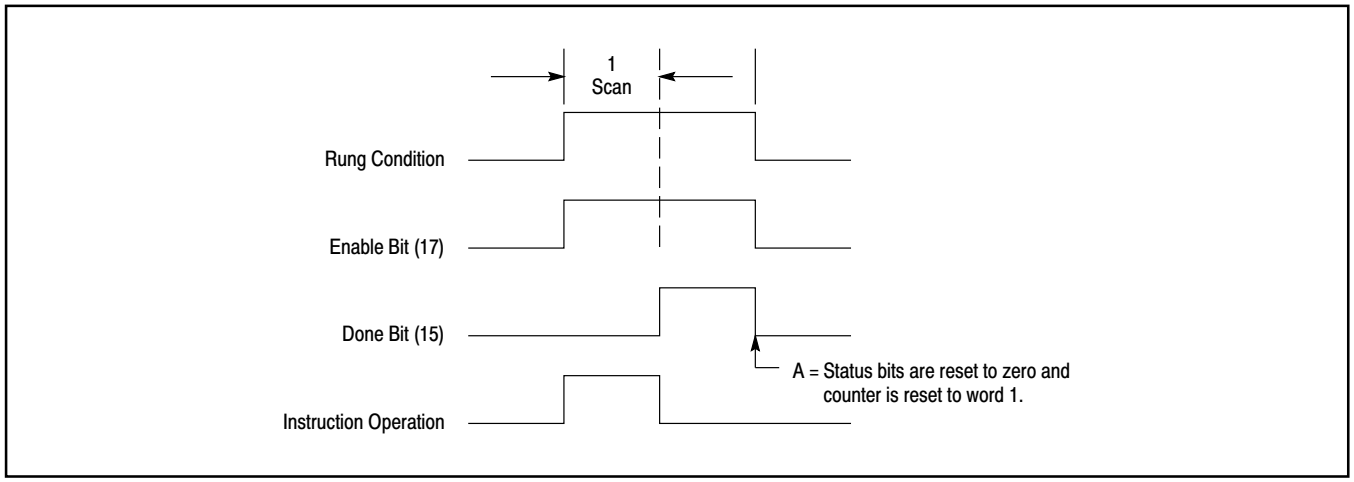
Figure 12.5
Complete Mode Operation



The operation of the status bits for the complete mode is shown in Figure 12.6. The instruction is enabled by the false-to-true transition of the rung condition. The rung would have to go false and then true after the operation is complete in order to repeat the instruction. If the rung remained true on subsequent scans, the instruction would not repeat. After the instruction has operated on the last word, the done bit is set. The enable and done bits are reset to zero and the counter is reset to position 001 when the rung condition goes false. If the rung was enabled for only one scan, the done bit would remain set for one scan.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.6
Status Bits for Complete Mode



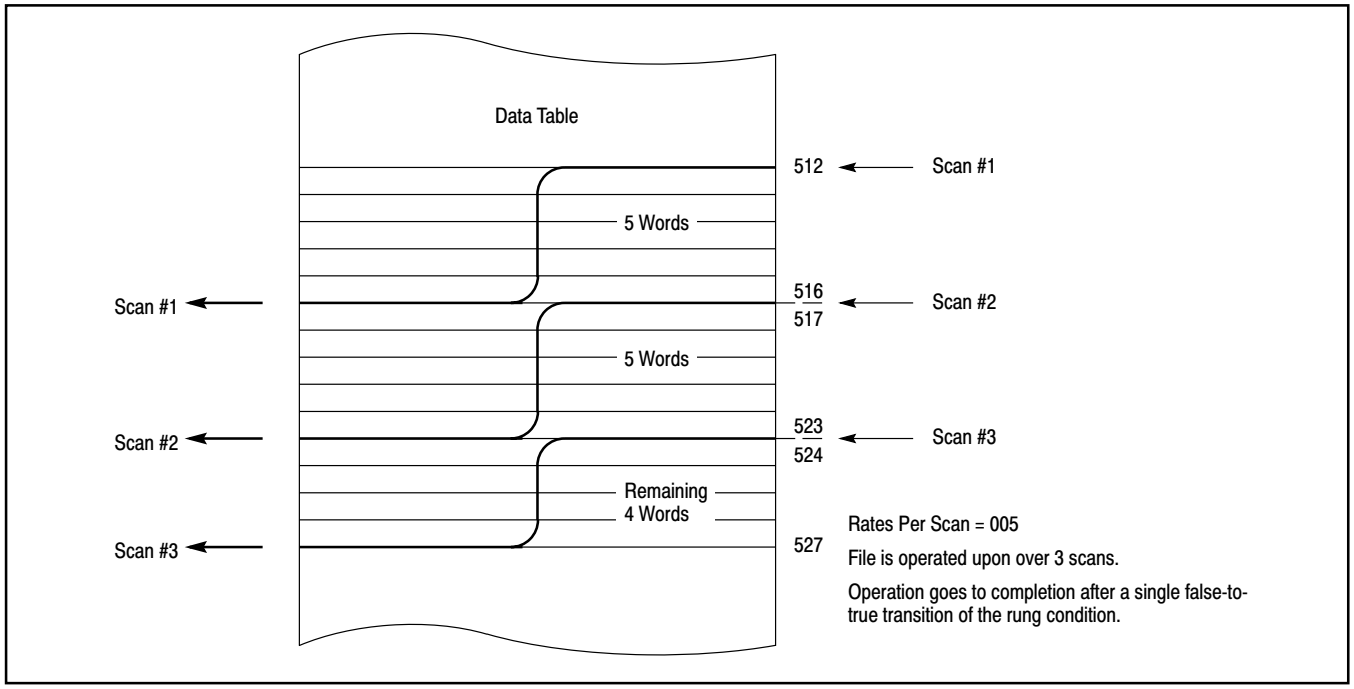
Distributed Complete Mode

In cases where is is not necessary that the file operation be completed in one program scan, it may be advantageous to distribute the file operation over several program scans. This is to avoid overextending the scan time of any one program scan. This scan can be done by selecting the distributed complete mode. Any rate per scan, R, can be chosen where 0<R<4 file length.

When the rung containing the file instruction goes true, the number of words equal to the rate per scan is operated upon during one scan. This process is repeated over a number of scans, until the entire file has been operated upon. Figure 12.7 shows the operation of the file instruction in the distributed complete mode.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.7
Distributed Complete Mode Operation



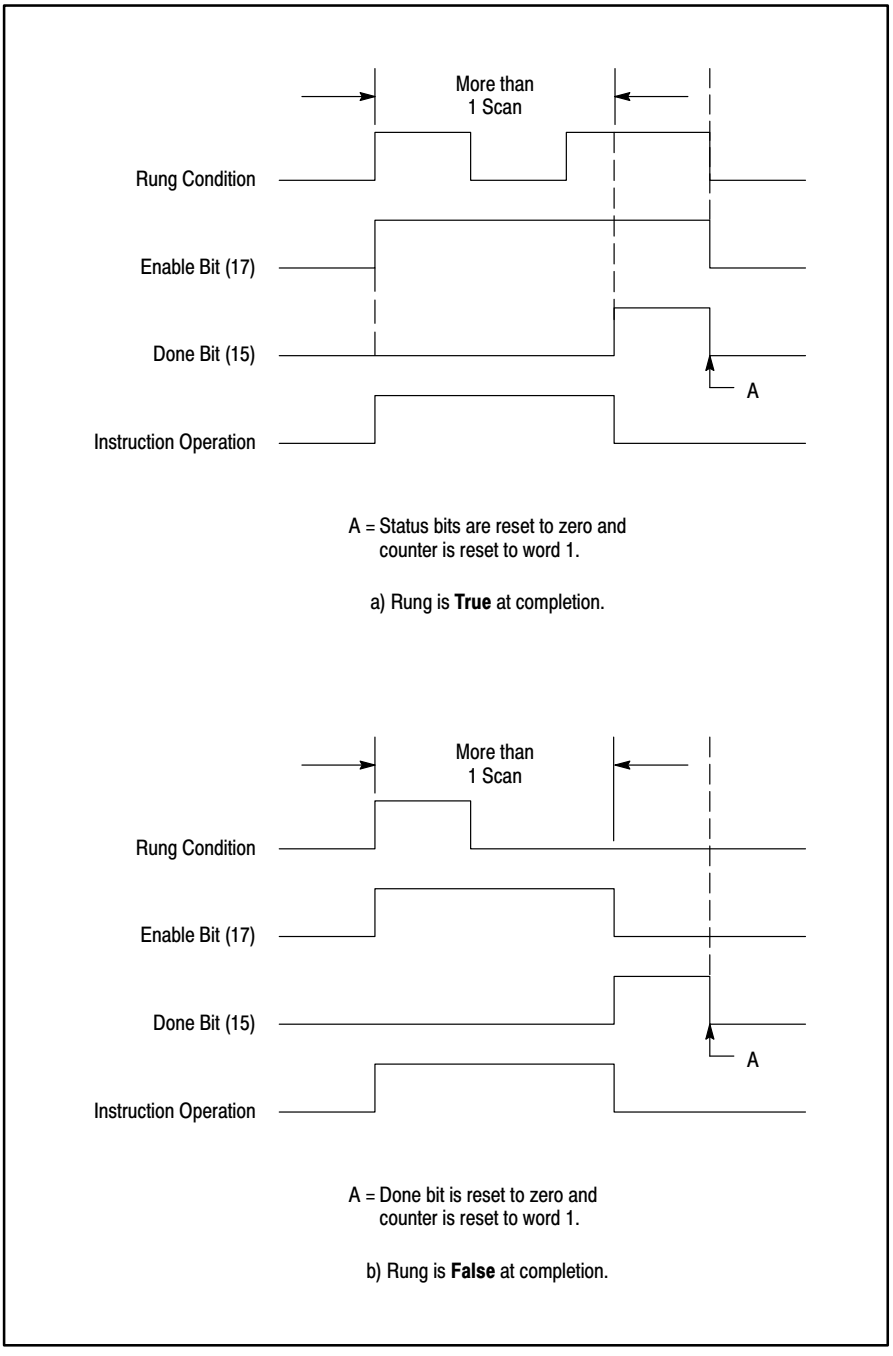
The File instruction, once enabled, remains enabled for the number of scans necessary to complete the operation. The rung could become repeatedly false and true during this time without interrupting the instruction.

NOTE: It is important that the user program not make use of the results of a File instruction operating in the distributed complete mode until the done bit is set. At completion, the rung containing the instruction could either be true or false. If the rung is true at completion, the enable and done bits are both 1.

They are reset to zero and the counter is reset to position 001 when the rung goes false. However, if the rung is false at completion, the enable bit is reset to zero after the last group of words is operated upon. At the same time, the done bit comes on and stays on for one scan. The done bit is reset to zero and the counter is reset to position 001 in the next scan. The operation of the status bits is shown in Figure 12.8 for the two cases: false at completion and true at completion.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.8
Status Bits for Distributed Complete Mode

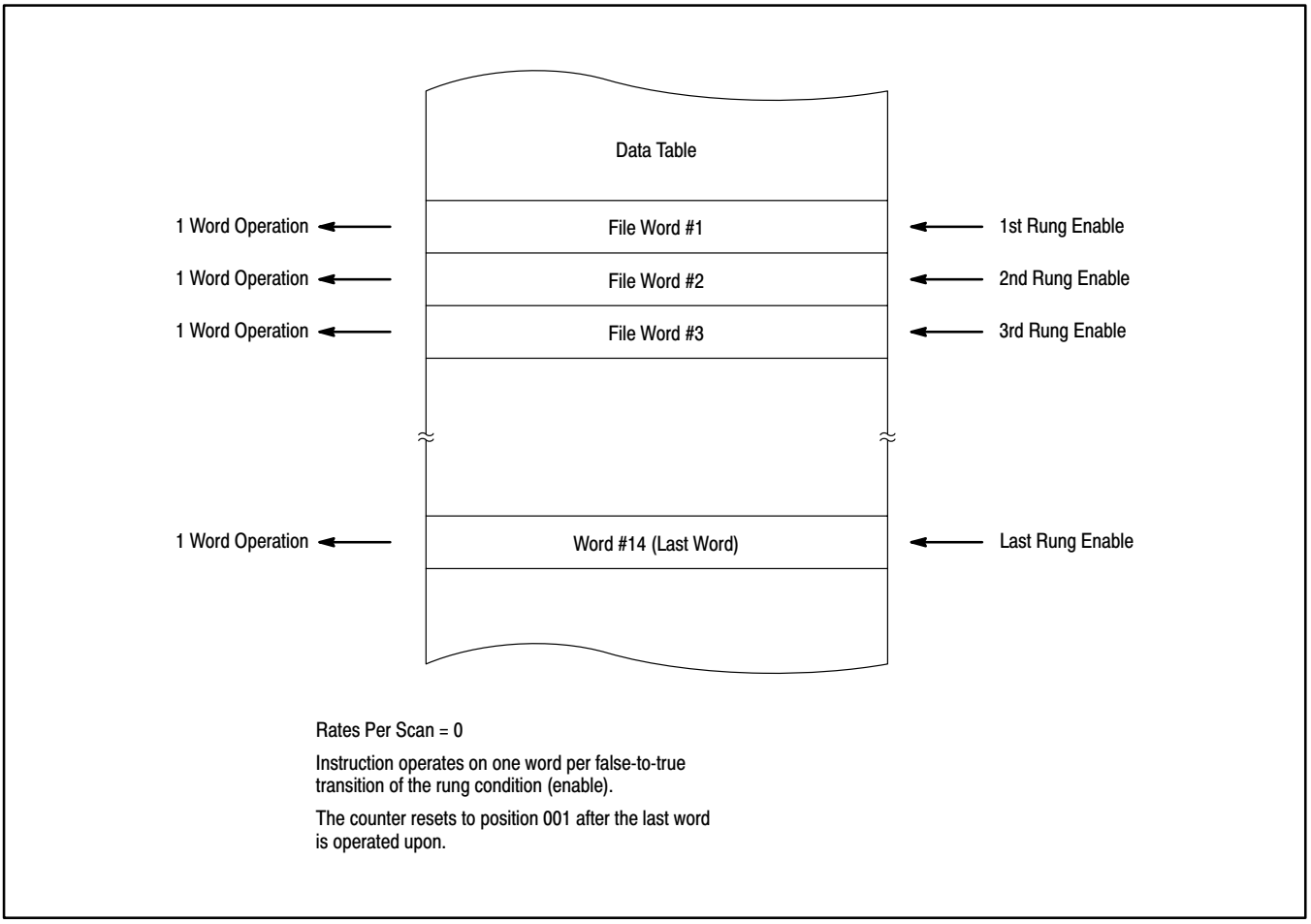


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Incremental Mode

The incremental mode allows the file to be operated upon one word per rung transition. Each time the rung containing the instruction goes from false to true, the instruction operates on the word pointed to by the counter accumulated value, and then increments to the next word. The operation of a file instruction in the incremental mode is shown in Figure 12.9. In this mode, the rate per scan is set equal to zero.

Figure 12.9
Incremental Mode Operation



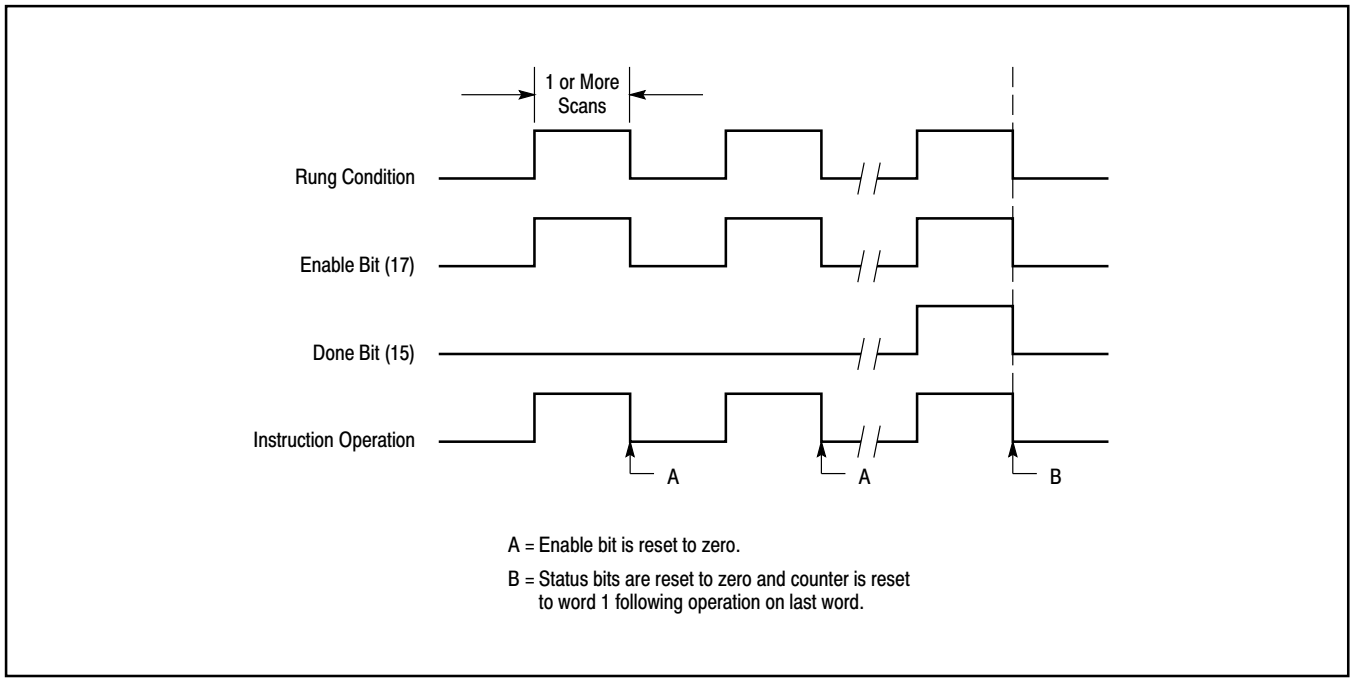
NOTE: The differences between the incremental mode (r=0) and the distributed complete mode when r=1 can be compared. In both cases, the operation defined by the file instruction is performed as the file counter sequentially points to each word in the file. The rung must go from false to true in order to initiate the operation. In the distributed complete mode when r = 1, the entire file operation requires a single false-true transition. It goes to completion automatically, one word per scan over the number of

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

scans equal to the file length. In the incremental mode (r = 0), the operation must be enabled by a separate false-true transition for each word in the file.

The operation of the status bits in the incremental mode is illustrated in Figure 12.10. The enable bit is on if the rung is true. After the last word in the file has been operated upon, the done bit comes on. When the rung goes false after the last word has been operated upon, the enable and done bits are reset to zero and the counter is reset to position 001. If the rung remains true for more than one scan, the operation does not repeat. The operation only occurs on the scan in which the false-true transition occurs.

Figure 12.10
Status Bits for Incremental Mode



12.1.4 Programming File Instructions

A file instruction can be entered into the user program by pressing the key representing the general type of block instruction, i.e., [FILE] or [SEQUENCER] followed by a numeric code (such as 0, 1, 2 or 10, 11, 12 etc.) specific to the instruction. A list of numeric codes for each general type of block instruction can be displayed by pressing the general instruction key followed by the [HELP] key. See Section 4.4.2, Help directories, for additional information.

After the key sequence is pressed, the instruction block will be displayed. The title will be intensified and blinking until all required information is

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

entered. Default values are presented in the instruction block. A character cursor will indicate where instruction parameters are to be entered.

The programming and operation of the block instructions are covered in detail in the section specifically assigned to each instruction.

12.1.5 File Instruction Run-Time Error

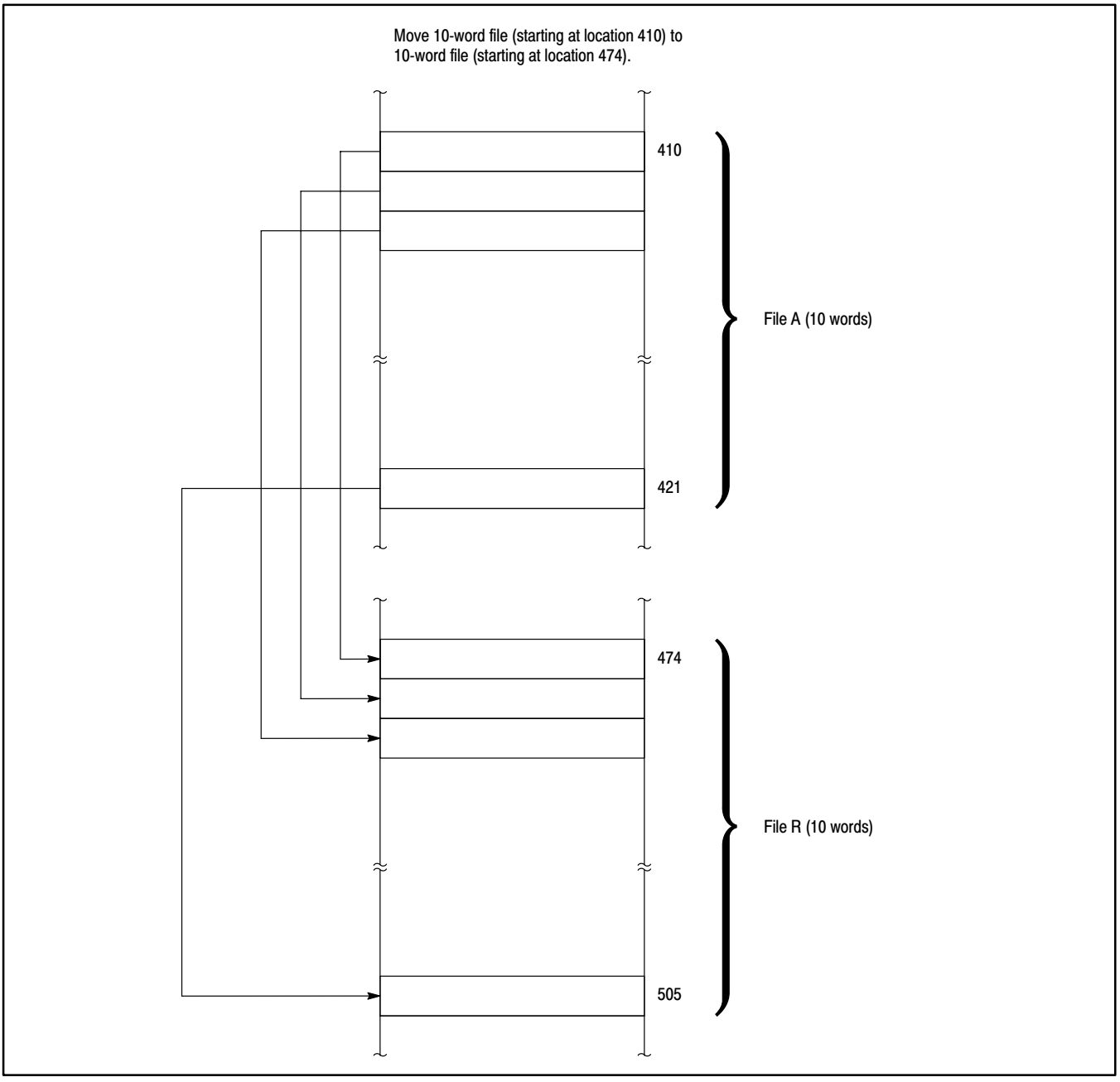
If the counter accumulated value exceeds its preset value, the instruction counter will be indexed outside the file. This causes a run-time error. Additional programming should be used to assure that the instructions which change the instruction counter accumulated value do not cause the preset value to be exceeded. Additional information on run-time errors can be found in Section 2.3.

12.2 File-to-File Move

This output instruction transfers duplicates of the word values in file A (Figure 12.11) to file R. The files can be from 1 to 999 words long. File A remains unaffected by the operation.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.11
FILE-TO-FILE MOVE Operation



Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [FILE] 10
- Requires 5 words of user program
- Can operate in incremental, distributed complete, or complete modes
- Counter is internally indexed by instruction

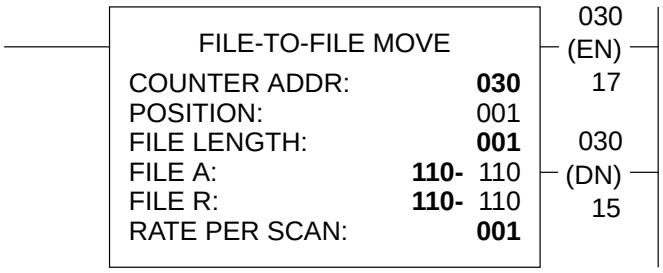
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

12.2.1 Programming File-to-File Move Instructions

WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-File move instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File-to-File move instruction, press keys [FILE] 10. A display represented by Figure 12.12 will appear.

Figure 12.12
FILE-TO-FILE MOVE Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE A	:	Starting address of source file.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file.
RATE PER SCAN	:	Number of data words moved per scan.

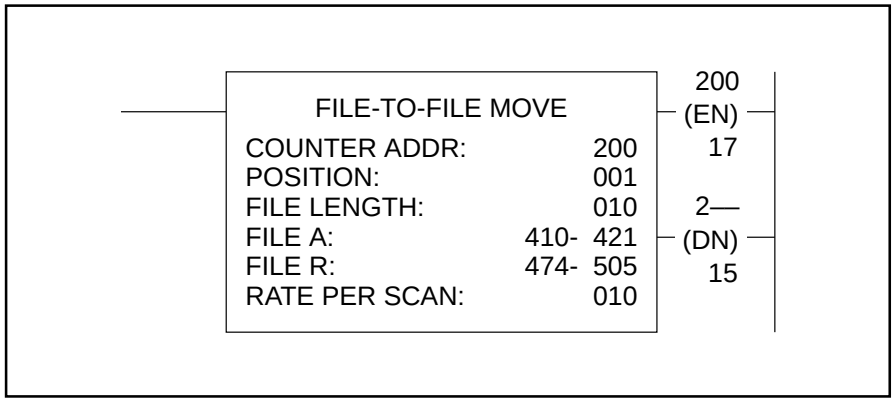
Figure 12.13 shows the format of Figure 12.12 after the conditions listed on the next page have been entered.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

COUNTER ADDR – 200
POSITION (set by instruction) – 001
FILE LENGTH – 010
FILE A – starts at 410 and ends at 421
FILE R – starts at 474 and ends at 505
RATE PER SCAN – 010 steps of the files are operated upon each scan (complete mode)

The procedure for using the data monitor to enter and/or monitor files is presented in Section 12.5.

Figure 12.13
FILE-TO-FILE MOVE Example Rung



12.3 File-to-Word Move

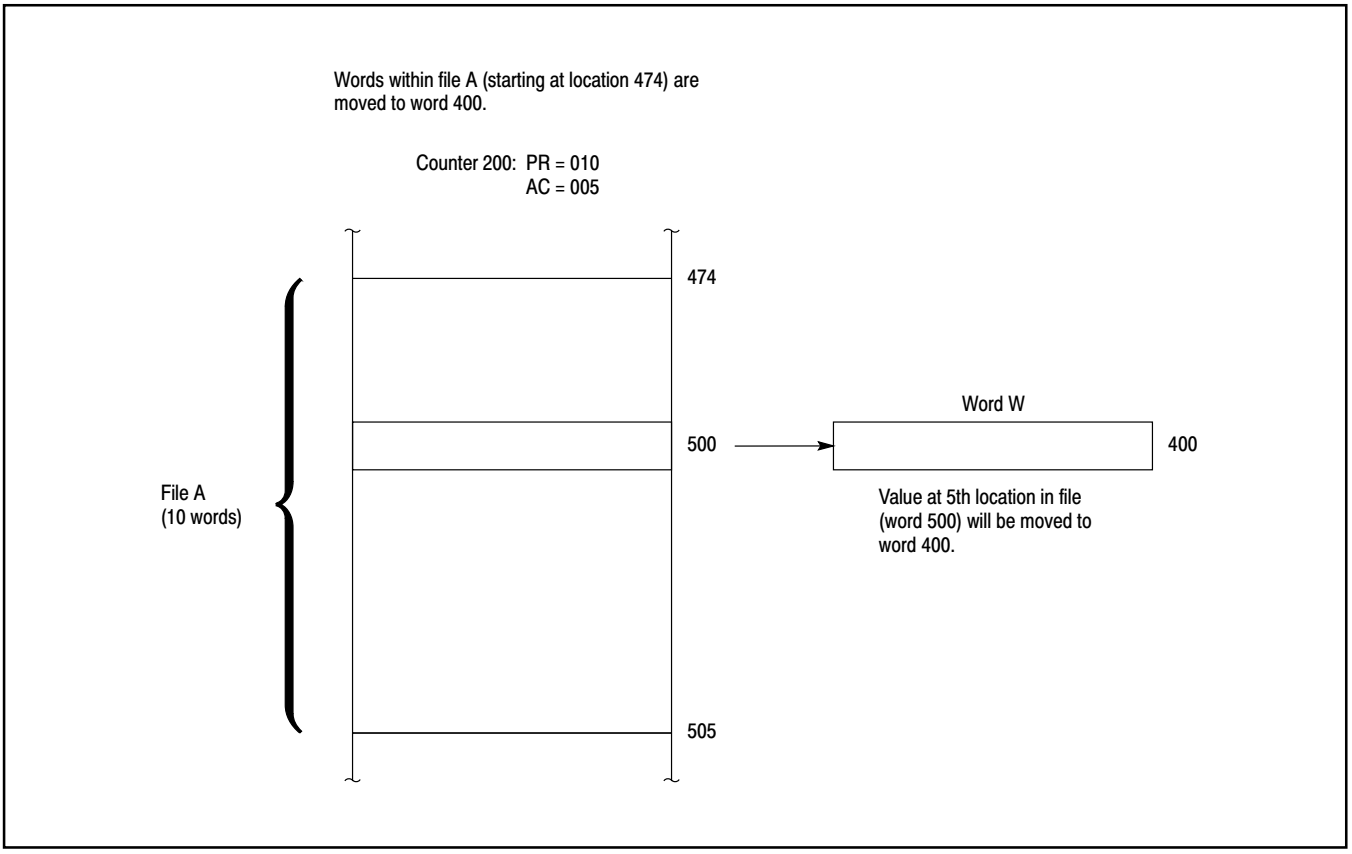
This output instruction transfers a duplicate of a word from file A to a specified word W in the data table (Figure 12.14).

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [FILE] 12
- Requires 4 words of user program
- Counter must be externally indexed by program

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.14
FILE-TO-WORD MOVE Operation



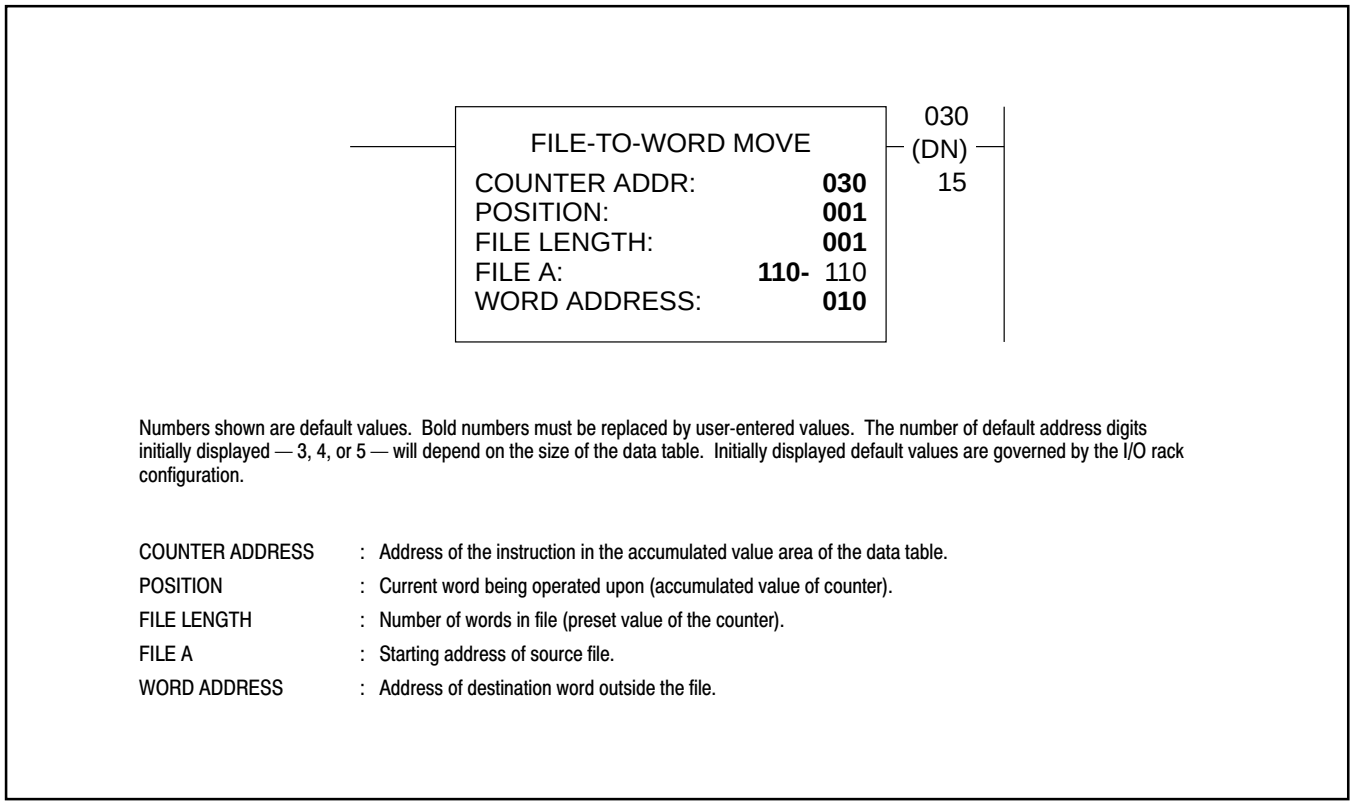
12.3.1 Programming File-to-Word Move Instructions

WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-Word move instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the corresponding instruction(s) which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or the accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File-to-Word move instruction, press keys [FILE] 12. A display represented by Figure 12.15 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.15
FILE-TO-WORD MOVE Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE A	:	Starting address of source file.
WORD ADDRESS	:	Address of destination word outside the file.

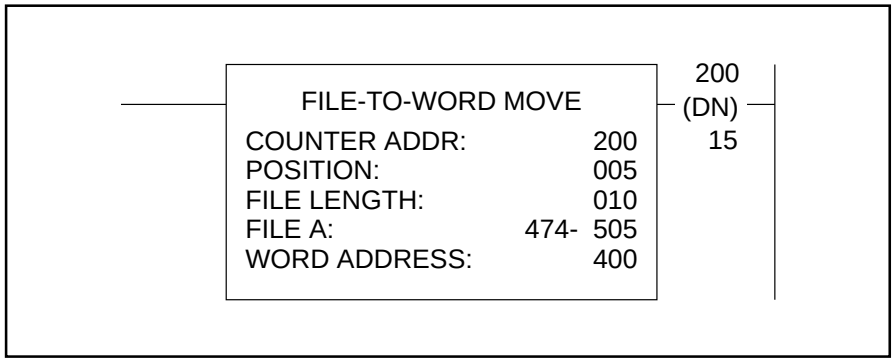
Figure 12.16 shows the format of Figure 12.15 after the conditions listed below have been entered:

COUNTER ADDR – 200
POSITION – 005
FILE LENGTH – 010
FILE A – starts at 474 and ends at 505
WORD ADDR – 400

The procedure for using the data monitor mode to enter and/or monitor file data is presented in Section 12.5.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.16
FILE-TO-WORD MOVE Example Rung



12.4 Word-to-File Move

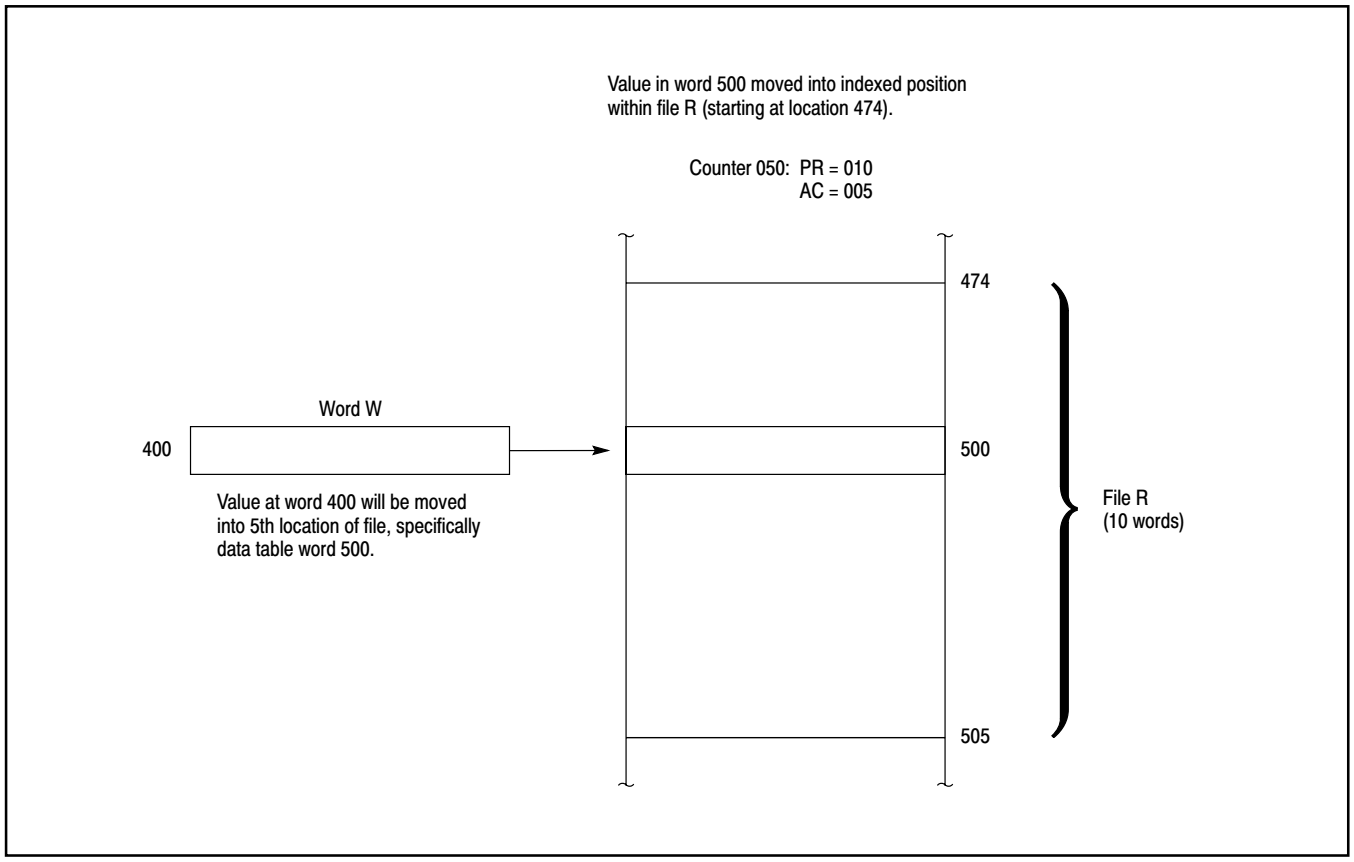
This output instruction transfers a duplicate of the value in a specified data table word W (Figure 12.17) into a word in file R that is pointed to by the counter accumulated value.

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [FILE] 11
- Requires 4 words of user program
- Counter must be externally indexed by program

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.17
WORD-TO-FILE MOVE Operation



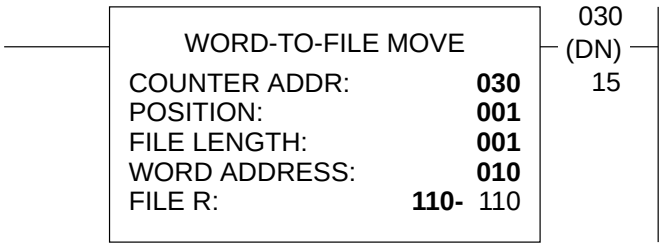
12.4.1 Programming Word-to-File Move Instructions

WARNING: The counter address for the Word-to-File move instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the corresponding instruction(s) which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or the accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Word-to-File Move instruction, press keys [FILE] 11. A display represented by Figure 12.18 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.18
WORD-TO-FILE MOVE Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
WORD ADDRESS	:	Address of source word outside the file.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file.

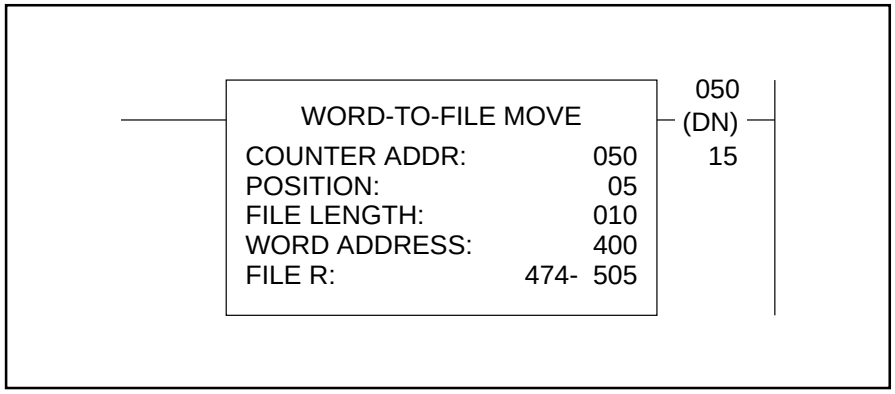
Figure 12.19 shows the format of Figure 12.18 after the conditions listed below have been entered:

COUNTER ADDR – 050
POSITION (set by program) – 005
FILE LENGTH –010
WORD ADDR – 400
FILE R – starts at 474 and ends at 505

The procedure for using the data monitor mode to enter and/or monitor file data is presented in Section 12.5.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.19
WORD-TO-FILE MOVE Example Rung



12.5 Data Monitor Mode

The data monitor mode can be used to monitor, load and edit data. Each file instruction has two corresponding data monitor displays. One displays file data in binary and the other displays file data in hexadecimal representation. If you have a Series B, Revision F (or later) keyboard, ASCII data monitor display can be shown. The binary data monitor display shows each word of a file in a 16-character format of 1 and 0. The hexadecimal display shows a 4-character format of hexadecimal digits (0 through F). The ASCII monitor display converts your four digits to the ASCII code. Generally, the binary display is chosen when bit information is pertinent and hexadecimal display is chosen when word values are desired. ASCII is chosen when character values are desired. Data can be entered and/or displayed in either number system. The industrial terminal can automatically convert from one number system to the other when the alternate display is selected. For additional information on number systems, refer to Appendix B.

12.5.1 Accessing the Data Monitor Mode

To access the data monitor mode, place the cursor on the desired file instruction in the user program. All of the user-added information required by the instruction block must be entered before the data monitor display mode can be accessed.

Then press one of the following key sequences:

- Binary data monitor format – [DISPLAY] 0
- Hexadecimal data monitor format – [DISPLAY] 1
- ASCII data monitor format – [DISPLAY] 2

These are summarized in Table 12.B.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 12.B
Accessing the Display[1]

Key Sequence	Explanation
[DISPLAY] X	Accesses data monitor format.
[DISPLAY] X [RECORD][2]	Prints first 20 lines of the data monitor.
[DISPLAY] X [HELP][2]	Accesses the ASCII/Hexadecimal conversion table.
[DISPLAY] X [HELP] [RECORD][2]	Prints the ASCII/Hexadecimal conversion table.
where X = 0 – Binary Data Monitor, 1 – Hexadecimal Data Monitor, 2 – ASCII Data Monitor[2]	

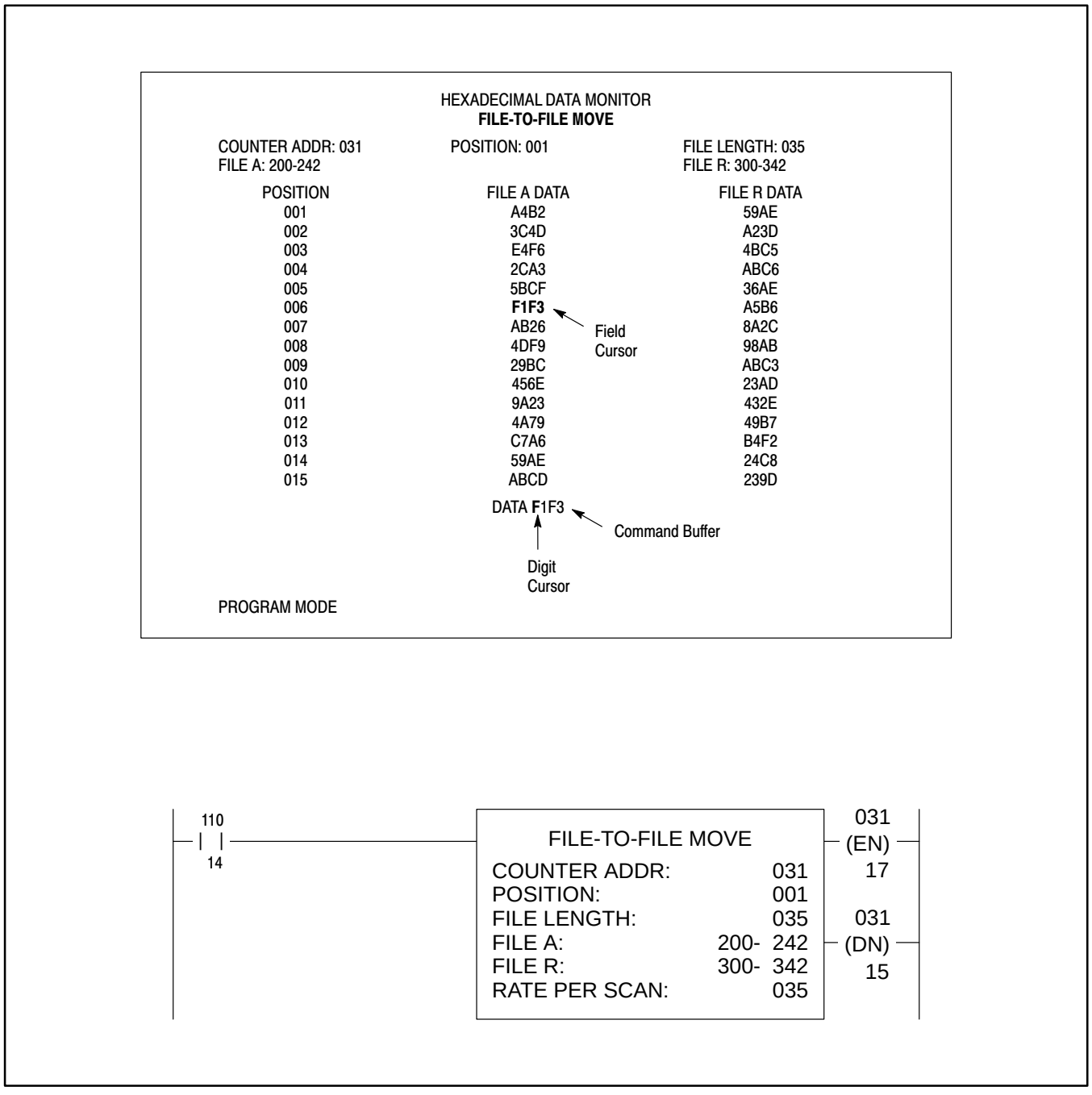
[1] The cursor must be positioned on the file instruction in the ladder diagram.

[2] Requires Series B, Revision F (or later) keyboard.

Once pressed, the industrial terminal display will change from ladder diagram to data monitor mode. An example file instruction and its corresponding data monitor display in hexadecimal format are shown in Figure 12.20.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 12.20
Example Hexadecimal Data Monitor Display of File Instruction



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

12.5.2 Data Monitor Display

Data monitor displays, although unique for each File instruction, have common characteristics including a header section, a file section and a command buffer.

Header

The header is located at the top of the screen and contains information pertinent to its corresponding File instruction, such as: counter address, file addresses, current position value and length value. This information is extracted from the instruction block by the industrial terminal.

Some data monitor headers contain word data which can be entered or changed in the same manner as file data. The entry or change of data is described in Sections 12.5.3 and 12.5.5.

File Section

The file section is located in the center of the screen and displays the data stored in the file. The locations within the file are numbered sequentially from the starting word address. For example, position 001 corresponds to word 1, the starting address of a file. When file data is displayed in binary representation, data bits are assumed to be numbered from right to left 00-17 respectively.

Each column in the display represents one file. In Figure 12.20, two files are shown. Each column can display from 10 to 15 words of data on the screen. Files with more words can be displayed by scrolling and/or paging the display. Procedures for scrolling and paging the display will be discussed in Section 12.5.4.

The file section contains a field cursor which can be positioned on any word in the file. The word file pointed to by the field cursor is intensified.

Command Buffer

The command buffer is located at the bottom center of the screen and is used to enter or change file data. If the header contains word data, this information can also be changed using the command buffer.

The current word in the command buffer is the word that is pointed to and intensified by the field cursor. The word data is duplicated in the command buffer. A digit cursor is active with the command buffer and is used to enter or change data.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The command buffer is always displayed when the processor is in program mode. When in run/program mode, the command buffer will not be displayed unless the on-line data change feature is being used.

12.5.3 Cursor Controls

The field cursor and digit cursor are used together to enter or change file data.

Field Cursor

The field cursor initially appears in the top left position of the file section. Within a column, the [↓] and [↑] keys can be used to move the cursor down or up respectively, one position number at a time.

The field cursor can be moved from one column to another. The [SHIFT] [→] and [SHIFT] [←] key sequences are used to move one column right and left, respectively. If the field cursor is on the far right and left edge of the screen, it cannot be moved past the edge boundaries.

The field cursor can be moved into the header area of a data monitor display which contains user-changeable data, by pressing [DISPLAY] 000. When there, the field cursor is controlled by the four cursor control keys [↑], [↓], [SHIFT] [←] and [SHIFT] [→]. If the header contains no changeable data, the field cursor cannot be moved there. The field cursor can be moved back to the file section by pressing [DISPLAY] [X] [X] [X] where XXX is any position number.

The field cursor commands are summarized in Table 12.C.

Table 12.C
Field Cursor Commands and Scrolling

Key Sequence	Explanation
[↑] or [↓]	Moves the Field Cursor up or down, respectively, one line at a time. If it is at the top or the bottom of the File section, the display will scroll one line but the cursor will not move.
[SHIFT] [→]	Moves the Field Cursor to the next file column to the right.
[SHIFT] [←]	Moves the Field Cursor to the next file column to the left.
[DISPLAY] [0] [0] [0]	Moves the Field Cursor into the Header, if accessible.
[DISPLAY] [X] [X] [X]	Moves the Field Cursor and file word XXX to the top row of the File section.
[↑] or [↓] or [SHIFT] [→] or [SHIFT] [←]	Positions the Field Cursor in the Header: up, down, left, or right, respectively (if the Header is accessible).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Digit Cursor

The digit cursor initially appears in the left-most position in the command buffer. It can be moved to the right or left within the command buffer by pressing the [→] or [←] cursor command keys, respectively. It will not respond to a command to move outside the buffer area. Whenever the command buffer is displayed, the digit cursor will always be reverse video.

The digit cursor commands are summarized in Table 12.D.

Table 12.D
Digit Cursor Commands

Key Sequence	Explanation
[→] or [←]	Moves the Character Cursor one position to the right or left, respectively, in the Command Buffer.

12.5.4 Data Monitoring Procedures

File data can be monitored when the processor is in any mode of operation using the procedures described below.

Paging

A page of information is defined as a full screen of file words in the file section. For example, in Figure 12.20, a page is shown which begins at position 001 and ends at position 015. To display longer files, additional full pages can be presented by pressing [SHIFT] [↓]. In Figure 12.20, pressing [SHIFT] [↓] would change the display to a page beginning at position 016 and ending with position 030. Pressing [SHIFT] [↑] would return the display to its previous page (i.e., positions 001-015).

Specified Paging

When a word in a particular file position, XXX, is of interest, specified paging will present the page containing that word. The word will be presented on the top row of the file section. The field cursor will move to word XXX. Pressing [DISPLAY] [X] [X] [X] will select a page beginning with XXX on the top row.

Paging and specified paging commands are summarized in Table 12.E.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 12.E
Paging and Specified Paging

Key Sequence	Explanation
[SHIFT] [↓]	Displays the next full page of data.
[SHIFT] [↑]	Displays the previous full page of data.
[DISPLAY] [X] [X] [X]	Specified paging presents a page beginning at the desired file word XXX. The Field Cursor moves to word XXX.

Scrolling

Scrolling the file section, one entry at a time, can be done using the [↑] and [↓] keys when the field cursor is on the top or bottom position, respectively. In Figure 12.19, if the[↓] key were pressed once with the field cursor on position 015, the display would change to a page ending at position 016 (beginning at 002). The field cursor would remain at the bottom of the screen. Pressing the [↓] key four more times would place position 020 on the bottom line, etc. Attempting to scroll in either direction beyond the number of words contained in the file will not be allowed. An invalid key message will appear.

Scrolling procedures are summarized in Table 12.C.

12.5.5 Entering and Changing Data

Data can always be entered or changed when the processor is in program mode. In run/program mode, data can only be changed using on-line data change. The key sequence [SEARCH] 51 initializes this feature. See Section 4.4.4 for additional information on the on-line data change function.

Data is entered or changed in the command buffer. After a character is entered, the digit cursor shifts to the right one position and waits for the next entry. The cursor will remain even after the last character is entered. When the command buffer values have been entered or corrected using the numeric, hexadecimal and cursor control keys, press the [INSERT] key. The data in the command buffer is then entered into processor memory in the corresponding file location.

The procedure for entering or changing data is summarized in Table 12.F.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 12.F
Data Entry Commands

Key Sequence	Explanation
[D] [D] [D] [D][1]	Data is entered or changed in the Command Buffer.
[INSERT]	Command Buffer data is loaded into Processor memory and placed into the file word located by the Field Cursor.
[CANCEL COMMAND]	Terminates Data Monitor Mode and returns display to Ladder Diagram. If in On-Line Data Change, [CANCEL COMMAND] will terminate On-Line Data Change. A second [CANCEL COMMAND] will terminate Data Monitor mode.

[1] Hexadecimal format. The Binary format (1's and 0's) would contain 16 data characters.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 13

Shift Register Instructions

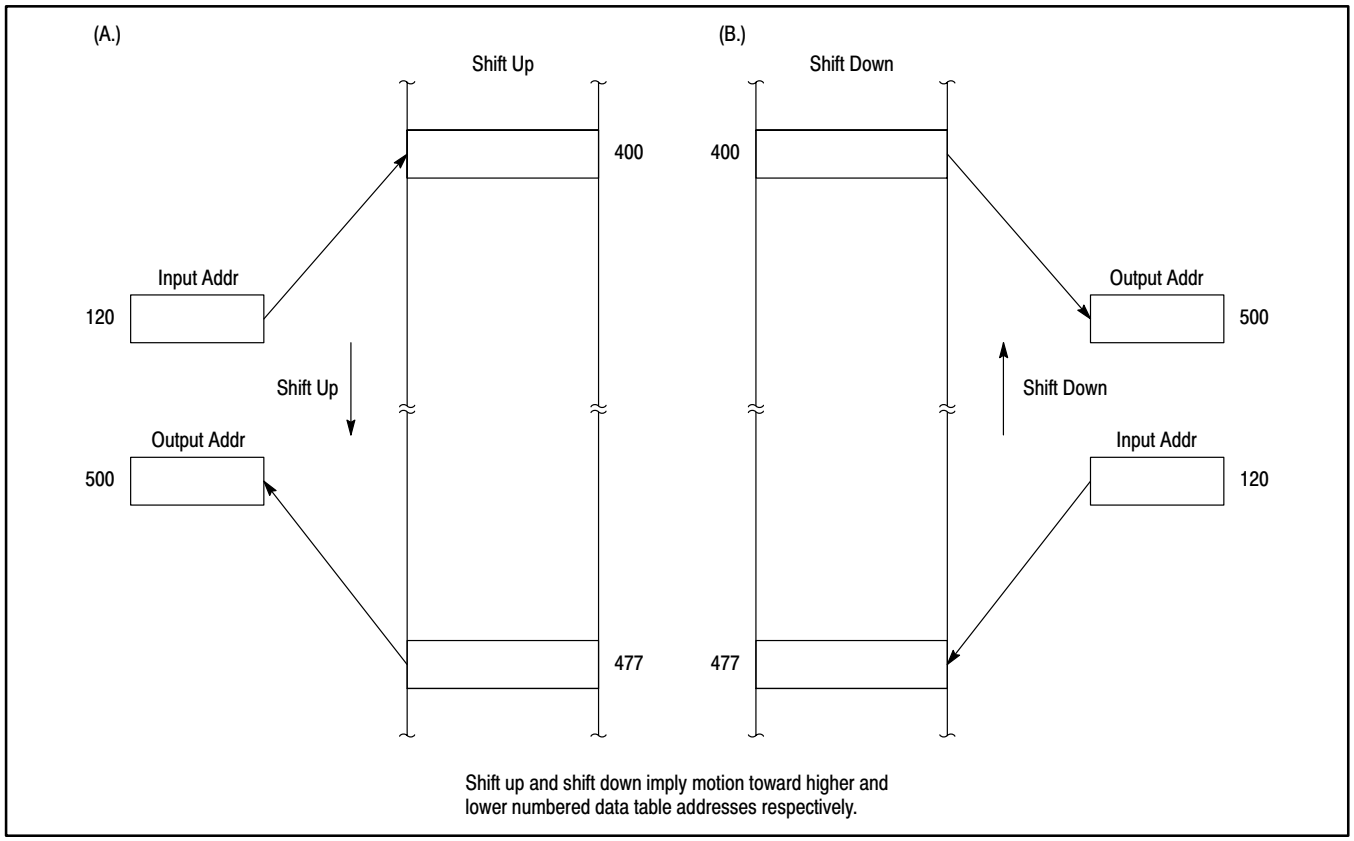
13.0 General

The file shift instructions are:

- Shift File Up
- Shift File Down
- FIFO Load
- FIFO Unload

The first two output instructions are used to construct synchronous word shift registers from 1 to 999 words long (Figure 13.1). Upon false-true transition of rung decision, the data from input word will be shifted into the file, and the data in the last/first word of the file will be shifted up/down into the output word.

Figure 13.1
Example of a 64 Word SHIFT FILE UP/DOWN Register Starting at Word 400_8

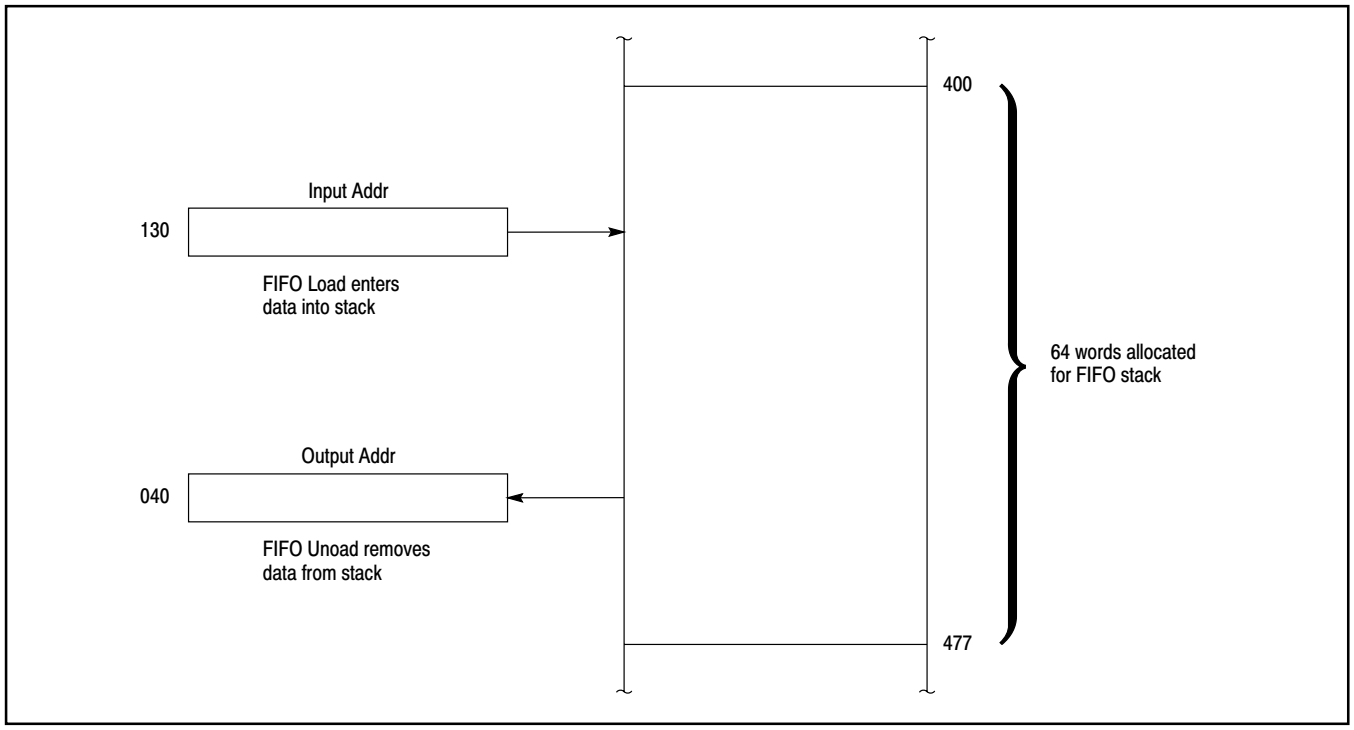


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The FIFO Load and FIFO Unload output instructions that are always used together to construct an asynchronous word shift register (Figure 13.2) up to 999 words long. Upon false-true transition of rung decision, the contents of the input word will be transferred into the stack (FIFO Load); or the contents of the word designated by the unload pointer will be transferred to the output word (FIFO Unload).

NOTE: This section assumes the reader has read Chapter 12, file and data monitor mode, and is familiar with the concepts introduced in that section.

Figure 13.2
FIFO (First In First Out) Operation for a 64 Word FIFO Stack Starting at Address 400_8



13.1 Shift File Up

This instruction can be used as a synchronous word shift register. When the rung goes true, the data from a specified input word is shifted into the first word of the file (Figure 13.1a), the data in the file is shifted up one word (toward higher number addresses) and the data of the last word in the file is shifted into the specified output word.

The instruction can operate in either complete or distributed complete mode. In complete mode the input word data is shifted out in one scan. In distributed complete mode, it will take a number is scans to shift in one

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

input word of data and to shift out one word of data to the output word. The output word data should NOT be considered valid until the bit is set.

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 10
- Counter manipulated by instruction
- Can operate in distributed complete or complete modes
- Requires 6 words of user program

13.1.1 Programming Shift File Up Instruction

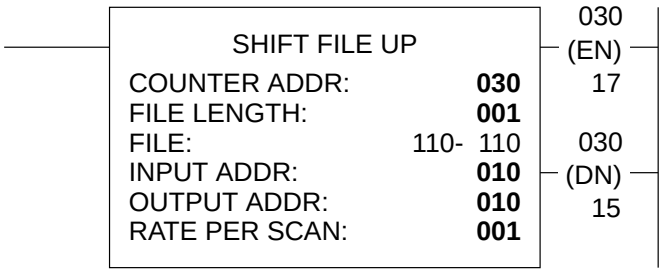


WARNING: The counter address specified for the Shift File Up instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent change to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Shift File Up instruction press keys [SHIFT REG] 10. A display represented by Figure 13.3 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 13.3
SHIFT FILE UP Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE	:	Starting word of file.
INPUT ADDRESS	:	Address of input word.
OUTPUT ADDRESS	:	Address of output word.
RATE PER SCAN	:	Number of words operated upon per scan.

Figure 13.4 shows the format of Figure 13.3 after the following conditions have been entered.

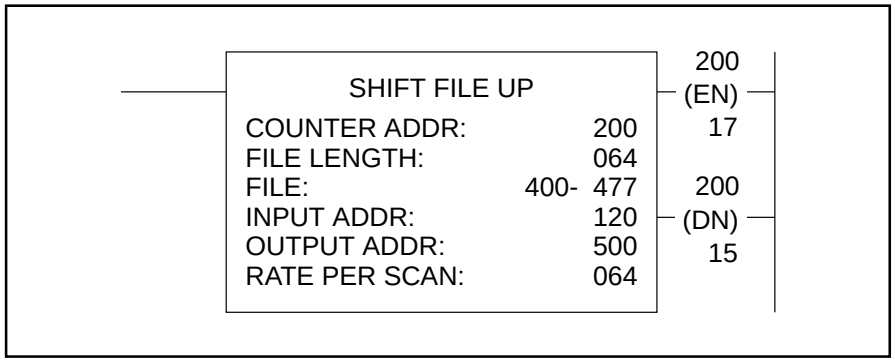
COUNTER ADDR – 200
FILE LENGTH – 064
FILE – File starts and ends at words 400 and 477 respectively
INPUT ADDR – 120
OUTPUT ADDR – 500
RATE PER SCAN – 064

This is the complete mode. A word is shifted into and a word is shifted out of the file each scan.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 13.4
SHIFT FILE UP Example Rung



13.2 Shift File Down

This instruction can be used as a synchronous word shift register. When the rung goes true, the data from a specified input word is shifted into the last word file (Figure 13.1b), the data in the file is shifted down one word (toward lower number addresses) and the data of the first word in the file is shifted into the specified output word.

The instruction can operate in either complete or distributed complete mode. In complete mode the input word data is shifted out in one scan. In distributed complete mode, it will take a number of scans to shift in one input word of data and to shift out one word of data to the output word. The output word data should NOT be considered valid until the done bit is set.

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 11
- Counter manipulated by instruction
- Can operate in distributed complete or complete modes
- Requires 6 words of user program

13.2.1 Programming Shift File Down Instruction



WARNING: The counter address specified for the Shift File Down instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

To program a Shift File Down instruction press keys [SHIFT] [REG] 11. The format that appears and the technique for insertion of numbers, will be identical to that for Shift File Up (Figures 13.3 and 13.4) except that the title will read Shift File Down.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode to monitor/edit file data is presented in Chapter 12.

13.3 FIFO Load and FIFO Unload

These two output instructions are used together to construct an asynchronous word shift register (Figure 13.2). Upon false-true transition of rung decision, FIFO Load transfers data from a specified input address into the file. Upon false-true transition of rung decision, FIFO Unload transfers data from the file into a specific output address.

Load and unload pointers track the load and unload addresses in the FIFO files so that words are withdrawn from the file in the same order that they were entered into the file, thus the acronym FIFO — first in first out. These pointers are manipulated by the processor, as is the data in the FIFO file.

The load and unload pointers will load and unload words at any point in the file. The body of the file will float between these boundaries. Do not expect to find any particular data entry at any specific data table location in this area.

Only the FIFO input and output addresses are pertinent to the FIFO operation and are the only words which should be manipulated by or examined in the user program.

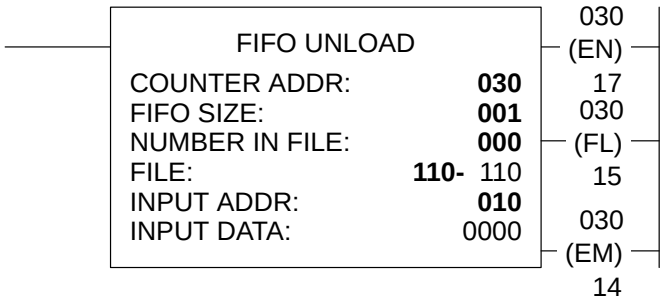
The status bits for this instruction are enable, full and empty (see Figure 13.5). When the FIFO file is full, no data can be loaded if the rung goes true for the FIFO Load instruction, that data will be lost. Conversely, if the FIFO stack is empty, no data can be unloaded. Any data unloaded from an empty FIFO is invalid. The full and empty flags should always be used in the program to ensure that the data being loaded/unloaded to/from the file is not lost/invalid.

Instruction overview:

- Output instructions
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 14 and 15
- Requires 5 words of user program each
- Counter manipulated by instructions
- The FIFO Load and FIFO Unload instructions must have the same counter address, same size and the same file address.

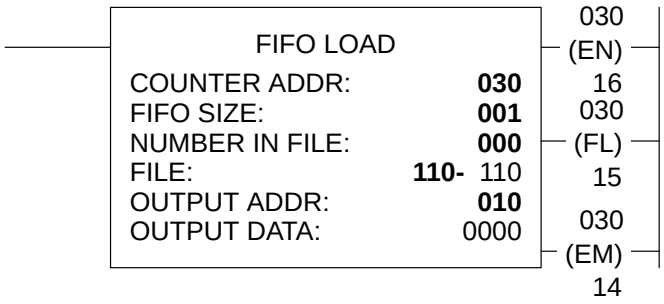
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 13.5
Format for FIFO LOAD and FIFO UNLOAD Instructions



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
FIFO SIZE	:	The maximum number of words that the FIFO stack can contain.
NO IN FILE	:	Current number of words in the stack.
FILE	:	Starting address of the FIFO stack location.
INPUT ADDRESS	:	Address of input word outisde the stack.
INPUT DATA	:	Current data at input address.



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
FIFO SIZE	:	The maximum number of words that the FIFO stack can contain.
NO IN FILE	:	Current number of words in the stack.
FILE	:	Starting address of the FIFO stack location.
OUTPUT ADDRESS	:	Address of output word outisde the stack.
OUTUT DATA	:	Current data at output address.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

13.3.1 Programming FIFO Load and FIFO Unload Instruction



WARNING: The counter address specified for FIFO Load and FIFO Unload instructions should be reserved for these instructions. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program FIFO load press keys [SHIFT REG] 14. A display represented by Figure 13.5a will appear. To program FIFO unload press keys [SHIFT REG] 15. A display represented by Figure 13.5b will appear.

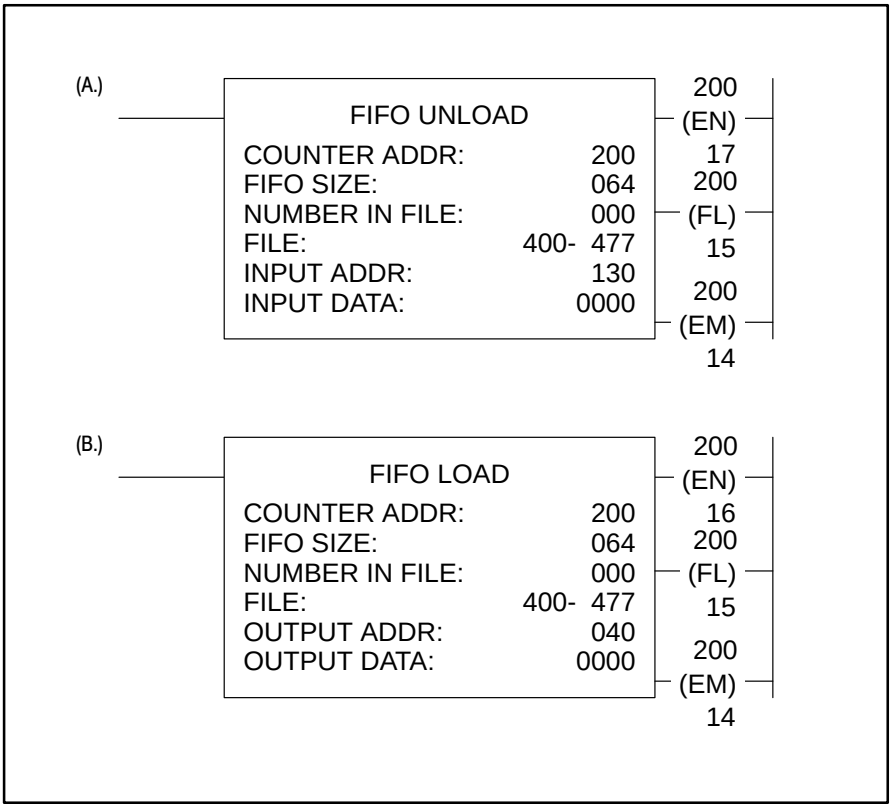
Figures 13.6a and 13.6b show the format of Figures 13.5a and 13.5b after entering the following conditions for the FIFO file shown in Figure 13.2.

COUNTER ADDR – 200
FIFO SIZE – 064
FILE – Starts and ends at words 400 and 477 respectively
INPUT ADDR – 130
OUTPUT ADDR – 040

There is no data monitor mode for the FIFO instructions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 13.6
FIFO LOAD and FIFO UNLOAD Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 14

Bit Shifts

14.0 General

The Bit Shift instructions are:

- Bit Shift Left
- Bit Shift Right
- Examine Off Shift Bit
- Examine On Shift Bit
- Set Shift Bit
- Reset Shift Bit

The Bit Shift Left and Bit Shift Right instructions are output instructions used to construct and manipulate a synchronous bit shift register from 1 to 999 bits in length. Figure 14.1 shows a 128-bit shift register. Upon false-true transition of rung decision the contents of the shift register moves one bit to the right or left. Operation can only be in the complete mode.

The Examine off Shift Bit and Examine On Shift Bit instructions are condition instructions which can examine bits in a shift register such as shown in Figure 14.1. The user specifies the bit number to be examined and the starting address of the shift register.

Set Shift Bit and Reset Shift Bit are output instructions which set or reset a specified bit in a bit shift register such as that shown in Figure 14.1. The user specifies the bit number to be manipulated and the starting address of the shift register.

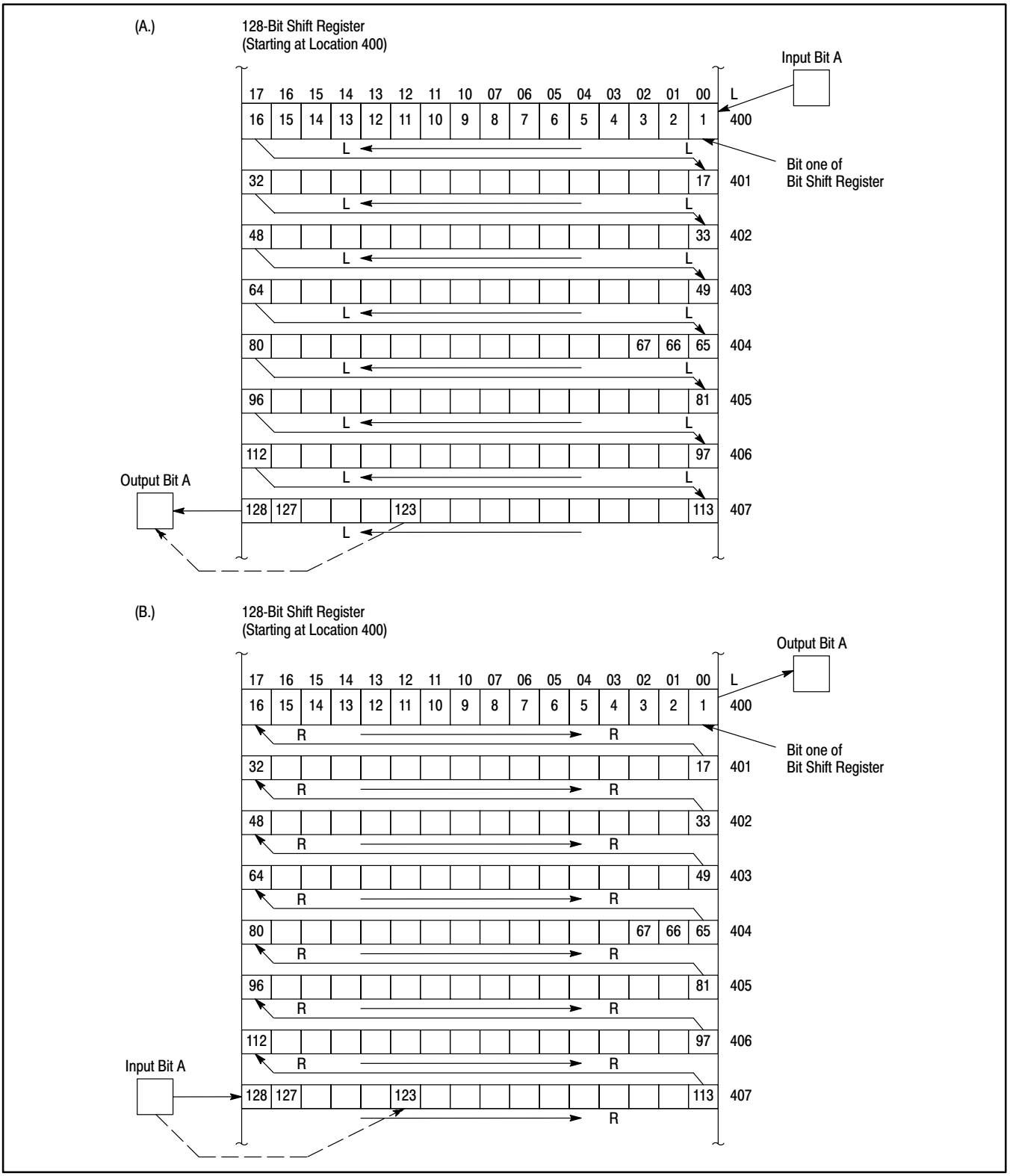
NOTE: This section assumes the reader has read Chapter 12, file concepts and data monitor mode, and is familiar with the concepts and terms introduced in that section.

14.1 Bit Shift Left

The Bit Shift Left output instruction constructs a synchronous bit shift register from 1 to 999 bits in length. Figure 14.1A shows a 128-bit register and ending at words 400_8 and 407_8.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.1
BIT SHIFT LEFT/RIGHT Operation



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Upon false-true transition, bit A from a particular input word will be shifted into the first bit of the bit shift register. Bit 1 will move to the left and displace bit 2. Bit 2 will displace bit 3, etc. Each bit displaces the one to its left until the last bit in the word (bit 16) is reached. Bit 16 then replaces bit 00 in the next word. This bumping procedure continues throughout the file until the last bit is ejected from the stack into bit B in a particular output word.

If the shift register of Figure 14.1A had been 123 bits long it would have ended at bit 12_8 of word 407_8. In this case the bits to the left of 12_8 in word 407_8 would be unused for the bit shift register. However, they cannot be used for any other purpose. The value in bit 123 would be shifted directly into bit B when a bit shift occurred as shown by the dotted line in Figure 14.1A.

The instruction operates in the complete mode. The status of the input bit is shifted into the first bit in the register and the status of the last bit in the register is shifted into the output bit in one scan.

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 12
- Counter modified by instruction
- Operates in complete mode
- Requires 6 words of user program

14.1.1 Programming Bit Shift Left Instruction

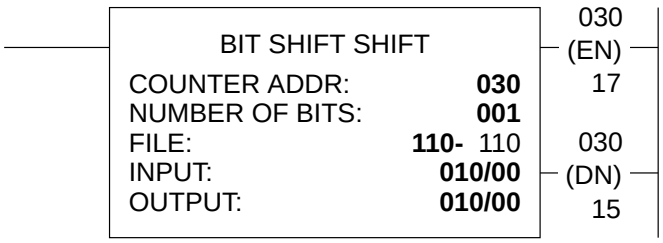


WARNING: The counter address specified for the Bit Shift Left instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a bit shift left press [SHIFT REG] 12. A display represented by Figure 14.2 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.2
BIT SHIFT LEFT Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
NUMBER OF BITS	:	Number of bits in the file.
FILE	:	Starting address of file.
INPUT	:	Address of input bit.
OUTPUT	:	Address of output bit.

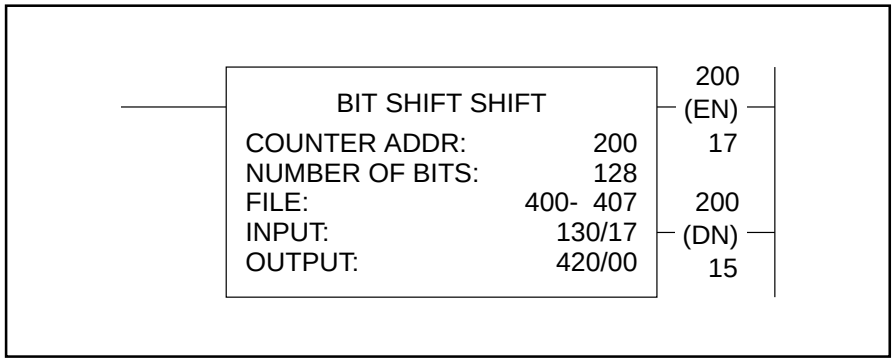
Figure 14.3 shows the format of Figure 14.2 after the following conditions have been entered.

COUNTER ADDR – 200
NUMBER OF BITS – 128
FILE – The bit register starts and ends at word 400_8 and 407_8 respectively.
INPUT – The input bit is bit 17 of word 130_8.
OUTPUT – The output bit is bit 00 of word 420_8.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry on the monitor is presented in Chapter 12. Note that bit 00 is the right side on the file display and bit 17 is on the left.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.3
BIT SHIFT LEFT Example Rung



14.2
Bit Shift Right

The Bit Shift Right output instruction constructs a synchronous bit shift register from 1 to 999 bits in length . Figure 14.1B shows a 128-bit register starting at words 400 and 407.

Upon false-true transition, bit B from a particular input word will be inserted into the last bit of the bit shift register. In Figure 14.1B, bit 128 will move right and displace bit 127. Bit 127 will displace bit 126. Each bit displaces the one on its right until the first bit in the word, 113 in word 407_8, is reached. Bit 113 then replaces bit 112 status in word 406_8. This bumping procedure continues throughout the stack until bit 1 is ejected from the file into a specified bit A in an output word.

If the shift bit register of Figure 14.1B had been 123 bits long it would have ended at bit 12_8 of word 407_8. In this case the bits to the left of 12_8 in the word 407_8 would be unused and cannot be used for any other purpose. A Bit Shift Right will shift the on or off status of bit B directly into bit 123 shown by the dotted line.

The instruction operates in the complete mode. The status of the input bit is shifted into the last bit in the register and the status of the first bit in the register is shifted into the output bit in one scan.

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 13
- Counter manipulated by instruction
- Operates in complete mode
- Requires 6 words of user program

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

14.2.1 Programming Bit Shift Right Instruction

WARNING: The counter address specified for the Bit Shift Right instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent change to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Bit Shift instruction press [SHIFT REG] 13. The format that appears and the technique for insertion of numbers, will be identical to that for bit shift left (Figures 14.2 and 14.3) except that the title will read Bit Shift Right.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

14.3 Examine Off Shift Bit

This condition instruction that examines a user specified bit in a bit shift register, such as shown in Figure 14.1, for an off or 0 condition. The instruction can be used alone or in conjunction with other condition instructions to affect the rung decision.

Instruction Overview:

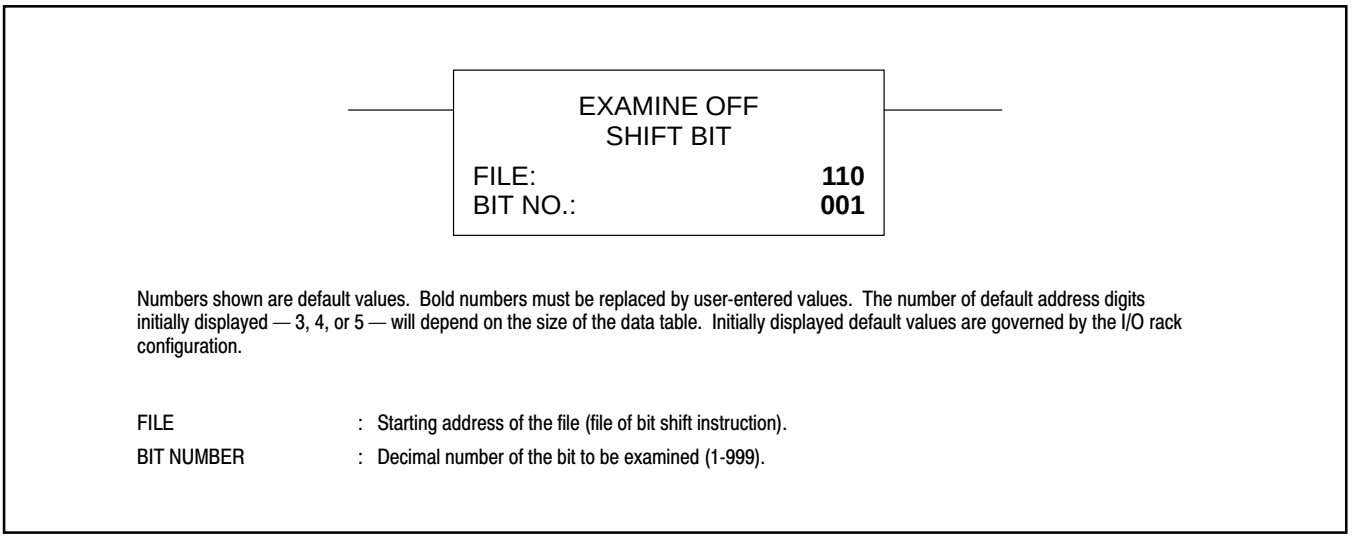
- Input instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT] 18
- Requires 3 words of users program

14.3.1 Programming Examine Off Shift Bit Instruction

To program an Examine Off Shift bit press [SHIFT REG] 18. A display represented by Figure 14.4 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.4
EXAMINE OFF SHIFT BIT Format



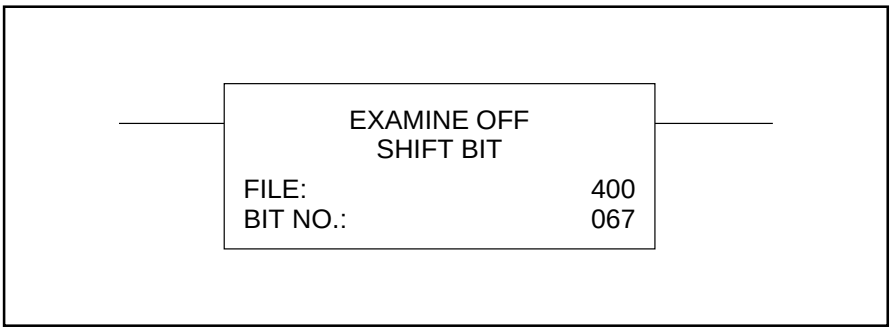
Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

FILE	:	Starting address of the file (file of bit shift instruction).
BIT NUMBER	:	Decimal number of the bit to be examined (1-999).

Figure 14.5 shows the format of Figure 14.4 for the following conditions for the shift register of Figure 14.1.

- File – Starts at word 400
- Bit No – Examine bit number 67 in the shift register for an off (0) condition

Figure 14.5
EXAMINE OFF SHIFT BIT Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

14.4 Examine On Shift Bit

This condition instruction examines a user specified bit in a bit shift register, such as shown in Figure 14.1, for an on or 1 condition. The instruction can be used alone or in conjunction with other input instructions to affect the rung decision.

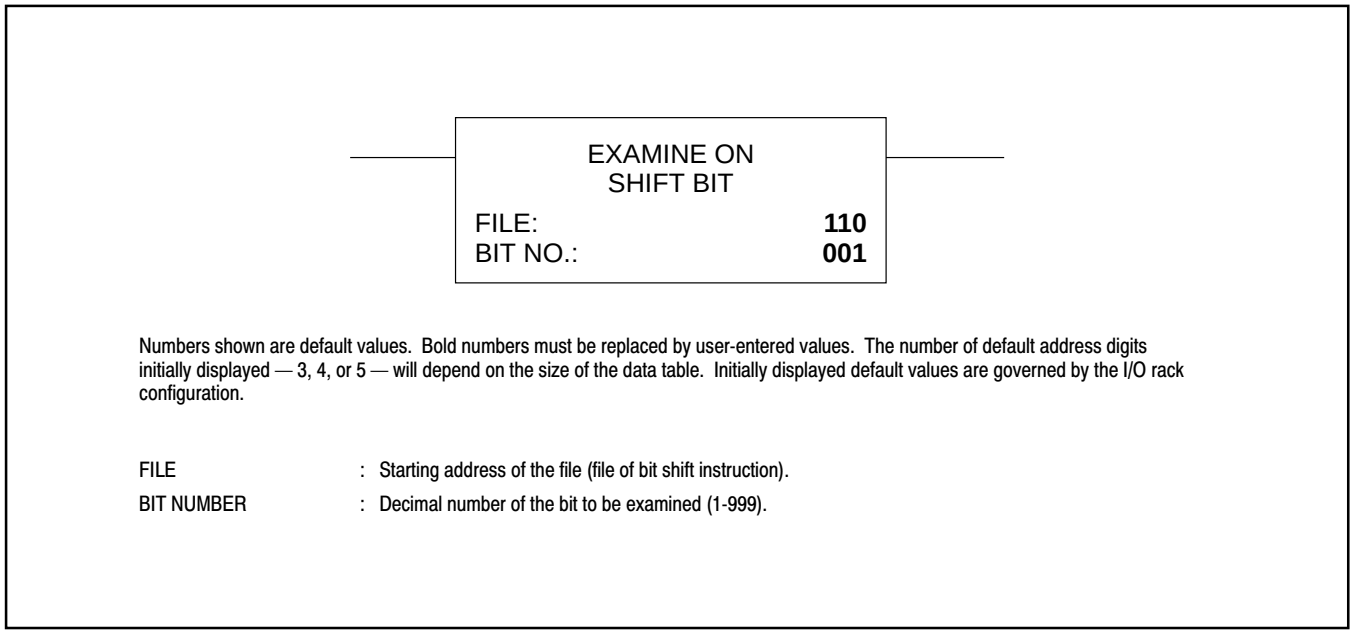
Instruction overview:

- Input instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 19
- 3 words of users program required

14.4.1 Programming Examine On Shift Bit Instruction

To program an Examine On Shift Bit instruction press [SHIFT REG] 19. A display represented by Figure 14.6 will appear.

Figure 14.6
EXAMINE ON SHIFT BIT Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

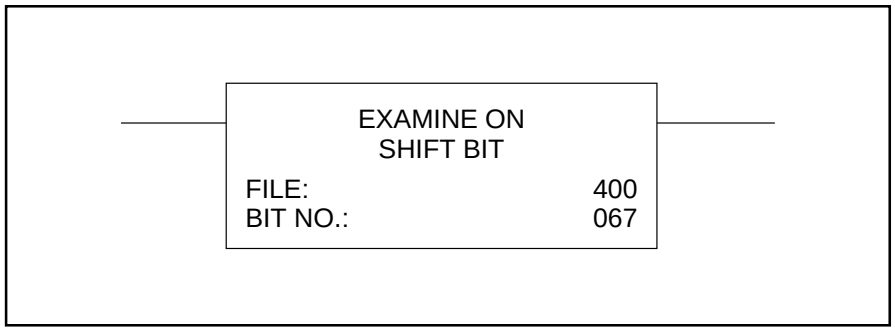
FILE	:	Starting address of the file (file of bit shift instruction).
BIT NUMBER	:	Decimal number of the bit to be examined (1-999).

Figure 14.7 shows the format of Figure 14.6 for the following conditions of the bit shift register of Figure 14.1.

- File – Starts at word 400
- Bit No. – Examine bit number 67 in the shift register for an on (1) condition.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.7
EXAMINE ON SHIFT BIT Example Rung



14.5 Set Shift Bit

The Set Shift Bit output instruction sets a specified bit in a bit shift register such as that shown in Figure 14.8. The user specifies the bit number of the bit to be set and the starting address of the file. The instruction executes upon a true-rung condition.

NOTE: If file is shifted, new data in the same bit position will be set if set shift bit rung is still true.

Instruction overview:

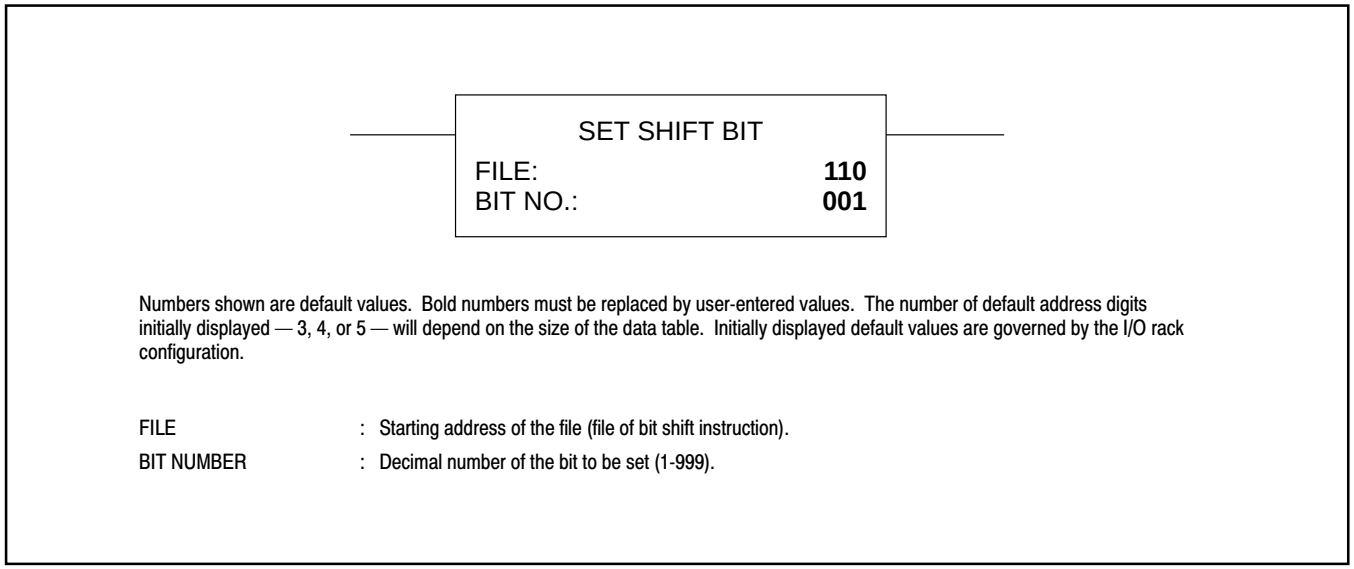
- Output instruction
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 16
- 3 words of users program required

14.5.1 Programming Set Shift Bit Instruction

To program a Set Shift Bit instruction press [SHIFT REG] 16. A display represented by Figure 14.8 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 14.8
SET SHIFT BIT Format



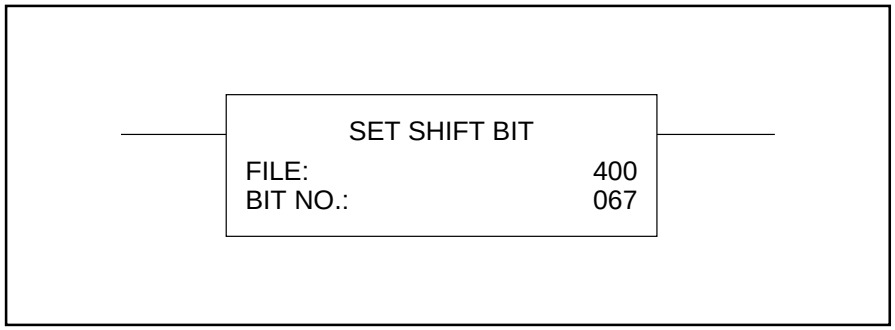
Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

FILE : Starting address of the file (file of bit shift instruction).
BIT NUMBER : Decimal number of the bit to be set (1-999).

Figure 14.9 format of Figure 14.8 for the following condition of the bit shift register of Figure 14.1.

- File – starts at word 400_8
- Bit No. – set bit number 67 in shift register (Figure 14.1) to on (1).

Figure 14.9
SET SHIFT BIT Example Rung



14.6 Reset Shift Bit

The Reset Shift Bit output instruction turns off a specified bit in a bit register such as that shown in Figure 14.1. The users specifies the bit number of the bit to be turned off and the starting address of the file. The instruction executes upon a true rung condition.

NOTE: If file is shifted, new data in the same bit position will be reset if reset shift bit is still true.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Instruction overview:

- Output instruction
- 3 words of users program required
- Key sequence: [SHIFT REG] 17

14.6.1 Programming Reset Shift Bit Instruction

To program a Reset Shift Bit instruction press [SHIFT REG] 17. A display represented by Figure 14.10 will appear.

Figure 14.10
RESET SHIFT BIT Format

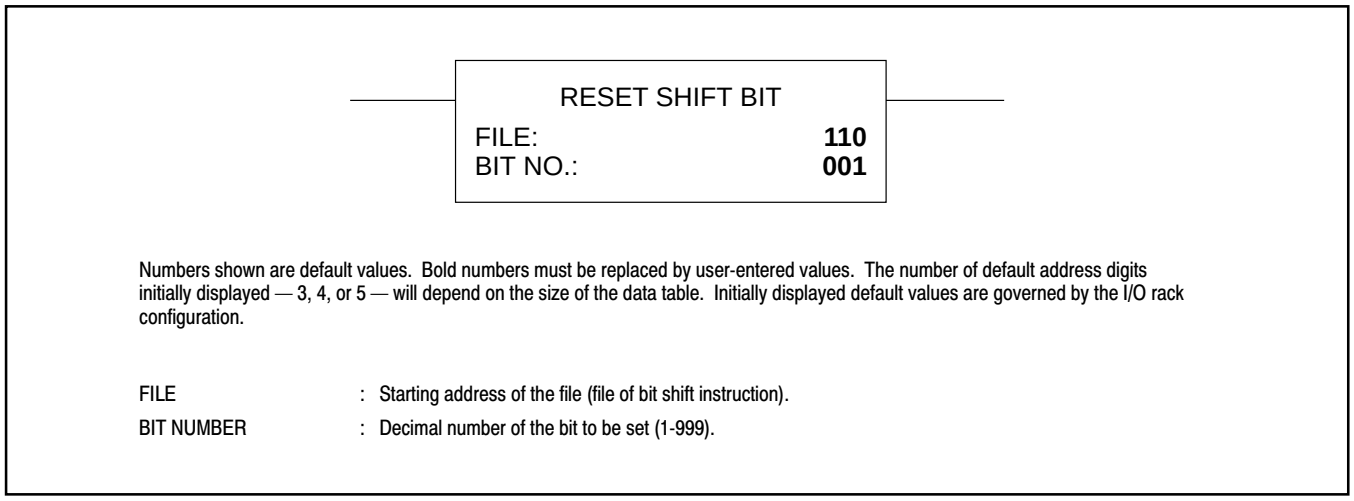
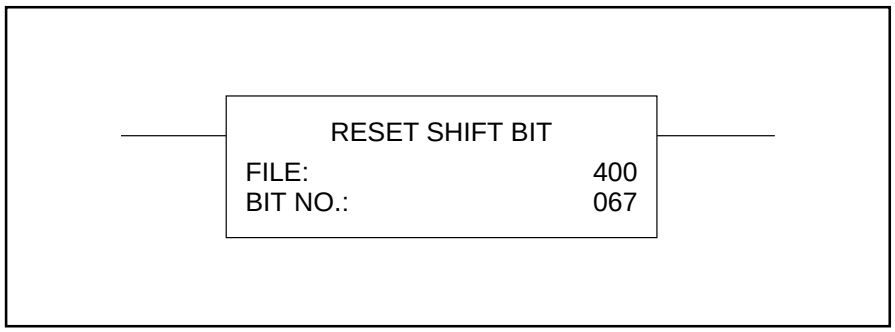


Figure 14.11 shows the format of Figure 14.10 for the following condition of the bit shift register of Figure 14.1.

- File – The file starts at word 400_8.
- Bit No. – Turn bit number 67 in shift register (Figure 14.1) to off (0).

Figure 14.11
RESET SHIFT BIT Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 15

Sequencer Instructions

15.0 General

Sequencer Instructions are powerful block instructions. They operate on up to 4 words (64 bits) at a time. There are three sequence instructions: Sequencer Output, Sequencer Input and Sequencer Load.

Sequencer instructions can be used to transfer information from the data table to output word addresses for the control of sequential machine operation (Sequencer Output); to compare I/O word information with information stored in tables so that machine operating conditions can be examined for control and diagnostic purposes (Sequencer Input); and to transfer I/O word information into the data table (Sequencer Load). When used in combination or with other instructions, the potential to create powerful, concise programs is nearly unlimited.

NOTE: This section assumes the reader has read Chapter 12, Data Transfer File Instructions and is familiar with the concepts and terms introduced in that chapter.

Comparison With File Instructions

Sequencer instructions are similar to File instructions but have some marked differences. Both are block instructions that contain a counter and a file. The instructions require the entry of more than one address. Each has a corresponding data monitor display for monitoring, loading or editing file data.

File instructions operate on files that are one word or 16 bits wide. In contrast, Sequencer instructions operate on files that are up to four words or 64 bits wide. A sequencer file can be represented graphically by a sequencer table. The length or number of steps (rows) in a sequencer table can be up to 999. The width of a sequencer table can be up to four words (columns) as shown in Figure 15.1.

NOTE: The data table is one word wide by many long. A sequencer table appears in the data table as one continuous file; the length of the file equals the product of the number of words wide (columns) and the number of steps as shown in Figure 15.2. As an example, a 24-step by 4-word-wide sequencer table will occupy 96 consecutive words in the data table.

Internally indexed file instructions, when enabled, perform the operation and then increment to the next step. In contrast, internally indexed

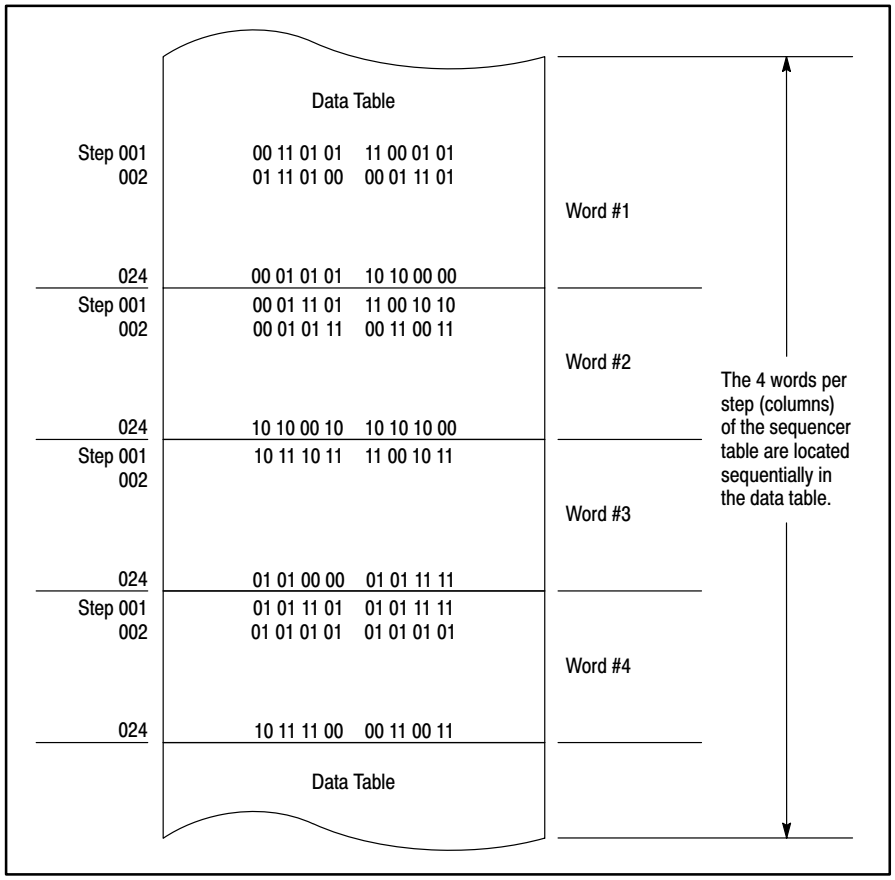
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Sequencer instructions, when enabled, increment to the next step and then the operation is performed.

Figure 15.1
Sequencer Table

Step	Word 1	Word 2	Word 3	Word 4
001	00110101 11000101	00011101 11001010	10111011 11001011	01011101 01011111
002	01110100 00011101	00010111 00110011	"	01010101 01010101
003	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
"	"	"	"	"
024	00010101 10100000	10100010 10101000	01010000 01011111	10111100 00110011

Figure 15.2
Sequencer Table Format in the Data Table



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.1 Sequencer Output Instruction

The Sequencer Output instruction functions in a manner analogous to a mechanical drum sequencer.

15.1.1 Sequencer Output Analogy

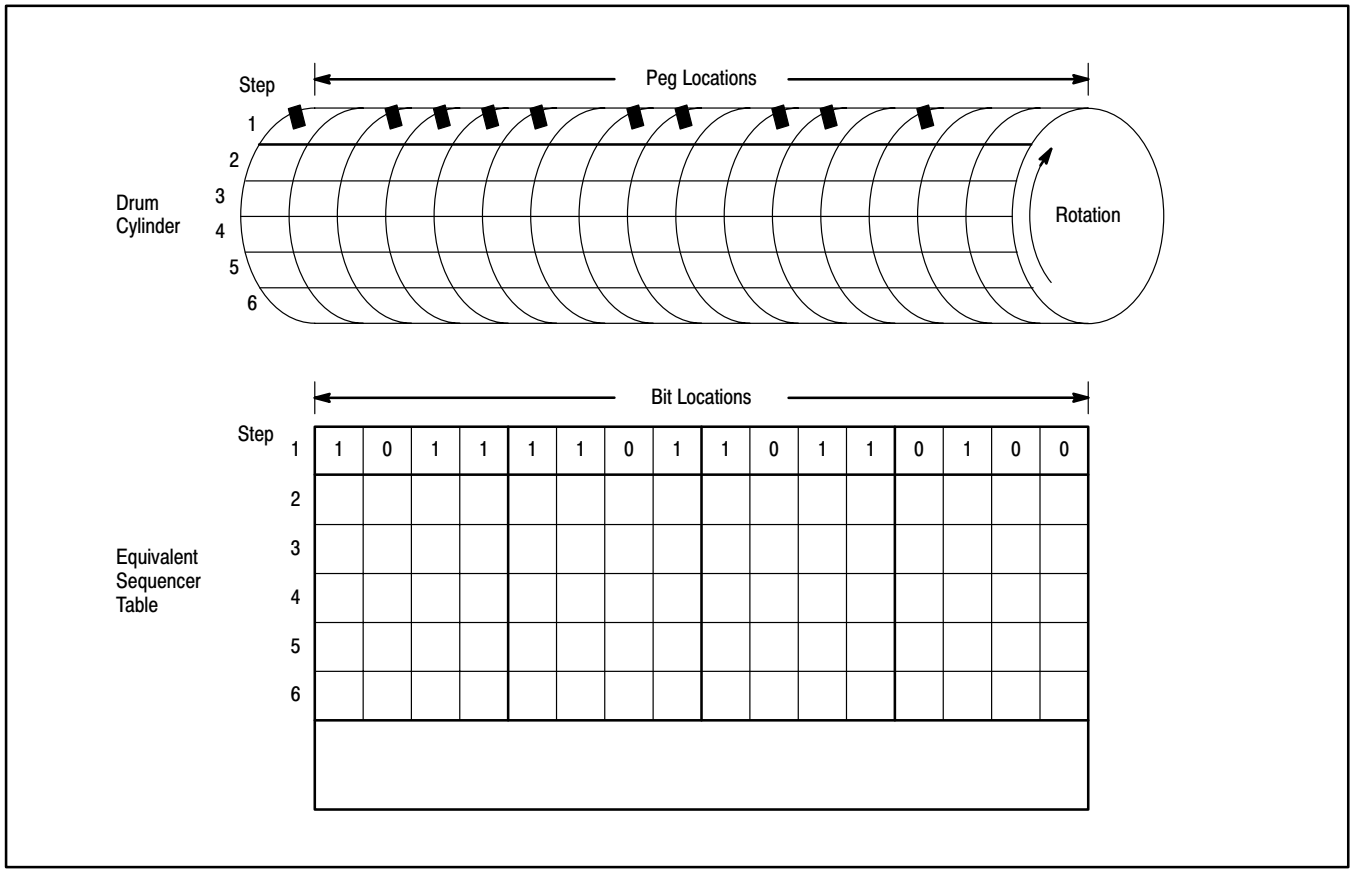
Consider a music box mechanism containing a cylinder with rows of pegs. As the cylinder turns, the pegs produce tones (output) as they strike the spring resonators. In this analogy, the presence of pegs on the cylinder wall are analogous to 1 in bit locations in the sequencer table. As the cylinder turns continuously through many steps, each step presents a new row of peg locations. The presence of 1 or more pegs produces a single tone or a musical chord.

If the cylinder wall containing the pegs could be removed, cut along its axis to separate the first and last rows, and flattened, the resulting rectangular surface would be a representation of a sequencer table. The rows or steps would be numbered from top to bottom; the pegs representing 1 in bit locations would be numbered accross the top as shown in Figure 15.3.

The Sequencer Output instructions can control up to 64 outputs with 999 steps.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.3
Sequencer Output Analogy



15.1.2 Operation of the Sequencer Output Instruction

When the rung containing the Sequencer Output instruction goes from false to true, the counter increments to the next step in the sequencer table. The data found there is output to the output word address that was specified in the Sequencer instruction. The output word addresses need not be consecutive.

The Sequencer Output instruction operates whenever the rung is true. This means that once the rung is enabled, the counter is incremented to the next step and the data in that step will be outputted every scan that the rung remains true. The instruction will not advance to the next step until there is a false-to-true transition of the rung condition.

When the last step of the sequencer table is outputted (AC= PR), the Done bit is set. The next false-to-true transition of the rung condition will start the instruction operation again at step 1. The instruction counter should be set to zero for start-up purposes if it is desirable to start at step 1 when the instruction is enabled for the first time.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

NOTE: When the rung is false, data is not transferred by the instruction and outputs remain in their last state unless changed by instructions elsewhere in the user program.

15.1.3 Masking Output Data

A mask is a means of selectively screening out data. The purpose of the mask in the Sequencer Output instruction is to allow unused bits of output words specified in the instruction to be used for other purposes.

The Sequencer Output instruction operates through the output word(s) specified in the instruction. The number of output bits required for sequential operations can be less than 16, 32, 48 or 64 corresponding to a 1-, 2-, 3-, or 4-word Sequencer instruction. When this is true, masking allows the unused output terminals of a module that is specified in the Sequencer instruction to be used for other purposes.

A zero in a mask bit location prevents the instruction from operating on the data in the corresponding bit location. A 1 in a mask bit location allows the corresponding bit to be operated upon. When all the output data bits are relevant to the instruction, a mask of all ones should be used.

A mask word must be specified for each output word used in the instruction. When the first mask word address is entered, the industrial terminal will automatically assign the next 1, 2 or 3 consecutive word address(es) for the required number of mask words.



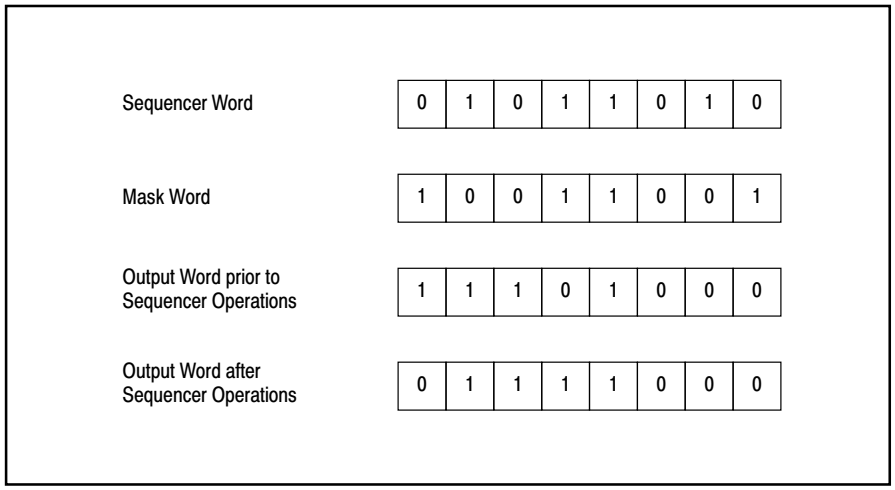
WARNING: When choosing a mask word address, be sure that the next 1, 2 or 3 consecutive word addresses are not already assigned. Other data written into a mask could cause undesirable machine operation. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

The example in Figure 15.4 shows the result of masking the transfer of data bits. Although a mask contains 16 bits, 8 bits are used for the purpose of the illustration.

If a changing mask is desired for different steps of the Sequencer, Get/Put transfer or File-to-File move can be used to change the mask.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.4
Masking Transferred Data



15.1.4 Instruction Overview

- Output instruction
- Key sequence [SEQ] 0
- Order of operation is increment then transfer
- Counter is indexed by the instruction
- Unused bits in output words can be masked out
- requires 5-8 words of user program, depending on the number of output words.

15.1.5 Programming the Sequencer Output Instruction

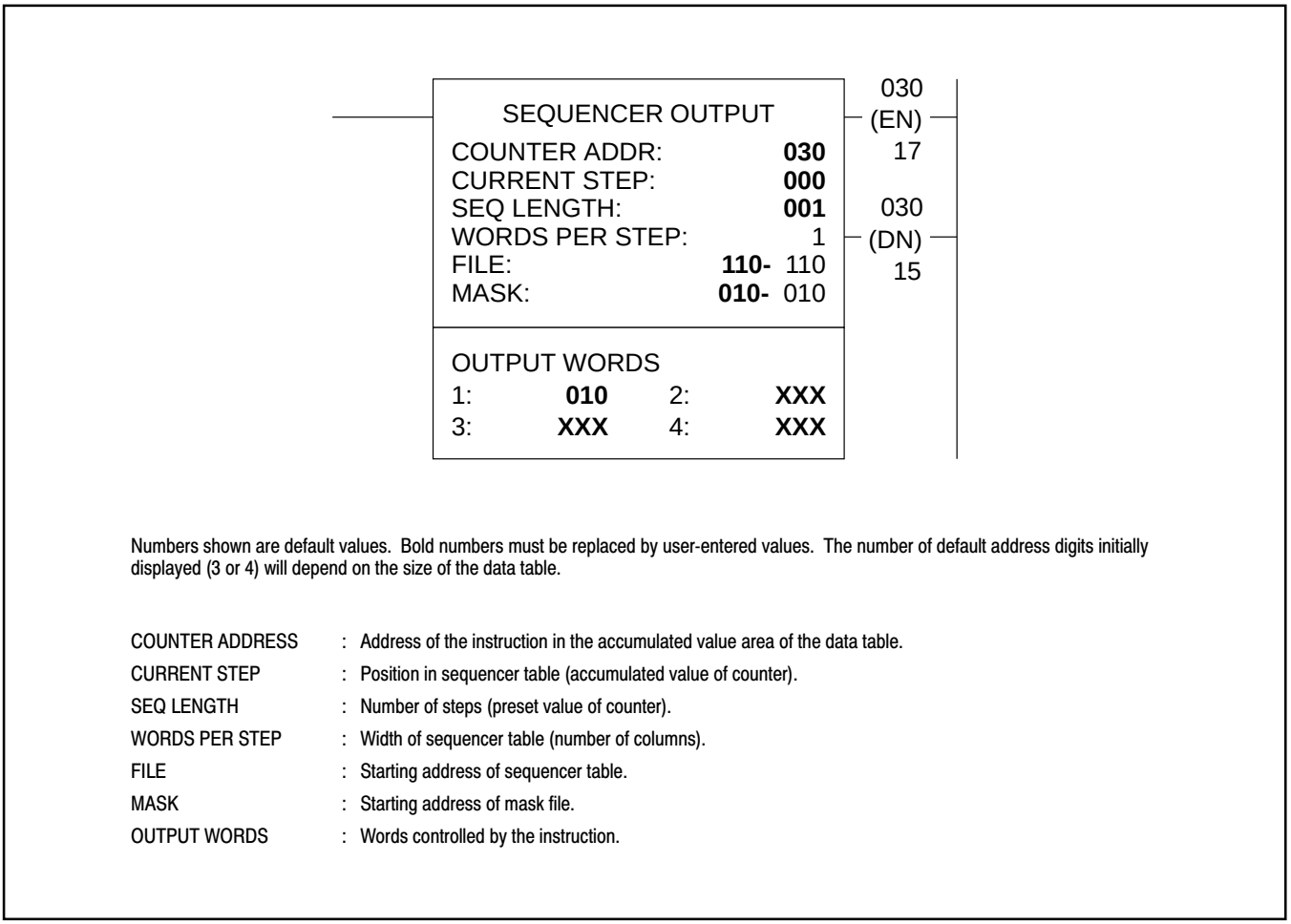


WARNING: The counter address for the Sequencer Output instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Sequencer Output instruction in the ladder diagram mode, press the key sequence [SEQ] 0. A display represented by Figure 15.5 will appear. It shows the format of the instruction with definitions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.5
SEQUENCER OUTPUT Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed (3 or 4) will depend on the size of the data table.

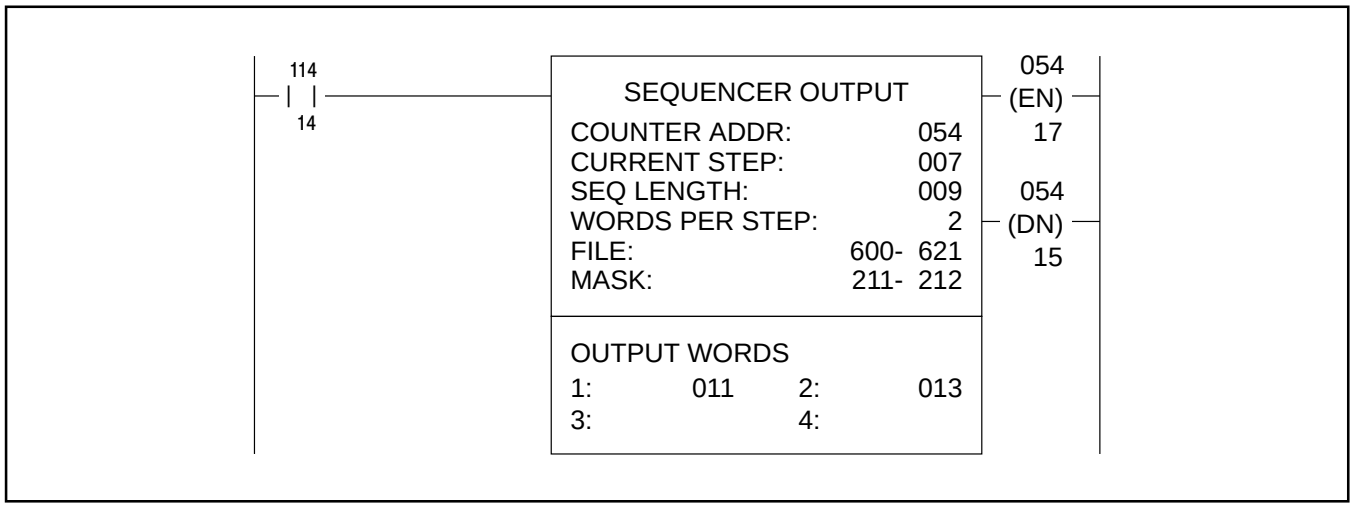
COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
CURRENT STEP	:	Position in sequencer table (accumulated value of counter).
SEQ LENGTH	:	Number of steps (preset value of counter).
WORDS PER STEP	:	Width of sequencer table (number of columns).
FILE	:	Starting address of sequencer table.
MASK	:	Starting address of mask file.
OUTPUT WORDS	:	Words controlled by the instruction.

An example rung containing the Sequencer Output instruction is shown in Figure 15.6. The following parameters have been entered into the instruction:

Counter Address – 054
Current Step – 007
Sequencer Length – 009
Words per Step – 2
File – 600-610
Mask – 211-212
Output Words – 011, 013

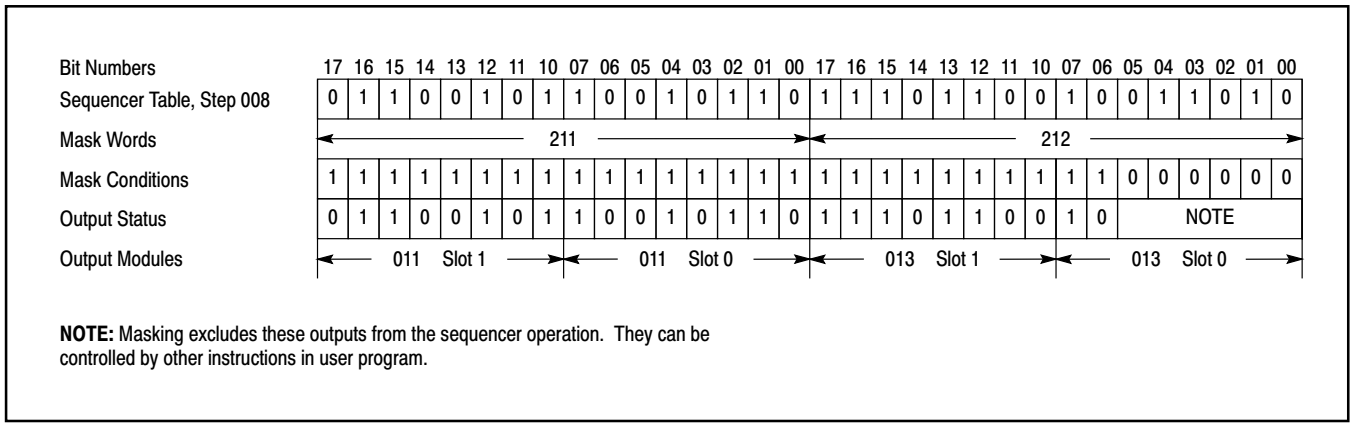
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.6
SEQUENCER OUTPUT Example Rung



When switch 114/14 closes, the Sequencer Output instruction increments to step 008 and controls the 32 outputs corresponding to the specified output words (less those output that are masked). The control of the output terminals will be in accordance with the data stored in step 008 of the sequencer table and mask conditions as shown in Figure 15.7.

Figure 15.7
Control of Sequencer Outputs



NOTE: Masking excludes these outputs from the sequencer operation. They can be controlled by other instructions in user program.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode to monitor, load or edit file data is presented in Chapter 12. It may be necessary to use the data monitor mode to set the mask word bits in order for the instruction to operate. It may also be necessary to load data into the sequencer table.

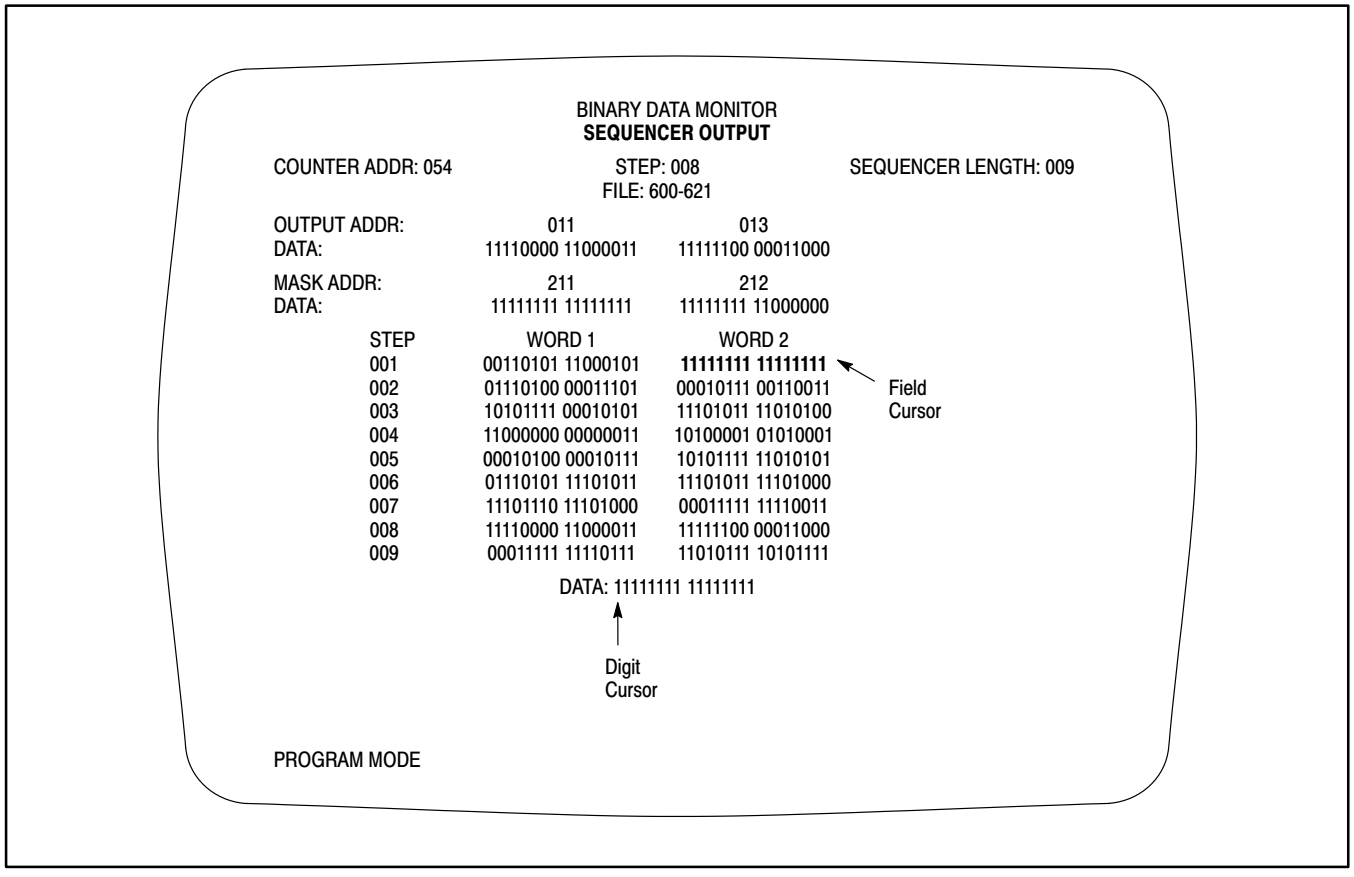
The binary data monitor display for a Sequencer Output instruction with 9 steps and 2 words per step is shown in Figure 15.8. Differences between

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

the data monitor display of a sequencer instruction and a file instruction should be noted. The Sequencer Output instruction will be used as an example. Each column in the sequencer table represents the data for each output word. This data controls the outputs of the corresponding output word at each step in the sequencer operation. The status of the outputs can be observed in the output address data displayed in the header.

In contrast, each column in a File instruction display represents a complete file. File data is manipulated by the instruction. The result of the instruction operation is contained in the result file or in a specified word address of the instruction.

Figure 15.8
Example Binary Data Monitor Display of a SEQUENCER OUTPUT



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.2 Sequencer Input Instruction

The Sequencer Input instruction is a rung-conditioning instruction. It compares machine input and other input data with data stored in the data table for equality. It can be used alone or in a series and/or parallel combination with other rung-condition instructions to determine the status of an output.

15.2.1 Operation of the Sequencer Input Instruction

The Sequencer Input instruction compares the status of up to 64 input conditions with the contents stored in a sequencer table, bit by bit and step by step. When the status of all input bits becomes equal to the status of all bits in the current step of the sequencer table, the instruction becomes logically true.

The Sequencer Input instruction contains a step counter that points to the step in the sequencer file being operated upon. The counter is not controlled by the instruction. Its accumulated value is indexed by logic from elsewhere in the user program.

The Sequence Input instruction can be programmed in the same rung as a Sequencer Output instruction and its step counter can be indexed by the Sequencer Output instruction. The step counter in both instructions is given the same address. When programmed in this manner, the Sequencer Input and Output instructions will track through a controlled sequence of operation. The length of the sequence is equal to the number of steps in the sequencer table.

15.2.2 Masking Input Data

Up to four input word addresses can be specified in the Sequencer Input instruction. Each input word has a corresponding mask word. The mask is applied to the data at the input address when the bit comparisons are made. When the number of input bits used by the instruction is less than 16, 32, 48 or 64 for a 1-, 2-, 3- or 4-word Sequencer instruction, the bits not used by the instruction should be masked. This allows unused bits (input terminals) of the specified input word to be used for purposes other than sequencer operation. See Section 15.1.3 for additional information on masking.

15.2.3 Instruction Overview

- Input instruction
- Key sequence [SEQ] 1
- Compares input data with current step in sequencer table for equality
- Counter must be externally indexed by other instructions in user program
- Unused bits in input words can be masked
- Requires 5-8 words of user programing depending on number of input words used.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.2.4 Programming the Sequencer Input Instruction

WARNING: The counter address for the Sequencer Input instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the instruction(s) which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or the accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable of hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Sequencer Input instruction, press the key sequence [SEQ] 1. A display represented by Figure 15.9 will appear.

Figure 15.9
SEQUENCER INPUT Format

SEQUENCER INPUT

COUNTER ADDR:	**030**
CURRENT STEP:	**000**
SEQ LENGTH:	**001**
WORDS PER STEP:	1
FILE:	**110-** 110
MASK:	**010-** 010

INPUT WORDS

1:	**010**	2:	**XXX**
3:	**XXX**	4:	**XXX**

Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

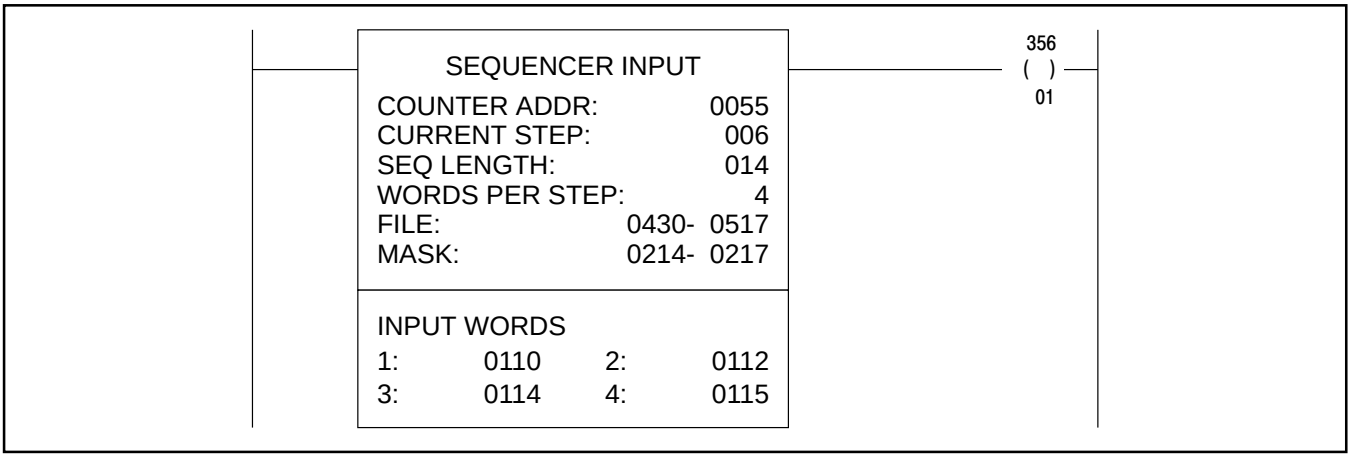
COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
CURRENT STEP	:	Position in sequencer table (accumulated value of counter).
SEQ LENGTH	:	Number of steps (preset value of counter).
WORDS PER STEP	:	Width of sequencer table (number of columns).
FILE	:	Starting address of sequencer table.
MASK	:	Starting address of mask file.
INPUT WORDS	:	Words monitored by the instruction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

An example rung containing the Sequence Input instruction is shown in Figure 15.10. The following parameters have been entered into the instruction:

Counter Address – 0055
Current Step – 006
Sequencer Length – 014
Words per Step – 4
File – 0430-0445
Mask – 0214-0217
Input Words – 0110, 0112, 0114, 0115

Figure 15.10
SEQUENCER INPUT Example Rung



When the status of all 64 inputs corresponding to the specified input words (less those inputs that are masked) is equal to the status of all 64 bits of data in step 006 of the sequencer table, the logic of the instruction is true. The storage bit 356/01 is then turned on.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode to monitor, load or edit file data is presented in Chapter 12. It may be necessary to use the data monitor mode to set the mask word bits in order for the instruction to operate. It may also be necessary to load data into the sequencer table. The data monitor display for the Sequencer Input instruction is similar to that of the Sequencer Output instructions shown in Figure 15.8.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.3 Sequencer Load Instruction

The Sequencer Load instruction is an output instruction. It is used to load data into table locations such as files or sequencer tables.

15.3.1 Operation of the Sequencer Load Instruction

The Sequencer Load instruction receives data from up to 4 independent data table word address(es) specified in the instruction. The load word address(es) can represent input, output and/or storage words. The load word addresses need not be consecutive.

The instruction can load words into a sequencer table or elsewhere in the data table, one step at a time, at the location determined by the step counter. The step counter is controlled by the instruction and its increments prior to loading the step.

The Sequencer Load instruction is initiated by a false-to-true transition of the rung condition. Data from the load words will be loaded into the sequencer table during the scan that the instruction initiated. If the rung remains true for subsequent scans, the instruction will not repeat. The instruction will advance to the next step only on the next false-to-true transition of the rung condition.

When the last step of the sequencer table is loaded (AC = PR), the done bit is set. The next false-to-true transition of the rung condition will load the data, beginning at step 1. The counter should be set to zero for start-up purposes if it is desirable to start at step 1 when the instruction is enabled for the first time.

The instruction does not utilize mask words. If the Sequencer Load instruction is to be used with other sequencer instructions, masking will be performed by the Sequencer Input or Output instruction.

The Sequencer Load instruction can be used for machine diagnostics to load a Sequencer Input or output table or a data table file with data representing the desired sequence of machine operation. If/when the actual sequence of operation becomes mismatched with the desired sequence of operation as detected by the Sequencer Input instructions, a fault signal can be enabled through User Program.

The Sequencer Load instruction can also be used to teach the processor the desired sequential operation. The I/O conditions representing the desired operation can be loaded into the sequencer input tables as the machine is manually stepped through the control cycle.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

15.3.2 Instruction Overview

- Output Instruction
- Key sequence [SEQ] 2
- Order of operation is increment then load
- Counter is indexed by the instruction
- Instruction does not utilize a mask
- Requires 4–7 words of user program depending on the number of load words used.

15.3.3 Programming the Sequencer Load Instruction

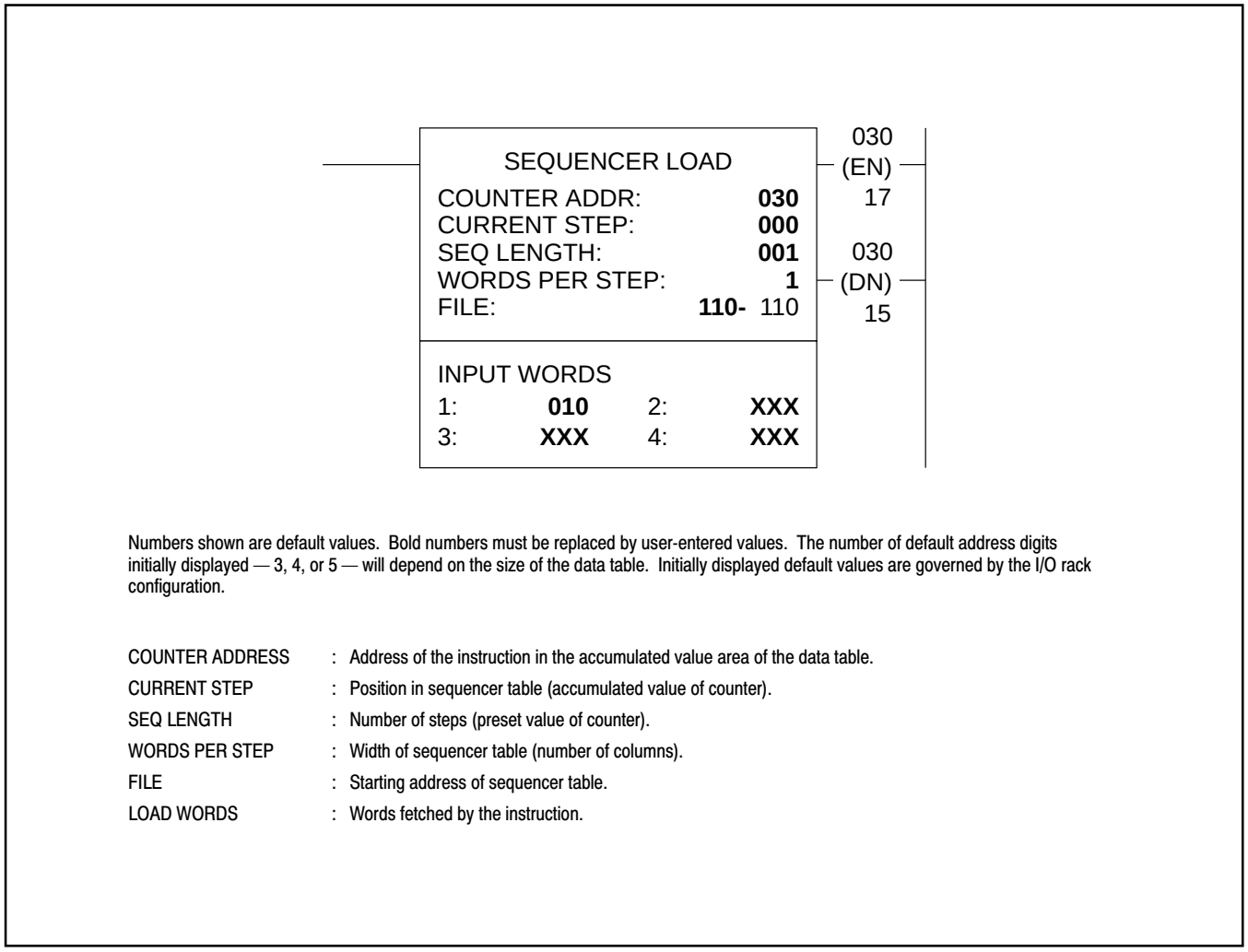


WARNING: The counter address for the Sequencer Load instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Sequencer Load instruction in the ladder diagram mode, press the key sequence [SEQ] 2. A display represented by Figure 15.11 will appear. It shows the format of the instruction with definitions.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.11
SEQUENCER LOAD Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
CURRENT STEP	:	Position in sequencer table (accumulated value of counter).
SEQ LENGTH	:	Number of steps (preset value of counter).
WORDS PER STEP	:	Width of sequencer table (number of columns).
FILE	:	Starting address of sequencer table.
LOAD WORDS	:	Words fetched by the instruction.

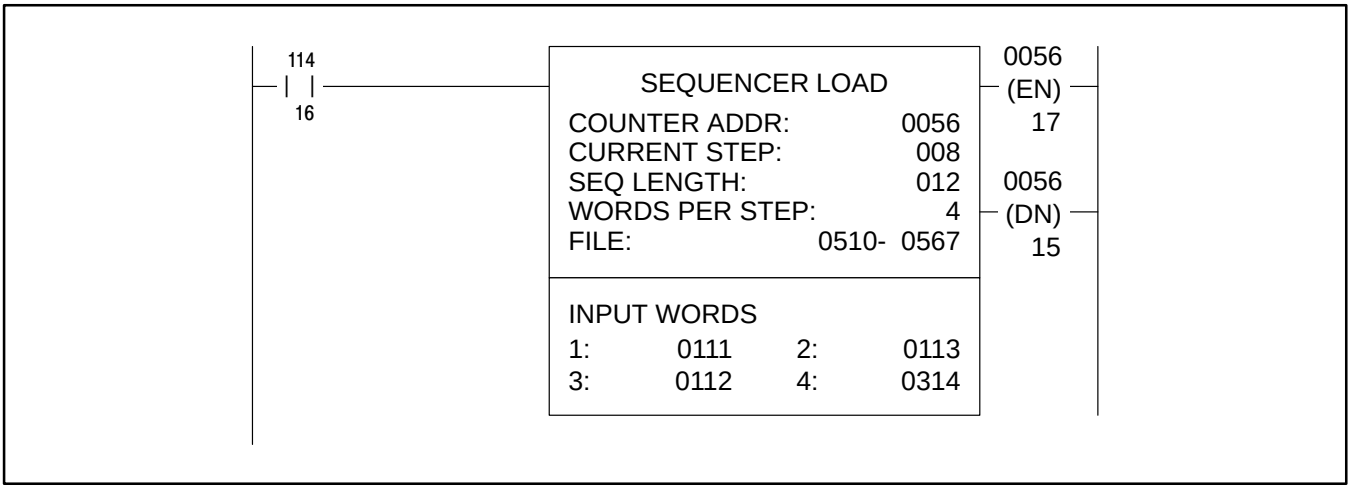
An example rung containing the Sequencer Load instruction is shown in Figure 15.12. The following parameters have been entered into the instruction:

Counter Address – 0056
Current Step – 008
Sequencer Length – 012
Words Per Step – 4
File – 0510-0523
Load Words – 0111, 0113, 0012, 0314

When switch 114/16 closes, the Sequencer Load instruction increments to step 009. The data from Load Words 0111, 0113, 0012 and 0314 are loaded into step 009 of the sequencer table in one scan. Thereafter, no data can be loaded until switch 114/16 opens, then closes again.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 15.12
SEQUENCER LOAD Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 16

File Logic Instructions

16.0 General

This section assumes the reader has Chapter 12, Data Transfer File Instructions, and is familiar with the concepts and terms introduced in that section.

16.1 File-to-File Logic Instructions

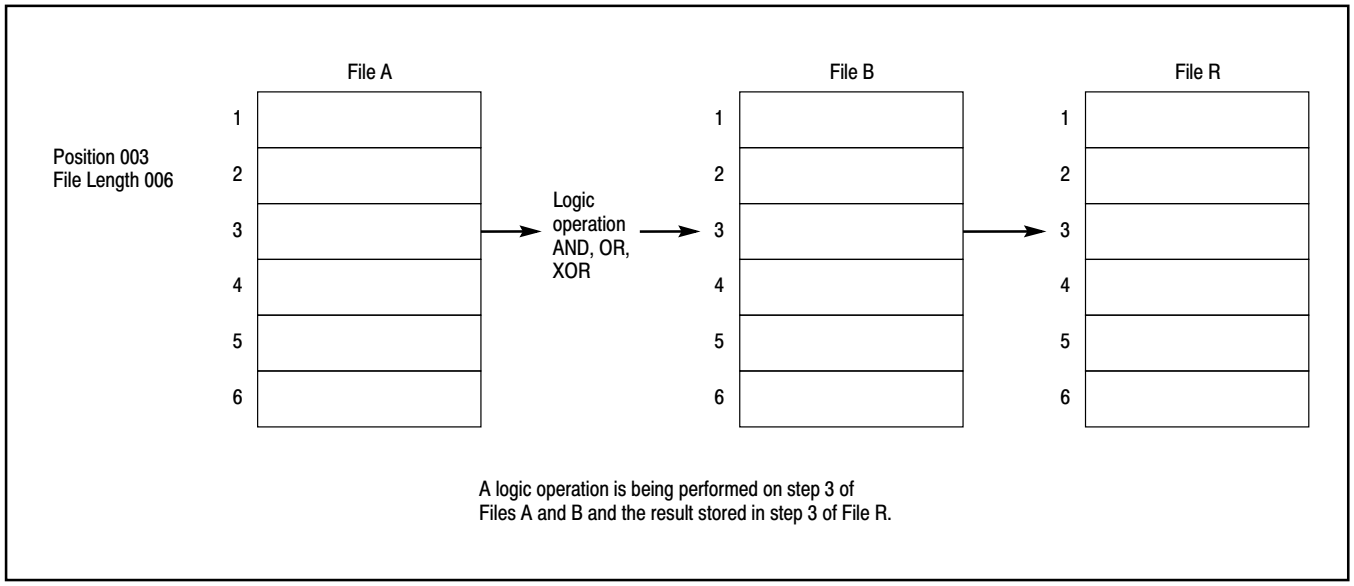
The File-to-File logic instructions are:

- File-to-File AND
- File-to-File OR
- File-to-File EXCLUSIVE OR (XOR)
- File-to-File Complement

The first three instructions are output instructions that perform a specific logic operation on the contents of two data Files A and B and place the result of the logic operation in a third File R (Figure 16.1).

The File Complement instruction takes the logical complement of each bit in File A and stores it in the corresponding bit locations in File R.

Figure 16.1
FILE-TO-FILE Logic Operations



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

16.1.1 File-to-File AND

This output instruction operates on the contents of two data files A and B and places the result of the operation AND in a third File R.

The logic operation AND compares each bit in File A to the corresponding bit in File B. If the compared bits are both 1, a 1 is stored in the corresponding bit location in File R. If the bits are other than both 1, a 0 is stored in the corresponding bit in File R (Table 16.A).

Table 16.A
Truth Table for Logical AND

Bit In File A	Bit In File B	Bit In File R
1	1	1
1	0	0
0	1	0
0	0	0

Instruction Overview:

- Output Instruction
- Key sequence [FILE] 14
- Requires 6 words of user program
- Can operate in incremental, distributed complete or complete mode
- Counter is internally indexed by the instruction

Programming File-to-File AND Instruction

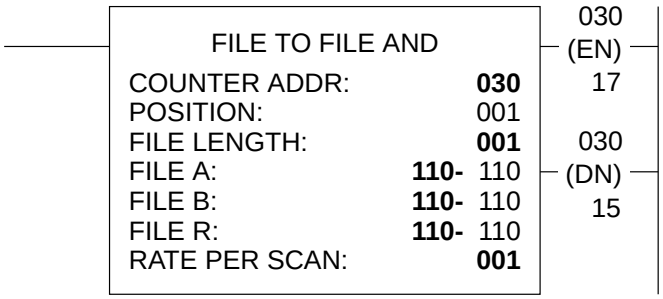


WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-File AND instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File-to-File AND instruction, press keys [FILE] 14. A display represented by Figure 16.2 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 16.2
FILE-TO-FILE AND Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE A	:	Starting address of source file A.
FILE B	:	Starting address of source file B.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file R.
RATE PER SCAN	:	Number of data words operated upon per scan.

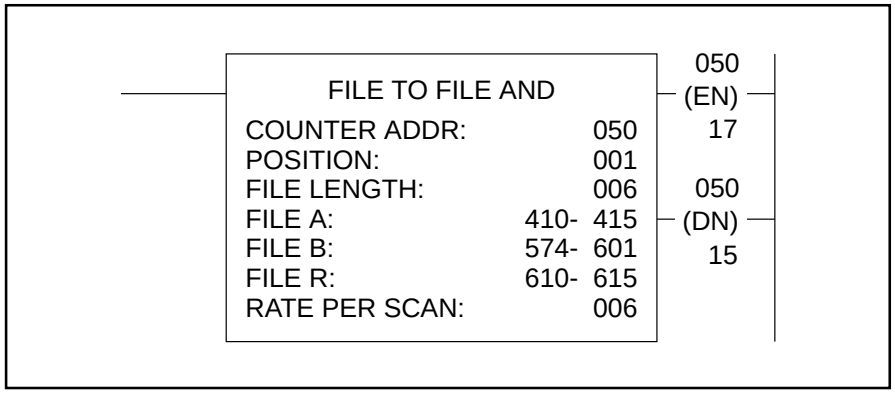
Figure 16.3 shows the format of Figure 16.2 after the user enters the conditions listed below:

COUNTER ADDRESS – 050
POSITION – 003 (internally set by instruction)
FILE LENGTH – each file has 6 steps
FILE A – starts at word 410, ends at word 415
FILE B – starts at word 574, ends at word 601
FILE R – starts at word 610, ends at word 615
RATE PER SCAN – 6 steps of the files are operated upon each scan. This is the complete mode.

The procedure for using the Data Monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in section 12.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 16.3
FILE-TO-FILE AND Example Rung



16.1.2 File-to-File OR

This output instruction operates on the contents of data Files A and B and places the result of the operation OR in File R (Figure 16.1).

The logic operation OR compares each bit in File A to the corresponding bit in File B. If either of the bits is a 1, a 1 is stored in the corresponding bit location in File R. If neither of the compared bits is a 1, a 0 is stored in File R (Table 16.B).

Table 16.B
Truth Table for Logical OR

Bit In File A	Bit In File B	Bit In File R
1	1	1
1	0	1
0	1	1
0	0	0

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence [FILE] 16
- Requires 6 words of user program
- Can operate in incremental, distributed complete or complete mode
- Counter is internally indexed by the instruction

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Programming of File-to-File OR Instruction

WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-File OR instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File-to-File OR instruction, press keys [FILE] 16. The format, and the technique for insertion of numbers, will be identical to that for the File-to-File AND (Figure 16.2, Section 16.1.1) except that logical OR operation will replace logical AND operation.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

16.1.3 File-to-File XOR

This output instruction operates on the contents of two data Files A and B and places the results of the logic operation XOR (exclusive OR) in a third File R.

The logic operation XOR compares each bit in file A to the corresponding bit in File B. If the bits are both 1 or both 0, a 0 is stored in the corresponding bit location of File R. For other conditions, a 1 is stored in File R (Table 16.C).

Table 16.C
Truth Table for Logical XOR

Bit In File A	Bit In File B	Bit In File R
1	1	0
1	0	1
0	1	1
0	0	0

The XOR operation can be used for diagnostic programming. With the XOR function, two files, one containing actual I/O states (File A) and one containing desired I/O states (File B) at a particular point in time, can be compared. The result, File R, will contain discrepancies between File A and File B. The discrepancies are errors in machine operation. Additional programming (Chapter 17, Diagnostic Instructions) can alert the operator to the malfunction.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key Sequence [FILE] 18
- Requires six words of user program
- Can operate in incremental, distributed complete or complete mode
- Counter is internally indexed by the instruction

Programming File-to-File XOR Instruction



WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-File XOR instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File-to-File XOR instruction, press keys [FILE] 18. The format, and the technique for insertion of numbers, will be identical to that of the File-to-File AND (Figure 16.2) except that the logic operation XOR replaces AND.

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry and/or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

16.1.4 File Complement

This instruction operates on the contents of one data File A and places the result in the data File R. The complement of each bit of File A is stored in the corresponding bit location of File R. Two bits are complementary if one is 0 and the other is 1.

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key sequence [FILE] 13
- requires 5 words of user program
- can operate in incremental, distributed complete or complete mode
- Counter is internally indexed by the instruction

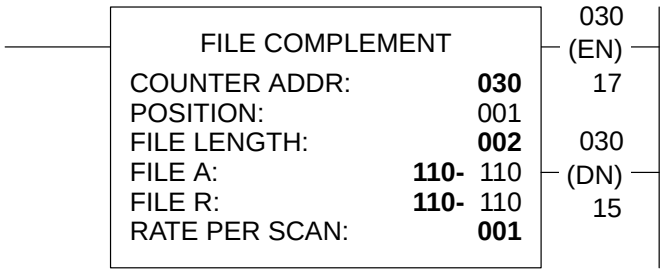
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Programming File Complement Instruction

WARNING: The counter address for the File-to-File Complement instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter accumulated or preset values. Inadvertent changes to these values could in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File Complement instruction, press [FILE] 13. A display represented by Figure 16.4 will appear.

Figure 16.4
FILE COMPLEMENT Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE A	:	Starting address of source file A.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file R.
RATE PER SCAN	:	Number of data words operated upon per scan.

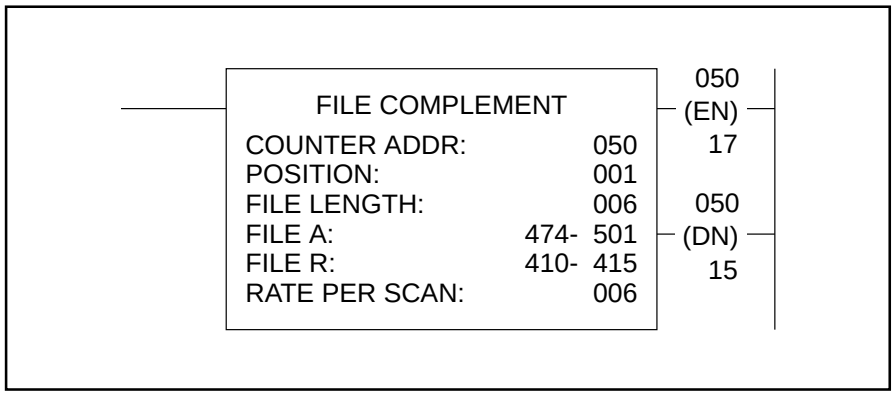
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 16.5 shows the format of Figure 16.4 after values for the following condition have been entered:

COUNTER ADDR – word 050
POSITION – 003
FILE LENGTH – 006
FILE A – 474-501
FILE R – 410-415
RATE PER SCAN – 006. This is the complete mode.

The procedure using the data monitor mode for data entry and/or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Figure 16.5
FILE COMPLEMENT Example Rung



16.2 Word-to-File Logic Instructions

The Word-to-File logic instructions are:

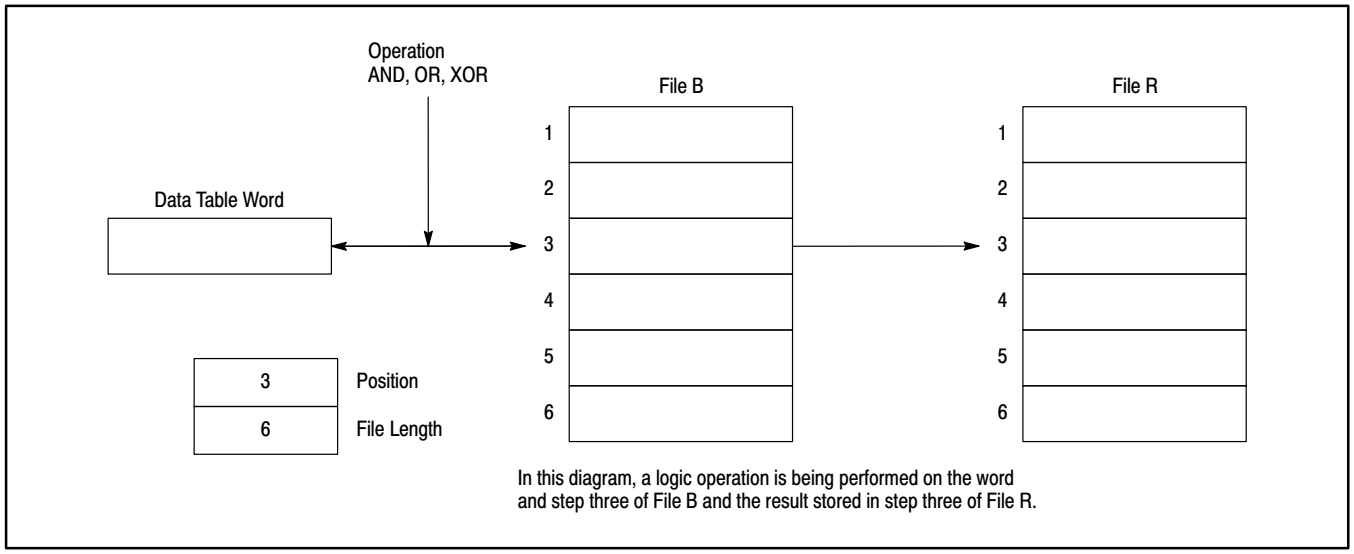
- Word-to-File AND
- Word-to-File OR
- Word-to-File EXCLUSIVE OR (XOR)

These three instructions are output instructions which, during a true rung decision, perform a logical operation on a data table word (Figure 16.6) and a word from File B. It places the result of the operation into the corresponding word of File R. A counter accumulated value points to the particular file word to be operated upon.

NOTE: This section assumes the reader has read Chapter 12, Data Transfer File Instructions, and is familiar with the concepts introduced in that chapter.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 16.6
WORD-TO-FILE LOGIC Operations



16.2.1 Word-to-File AND

This instruction performs an AND operation on the contents of a specified word in the data table and a word from File B. It places the result of the operation into the corresponding word of File R (Figure 16.6).

The logic operation AND compares each bit in the word to the corresponding bit in the File B word. If the compared bits are both 1, a 1 is stored in the corresponding bit and word in File R. If the bits are both other than 1, a 0 is stored in the corresponding bit in File R (Table 16.D).

Table 16.D
Truth Table for Logical WORD-TO-FILE AND

	Corresponding Bit In	
Bit In Word	**File B**	**File R**
1	1	1
1	0	0
0	1	0
0	0	0

Instruction Overview:

- Key sequence: [FILE] 15
- Output instruction
- Requires 5 words of user program

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

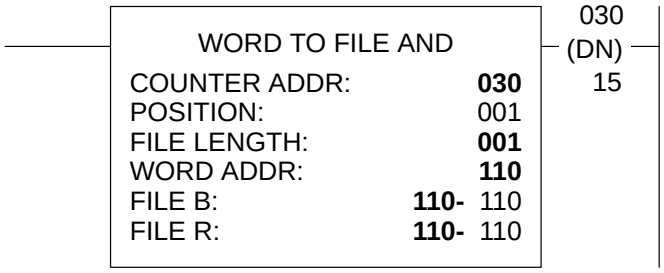
- Counter is not modified by instruction. Needs to be externally indexed by user program.

Programming Word-to-File AND Instruction

WARNING: The counter address for the Word-to-File AND instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the instruction(s) which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or the accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Word-to-File AND, press keys [FILE] 15. A display represented by Figure 16.7 will appear.

Figure 16.7
WORD-TO-FILE AND Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
WORD ADDRESS	:	Address of source word outside the file.
FILE B	:	Starting address of source file B.
FILE R	:	Starting address of destination file R.

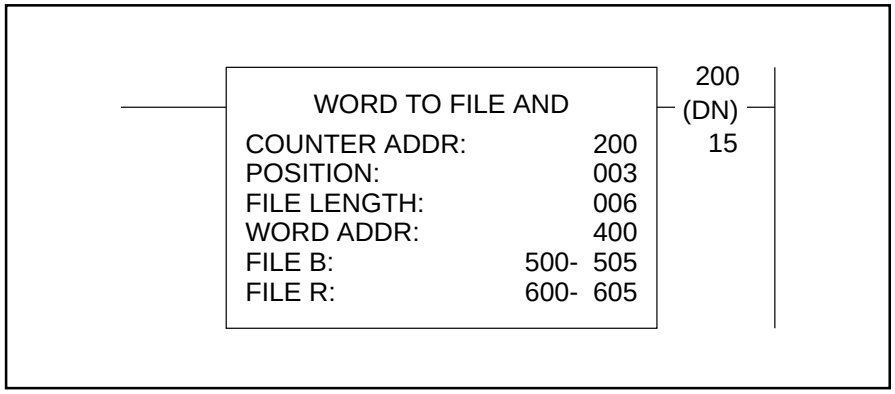
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 16.8 shows the format of Figure 16.7 after data has been entered for the following conditions:

COUNTER ADDR – Word 200
POSITION (set by program) – 003
FILE LENGTH – Each file has 6 steps
WORD ADDR – The Data Table word being compared with the words in File B is located at address 400
FILE B – Starts at word 500, ends at word 505
FILE R – Starts at word 600, ends at word 605

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Figure 16.8
WORD-TO-FILE AND Example Rung



16.2.2 Word-to-File OR

This instruction performs an OR operation on the contents of a specified word in the data table and a word from File B. It places the result of the operation in the corresponding word of File R (Figure 16.6).

The logic operation OR compares each bit in the word to the corresponding bit in the File B word at the location of the contents. If either bit is 1, a 1 is stored in the corresponding bit in the File R word. If neither of the compared bits is 1, a 0 is stored in File R (Table 16.E).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table 16.E
Truth Table for Logical WORD-TO-FILE OR

Bit In Word	Corresponding Bit In	
	File B	File R
1	1	1
1	0	1
0	1	1
0	0	0

Instruction Overview:

- Key sequence: [FILE] 17
- Output instructions
- Requires 5 words of user program
- Counter is not modified by instruction. Needs to be externally indexed by user program.

Programming Word-to-File OR Instruction



WARNING: The counter address for the Word-to-File OR instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the corresponding instructions which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or the accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Word-to-File OR, press keys [FILE] 17. The format, and the technique for insertion of numbers, will be identical to that for Word-to-File AND (Figures 16.7 and 16.8) except that OR will replace AND.

The procedure for the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

16.2.3 Word-to-File XOR

This instruction performs an XOR operation on the contents of a specified word in the data table and a word from File B (Figure 12.1). It places the result of the XOR operation into the corresponding word of File R.

The logic operation XOR compares each bit in word pointed to by the counter accumulated value to the corresponding bit in the File B word

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

(Figure 16.6). If the bits are both 1 or 0, a 0 is stored in the corresponding bit of File R. For other conditions, a 1 is stored in File R (Table 16.F).

Table 16.F
Truth Table for Logical WORD-TO-FILE XOR

	Corresponding Bit In	
Bit In Word	**File B**	**File R**
1	1	0
1	0	1
0	1	1
0	0	0

Instruction Overview:

- Key sequence: [FILE] 19
- Output instruction
- Requires 5 words of user program
- Counter is not modified by instruction. Needs to be externally indexed by user program.

Programming Word-to-File XOR Instruction



WARNING: The counter address for the Word-to-File XOR instruction should be reserved for the instruction and the corresponding instructions which manipulate the accumulated value. Do not inadvertently manipulate the preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent changes to these values could result in unpredictable or hazardous machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a Word-to-File XOR, press keys [FILE] 19. The format and technique for number insertion will be identical to that of the Word-to-File AND (Figure 16.6, Section 16.2.1) except that XOR replaces AND.

The procedure for using the data mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 17

File Search and File Diagnostic Instructions

17.0 General

The File Search instruction locates all words in a file whose data is identical to a specific input word's data.

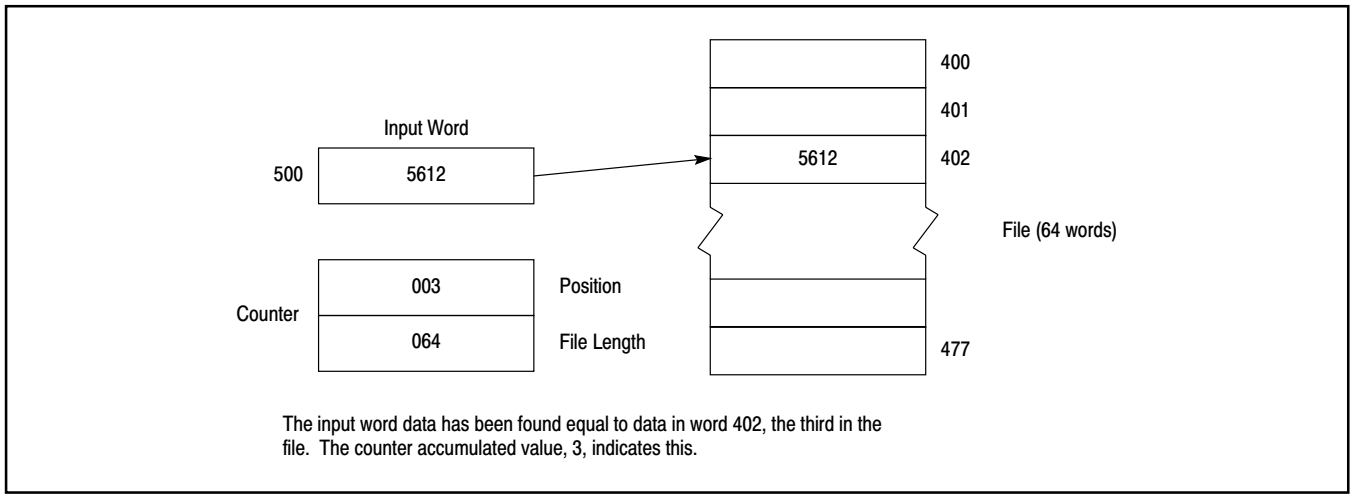
The File Diagnostic instruction can be used to locate discrepancies between actual and desired states of I/O's by searching for 1 in the result file of an XOR operation (Section 16.1.3).

NOTE: This section assumes the reader has read Chapter 12, Data Transfer File Instructions, and is familiar with the concepts introduced in that chapter.

17.1 File Search

This output instruction consists of an input word, a data file to be searched, and a counter (Figure 17.1). Upon false-true transition of rung decision, the input word data is compared to the file data. When a match is found, the position counter accumulated value indicates that word of the file. Upon the next false-to-true transition, the instruction continues searching the rest of the file. If another equality is found, the counter accumulated value indicates current match word.

Figure 17.1
FILE SEARCH Operation



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The process continues until the end of the file is reached (position = file length), at which time the done bit is set. The next false-true transition starts the search again at the beginning of the file. If the last word of the file contains a match, the position will equal file length, but the done bit will not be set. On the next false-true transition, the counter will reset to 000 and the done bit is set. The done bit is reset when the rung goes false. The search will begin again only after an additional false-true transition.

Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key Sequence: [FILE] 21
- Counter is manipulated by instruction
- Requires 4 user program words

Programming File Search Instruction

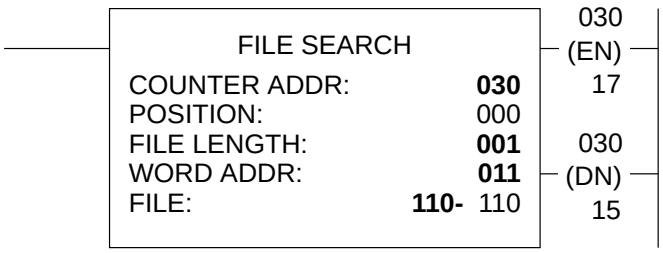


WARNING: The counter address specified for the File Search instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent change to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File Search instruction, press keys [FILE] 21. A display represented by Figure 17.2 will appear.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 17.2
FILE SEARCH Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
POSITION	:	Current word being operated upon (accumulated value of counter).
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
WORD ADDRESS	:	Address of input word to be matched.
FILE	:	Starting address of data file to be searched.

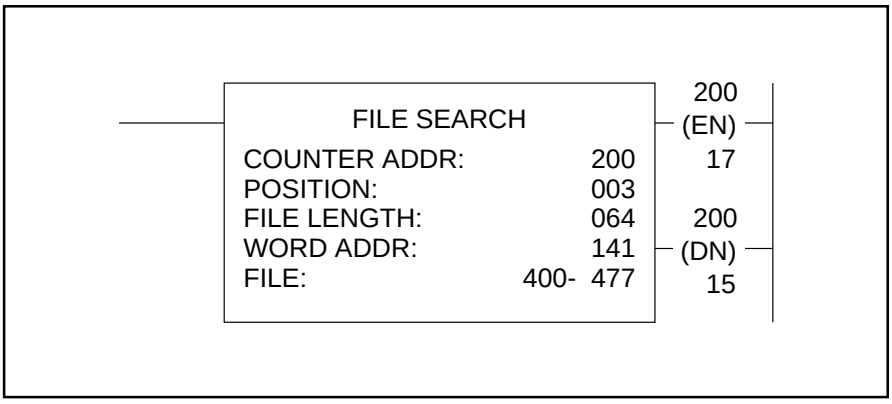
Figure 17.3 shows the format of Figure 17.2 after the conditions listed below have been entered:

COUNTER ADD – 200
FILE LENGTH – 64
WORD ADDR – 141
FILE – Starts at word 400, ends at word 477

The procedure for using the data monitor mode for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 17.3
FILE SEARCH Example Rung



17.2 File Diagnostics

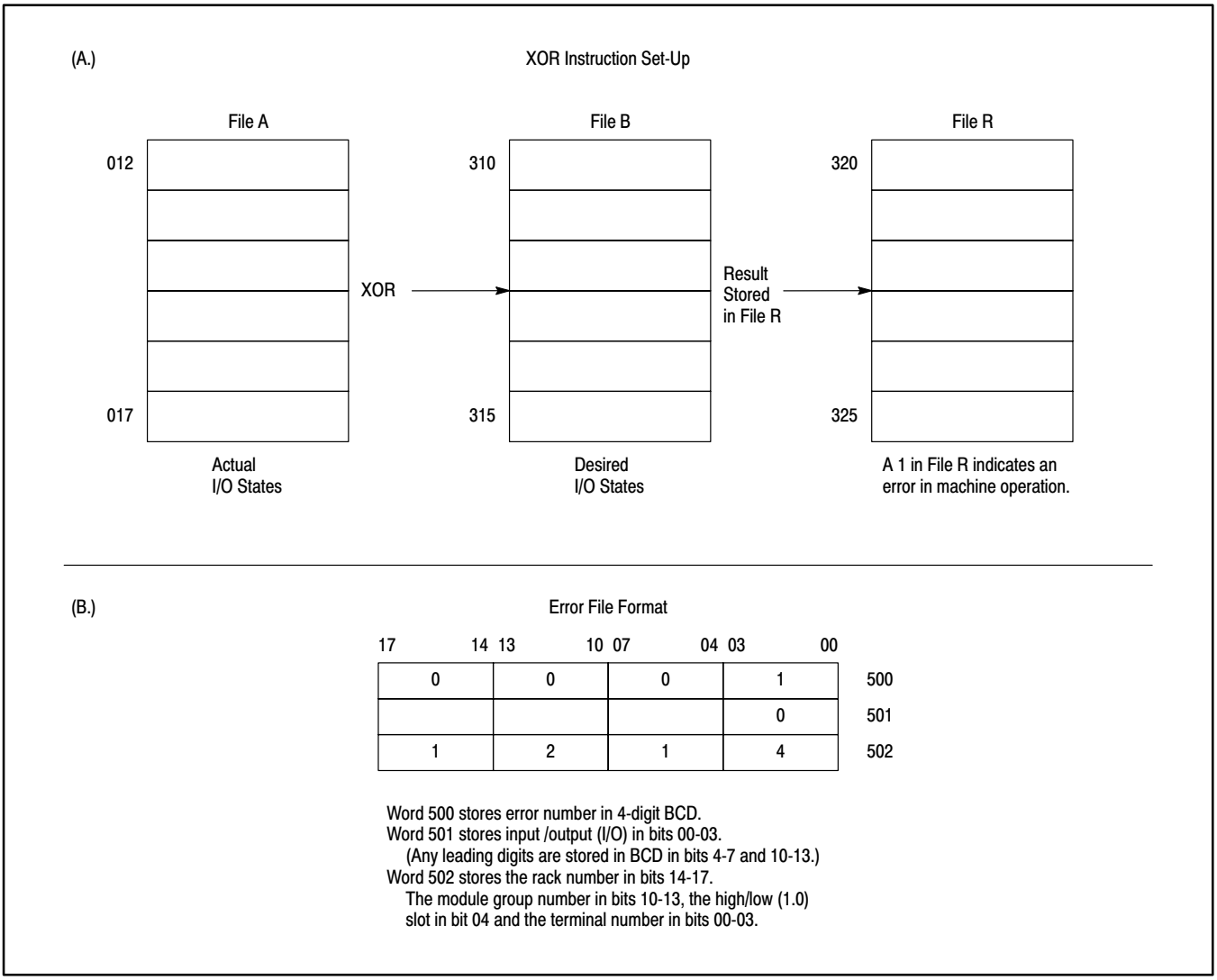
The File Diagnostic instruction can be used for programmed machine diagnostic error detection in conjunction with File-to-File XOR or Word-to-File XOR instructions. First, an XOR operation is performed (Figure 17.4a) between File A, containing actual I/O states, and File B, containing desired I/O states at a particular point in time. Any bits in File A that differ in state from those in File B will be recorded in the corresponding bits in File R as 1. A File Diagnostic instruction can then be performed on File R.

The File Diagnostic instruction, on a false-true transition of the rung, searches the specified file (File R from the XOR instruction) for 1. When a 1 is found, the Diagnostic instruction cross-references the bit address in the file to the corresponding bit address in the base file (File A from the XOR instruction). Refer to Figure 17.4.

The error number and the cross-referenced bit address will be stored in BCD in the error file as shown in Figure 17.4b. On each successive false-true transition, the instruction will continue searching the file from the point it left off until it finds the next 1. These new error numbers and cross-referenced bit addresses will be stored in the error file in place of the old data. When the entire file has been searched, the done bit is set. On the next false-true transition, the done bit is reset and the instruction begins searching for 1 at the beginning of the file.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure 17.4
FILE DIAGNOSTIC



Instruction Overview:

- Output instruction
- Key Sequence: [FILE] 20
- Requires 5 words of user program
- Counter is manipulated by instruction
- Usually used in conjunction with an XOR instruction

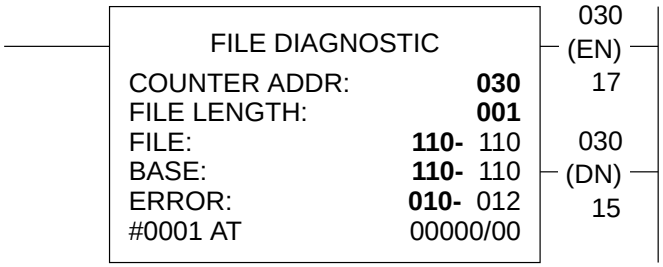
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Programming File Diagnostic Instruction

WARNING: The counter address specified for the File Diagnostic instruction should be reserved for that instruction. Do not manipulate the counter preset or accumulated values. Inadvertent change to these values could result in hazardous or unpredictable machine operation or a run-time error. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

To program a File Diagnostic instruction, press [FILE] 20. A display represented by Figure 17.5 will appear.

Figure 17.5
FILE DIAGNOSTIC Format



Numbers shown are default values. Bold numbers must be replaced by user-entered values. The number of default address digits initially displayed — 3, 4, or 5 — will depend on the size of the data table. Initially displayed default values are governed by the I/O rack configuration.

COUNTER ADDRESS	:	Address of the instruction in the accumulated value area of the data table.
FILE LENGTH	:	Number of words in file (preset value of the counter).
FILE	:	Starting address of file containing discrepancies between actual and desired I/O states (File R of XOR instruction).
BASE	:	Starting address of file containing actual I/O (File A of XOR instruction).
ERROR	:	The first address of three consecutive words that store the error number and I/O bit address of the malfunctioning I/O device.
#	:	Displayed error number and corresponding I/O bit address.

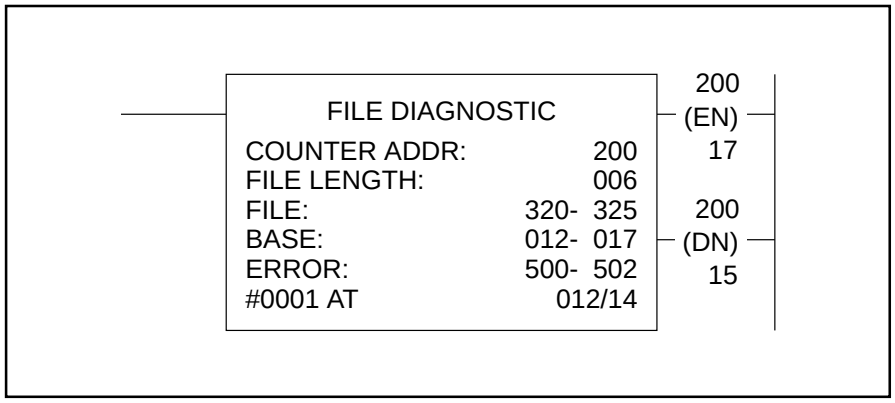
Figure 17.6 shows the format of Figure 17.5 after the following conditions are entered. These values are based on the use of the XOR instruction depicted in Figure 17.4a.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

COUNTER ADDR – 200
FILE LENGTH – 006
FILE – First word is 320, last word is 325
BASE – First word is 012, last word is 017
ERROR – Error number and location will be stored in words 500 to 502 inclusive

The procedure for using the data monitor for data entry or monitor is presented in Chapter 12.

Figure 17.6
FILE DIAGNOSTIC Example Rung



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 18

Troubleshooting Aids

18.0 General

The following troubleshooting aids are useful during starting-up and when troubleshooting a system:

- Bit manipulation and monitor functions
- Force on and force off functions
- Forced addressed display
- Temporary end instruction
- ERR message display

The troubleshooting aids are summarized in Table 18.A.

Table 18.A
Troubleshooting Aids

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Bit Monitor	Any	[SEARCH] [5] [3] [Address]	Displays the ON/OFF status of all 16 bits at specified word address and corresponding force conditions if they exist.
		[↑] or [↓]	Displays the status of 16 new bits at the next lowest or highest word address.
		[CANCEL COMMAND]	To terminate.
Bit Manipulation	Program, Test, or Run/Program	[SEARCH] [5] [3]	Displays the ON/OFF status of all 16 bits at specified word address and corresponding force conditions if they exist.
		[→] or [←]	Moves cursor to the bit to be changed.
		[1] or [0]	Enter a "1" to set bit ON or a "0" to set bit OFF.
		See FORCING below	Forcing or removing forces from input bits or output devices.
		[CANCEL COMMAND]	To terminate.
FORCE ON	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE ON] [INSERT]	Position the cursor on the image table bit or bit instruction to be forced ON and press the key sequence. The input bit or output will be forced ON.[1]
Removing a FORCE ON	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE ON] [REMOVE]	Position the cursor on the Image Table bit or bit instruction whose force ON is to be removed and press the key sequence.
Removing all FORCE ON	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE ON] [CLEAR MEMORY]	Position cursor anywhere in program and press key sequence.
FORCE OFF	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE OFF] [INSERT]	Position the cursor on the image table bit or bit instruction to be forced OFF and press the key sequence. The input bit or output device will be forced OFF.

[1] When in TEST mode, the Processor will hold outputs OFF regardless of attempts to force them ON.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Function	Mode	Key Sequence	Description
Removing a FORCE OFF	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE OFF] [REMOVE]	Position the cursor on the Image Table bit or bit instruction whose force OFF is to be removed and press the key sequence.
Removing all FORCE OFF	Test or Run/Program	[FORCE OFF] [CLEAR MEMORY]	Position the cursor anywhere in program and press key sequence.
Forced Address Display	Any	[SEARCH] [FORCE ON] or [SEARCH] [FORCE OFF] [CANCEL COMMAND]	Displays a list of the bit addresses that are forced ON and forced OFF. The [SHIFT] [↓] and [SHIFT] [↑] keys can be used to display additional forces. To terminate.
Inserting a TEMPORARY END Statement	Program	[INSERT] [←] [T. END] or [INSERT] [T. END]	Positions the cursor on the instruction that will follow the TEMPORARY END instruction. The remaining rungs, although displayed and accessible, are not scanned. Position the cursor on the instruction that will precede the TEMPORARY END instruction. The remaining rungs, although displayed and accessible, are not scanned.
Removing a TEMPORARY END Instruction	Program	[REMOVE] [T. END]	Position cursor on TEMPORARY END instruction and press key sequence.

18.1 Bit Manipulation and Monitor

Bit monitor allows the status of all 16 bits of any data table word to be displayed. Bit manipulation allows the status of the displayed bits to be selectively changed or forced, and is useful in setting initial conditions in the data of word instructions.

18.1.1 Bit Manipulation

Bit manipulation can function when the processor is in program mode. When in test, or run/program, the user program may override the bit status in the next scan.

The [←] and [→] keys can be used to cursor over to any bit. With the cursor on the desired bit, its status can be changed by pressing the [1] or [0] key. Bit manipulation also allows the forcing of image table bits as described in Section 18.2 below.

To terminate this function, press [CANCEL COMMAND].



WARNING: If it is necessary to change the status of any data table bit, be sure that the consequences of the change are thoroughly understood beforehand. If not, unpredictable and/or hazardous machine operation could occur directly or indirectly as a result of changing the bit status. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

18.1.2 Bit Monitor

Bit monitor can function when the processor is in any mode. By pressing the key sequence [SEARCH] 53 [Key Sequence of Word Address], the status of all 16 bits of the desired word will be displayed. While the cursor is in the word address field, the [1] and [0] keys can be used to change address digits.

The status of the 16 bits in the next highest or next lowest word address also can be displayed by pressing the [↑] or [↓] keys, respectively. Bit monitor also can display the status of force conditions, if any. See Section 18.2 below.

18.2 Force On and Force Off Functions

The force functions are used to selectively force an input bit or output device on or off. The processor must be in the test or run/program mode.

NOTE: When in test mode, the processor will hold outputs off regardless of attempts to force them on even though the output bit instructions are intensified.

The force functions determine the on/off status of input bits and output devices by overriding the I/O scan. An input bit can be forced on or off regardless of the actual state of the corresponding input device. However, forcing an output terminal will cause the corresponding output device to be on or off regardless of the rung logic or the status of the output image table bit.

Forcing functions can be applied in either of two ways:

- Bit manipulation/monitor display of an I/O word
- Ladder diagram display of user program.

By pressing the key sequence [SEARCH] 53 [Key Sequence of Address], the status of all 16 bits of the desired word can be displayed. The [→] and [←] keys can be used to cursor over to the desired bit. Or, in the ladder diagram display, forcing can be applied by placing the cursor on an examine or energize instruction representing a bit in the I/O image table. In either case, any one of the following key sequences can be used for placing or removing a forced condition:

- [FORCE ON] [INSERT]
- [FORCE OFF] [INSERT]
- [FORCE ON] [REMOVE]
- [FORCE OFF] [REMOVE]

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

All force on or all force off functions can be removed at once in ladder diagram display by breaking communications between the T3 industrial terminal and the processor or by pressing either of the following sequences:

- [FORCE ON] [CLEAR MEMORY]
- [FORCE OFF] [CLEAR MEMORY]

The on or off status of a forced bit will appear beneath the bit instruction in the rung.

In all processor modes, a FORCED I/O message will be displayed near the bottom of the screen when bits are forced on or off. In every mode except the program mode, on or off will be displayed below each forced instruction.

NOTE: The on or off status of Output Latch/Unlatch instructions is also displayed below the instruction. However, this is displayed only in program mode.

If the industrial terminal or processor is disconnected or loses AC power, or the [MODE SELECT] key is pressed, all force functions are cleared.



WARNING: When an energized output is being forced off, keep personnel away from the machine area. Accidental removal of force functions, such as by accidentally disconnecting the industrial terminal power or interconnect cables or by pressing the [MODE SELECT] key, will instantly turn on the output device. Damage to equipment and/or personal injury could result.

18.3 Forced Address Display

A complete list of bit addresses that are forced on and off can be displayed by the industrial terminal. Either of the following key sequences can be used as needed:

- [SEARCH] [FORCE ON]
- [SEARCH] [FORCE OFF]

If all the bits forced on or off cannot be displayed at one time, the [SHIFT] [↓] and [SHIFT] [↑] keys can be used to display additional forced bits.

To terminate this display, press [CANCEL COMMAND].

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

18.4 Temporary End Instruction

The Temporary End instruction can be used to test or debug a program up to the point where it is inserted. It acts as a program boundary because instructions below it in user program are not scanned or operated upon. Instead, the processor immediately scans the I/O image table followed by user program from the first instruction to the Temporary End instruction.

When the Temporary End instruction is inserted, the rungs below it, although visible and accessible, are not scanned. Their content can be edited, if desired. The displayed section of user program made inactive by the Temporary End instruction will contain the message INACTIVE AREA in the lower right-hand corner of the screen.

The Temporary End instruction can be inserted in either of two ways:

- Cursor to the last rung of the main program to be kept active. Position the cursor on the output instruction. Press [INSERT] [T. END]
- Cursor to the first rung of the main program to be made inactive. Position the cursor in the first instruction in the rung. Press [INSERT] [←] [T. END]

To remove this instruction, position the cursor on it and press [REMOVE] [T. END]

To enter a rung after the T. END instruction, press [↓] and then enter the new rung. If the [↓] key is not pressed, the rung will be inserted above the T. END statement.

Attempting to use the Temporary End instruction in any of the following ways will either be prevented by the industrial terminal or result in a run-time error:

- Using more than one temporary End instruction at a time.
- Using the instruction in subroutine area.
- Inserting or removing the instruction on-line during on-line programming.
- Placing the instruction in the path of the Jump instruction.

18.5 ERR Message for an Illegal OP Code

An illegal OP code is an instruction code that the processor does not recognize. It will cause the processor to fault and will be displayed as an ERR message in the ladder diagram rung in which it occurs. The 4-digit hex value of the illegal OP code is displayed above the ERR message by the T3 industrial terminal.

The illegal OP code ERR message should not be confused with ERR messages caused when T1 or T2 industrial terminal is connected to a processor that was programmed using a T3 industrial terminal. (See

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Section 1.2.3, Industrial Terminal Compatibility.) Those ERR messages do not contain the 4-digit hex value and do not cause a processor fault.

If an illegal OP code should occur, the rung containing it can be compared with the equivalent rung in a hard copy printout of the program. A decision must be made either to replace the error with its correct instruction (see Section 4.4.4, Changing an Instruction) or to remove it. The ERR message, due to an illegal OP code, cannot be removed directly. Instead, remove and replace the entire rung. The cause of the problem should be identified and corrected in addition to correcting the ERR message.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Chapter 19

Special Programming Techniques

19.0 General

There are several programming techniques that offer versatile control of the process of machine operation. They include:

- One-Shot

19.1 One Shot

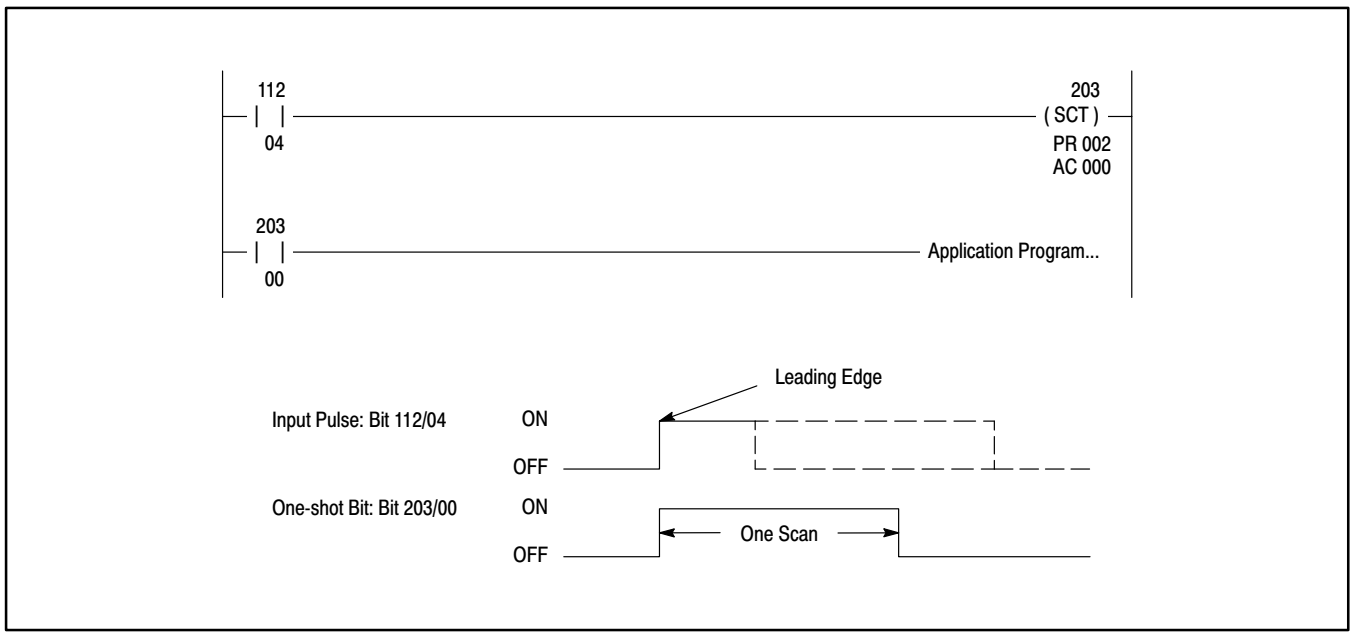
The one-shot programming technique uses a scan counter to set a bit on for one scan only. There are two types of one-shots that can be programmed.

- Leading Edge
- Trailing Edge

19.1.1 Leading Edge One-Shot

A leading edge one-shot is used to set a bit on for one scan when the input condition has made a false-true transition. The transition represents the leading edge of the input pulse. The programming for a leading edge one-shot is shown in Figure 19.1.

Figure 19.1
Leading Edge One-Shot



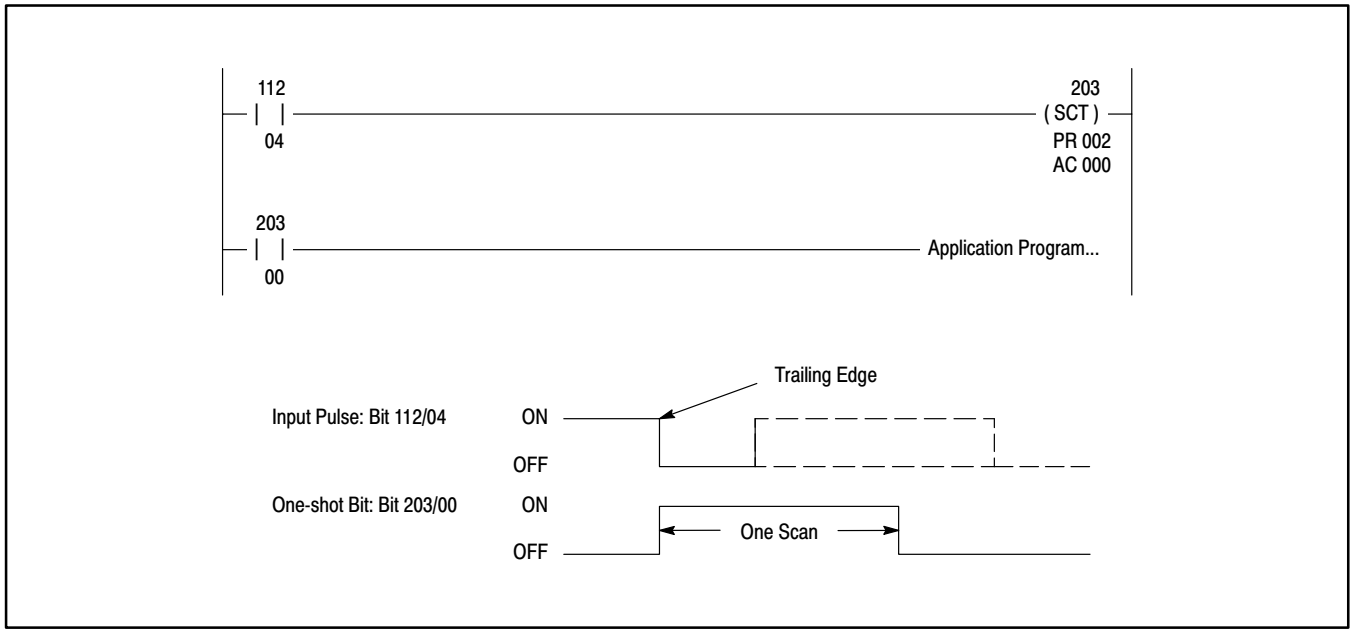
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

When bit 112/04 makes a false-true transition, the scan counter begins to increment once each scan. When the accumulated value of the scan counter is equal to 001, bit 203/00 (the one-shot bit) will be on. The next scan, if bit 112/04 is off, the scan counter will be reset to 000. If 112/04 is on, the scan counter will increment to 002. In either case, bit 203/00 will be off and remain off until 112/04 makes another false-true transition.

19.1.2 Trailing Edge One-Shot

A trailing edge one-shot is used to set a bit on for one scan when its input condition has made a TRUE-to-FALSE transition. The TRUE-to-FALSE transition represents the trailing edge of the input pulse. Programming for a trailing edge one-shot is shown in Figure 19.2.

Figure 19.2
Trailing Edge One-Shot



When bit 112/04 makes a true-false transition, the scan counter begins to increment once each scan. When the accumulated value of the scan counter is equal to 001, bit 203/00 (the one-shot bit) will be on. The next scan, if bit 112/04 is on, the scan counter will be reset to 000. If 112/04 is off, the scan counter will increment to 002. In either case, bit 203/00 will be off and will remain off until 112/04 makes another true-false transition.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Appendix A

Addressing

A.0 Appendix Objectives

After reading this appendix you should be able to understand:

- the various addressing modes that you can use with your processor system
- the system configuration needed for specific addressing modes

NOTE: The illustrations show a PLC-2 family processor in the first slot of the 1771 I/O chassis. In a PLC-2/30 system this is replaced with an adapter module.

A.1 Addressing Your Hardware

You must properly address your hardware so that it relates to your ladder diagram program. In the ladder diagram program, the input or output instruction address is associated with a particular I/O module terminal and is identified by a 5-digit address (Figure A.1).

Addressing serves two purposes:

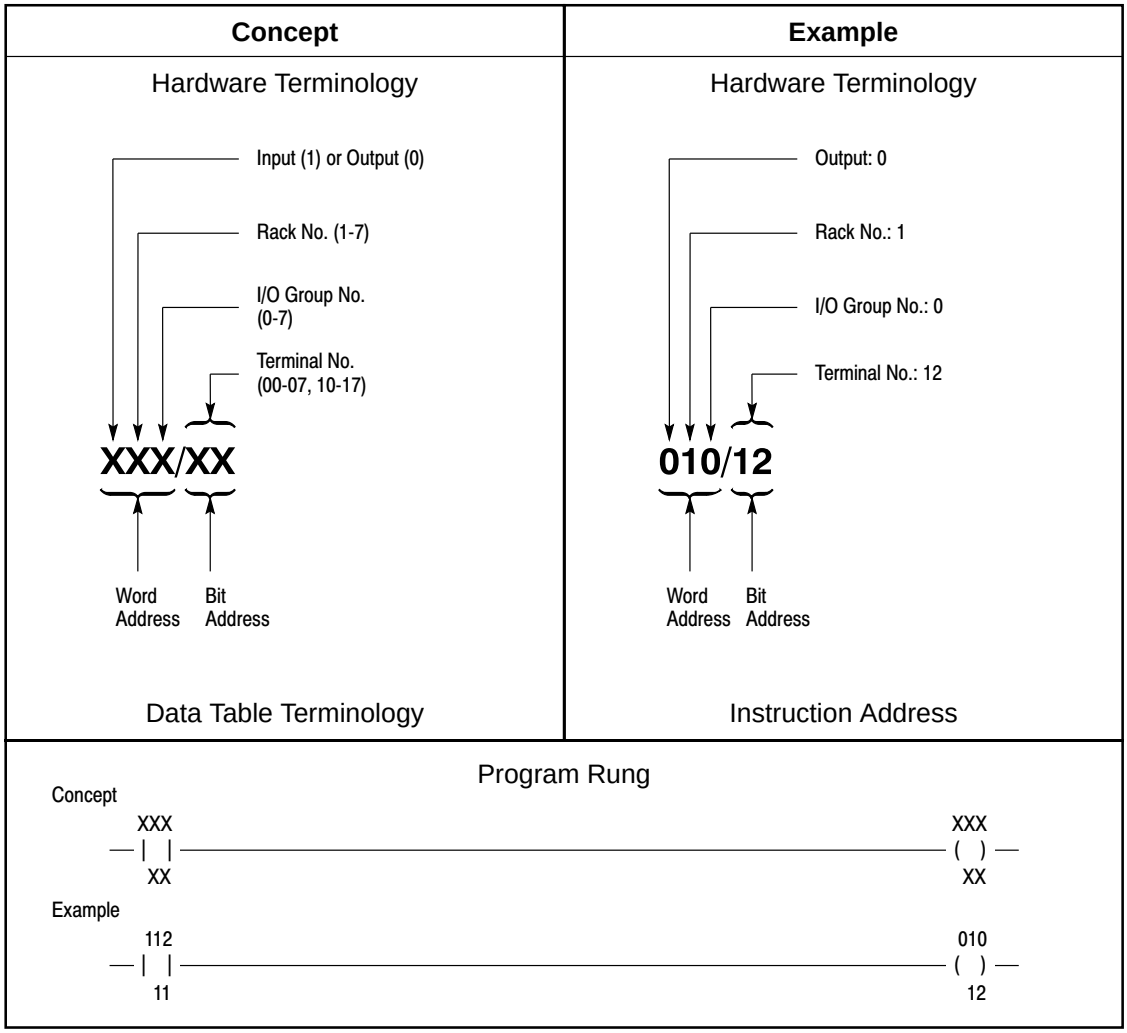
- it links a hardware terminal to a data table location (input), and ...
- it links a data table location to a terminal (output).

In Figure A.1, reading from left to right, the:

- first number denotes the type of module:
  - 0 = output
  - 1 = input
- second number denotes the I/O rack (1 to 7)
- third number denotes an I/O group (0 to 7)
- fourth and fifth numbers denote a terminal:
  - In 2-slot addressing, 00 through 07 fir the left slot of the I/O group, 10 through 17 for the right slot of the I/O group.
  - In 1-slot addressing, 00 through 17 for each I/O group (slot).
  - In 1/2-slot address, 00 through 17 for the upper half of each I/O module (one group) and 00 through 17 for the lower half of each module (another group).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.1
Hardware/Data Table Addressing Relationships



A.2
Addressing Modes

The PLC-2 family processors (at the appropriate series and revision level) can address module groups in various addressing modes. The term “addressing mode” refers to the method of hardware addressing within individual I/O chassis. The selected mode(s) determines the type of module that can be used (8-point, 16-point or 32-point). The following subsections discuss how these modes work and how you use them. (Table A.A at the end of this appendix lists the adapters and what modes they can address.)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

A.2.1 2-Slot Addressing

The processor addresses two I/O module slots as one I/O group.

Each physical 2-slot I/O group is represented by a word in the input image table and a word in the output image table. Each input terminal corresponds to a bit in the input image table word and each output terminal corresponds to a bit in the output image table word.

The maximum number of bits available for one 2-slot I/O group is 32: 16 bits in the input image table word and 16 bits in the output image table word. The type of discrete I/O module you install, either 8-point (standard density) or 16-point (high-density, used in complementary mode) determines the number of bits in the words that are used.

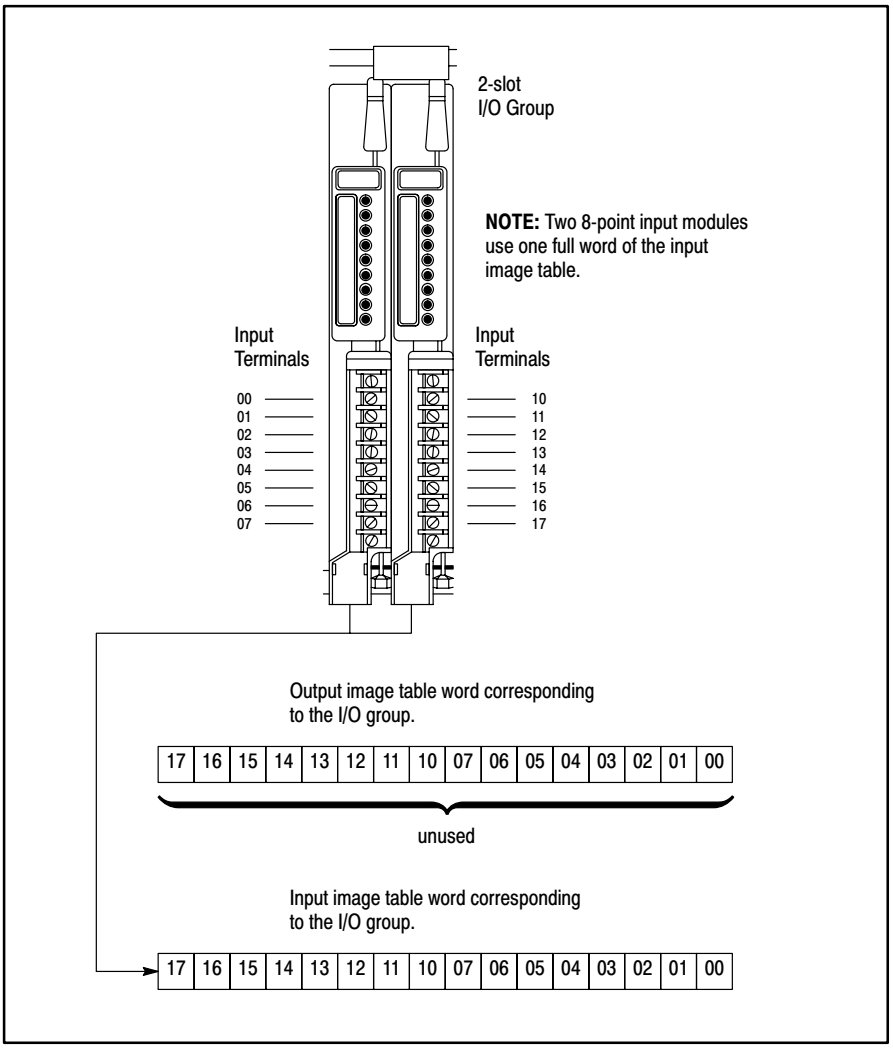
You select 2-slot addressing by setting two switches in the I/O chassis backplane switch assembly. See your scanner's or adapter's users' manual for the specific switches and their settings.

Using 8-Point I/O Modules

I/O modules generally provide eight input terminals or eight output terminals. Figure A.2 illustrates the 2-slot I/O group concept with two 8-point input modules. Figure A.3 illustrates the 2-slot I/O group concept with an 8-point input and an 8-point output module.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

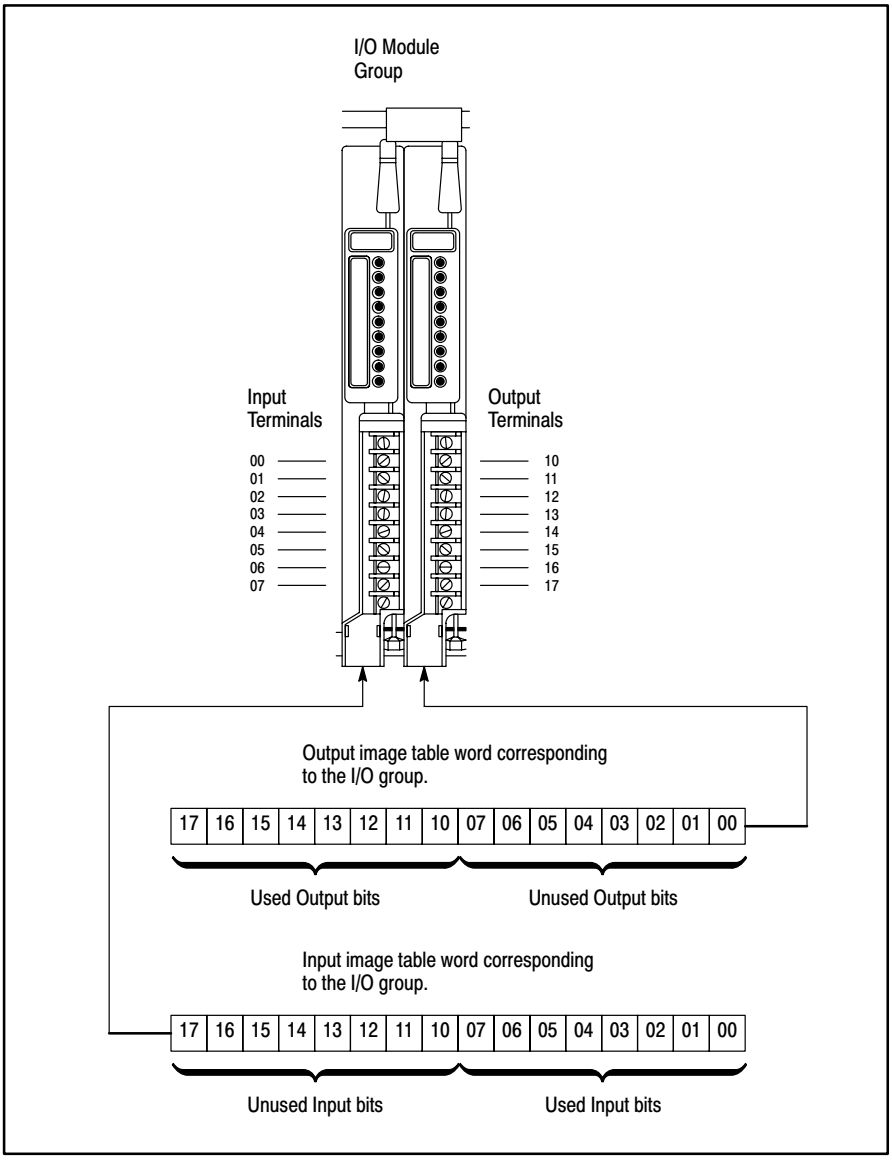
Figure A.2
Illustration of 2-slot Addressing with Two 8-point Input Modules



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Using 8-Point I/O Modules

Figure A.3
Illustration of 2-slot Addressing with 8-point Input and Output Modules

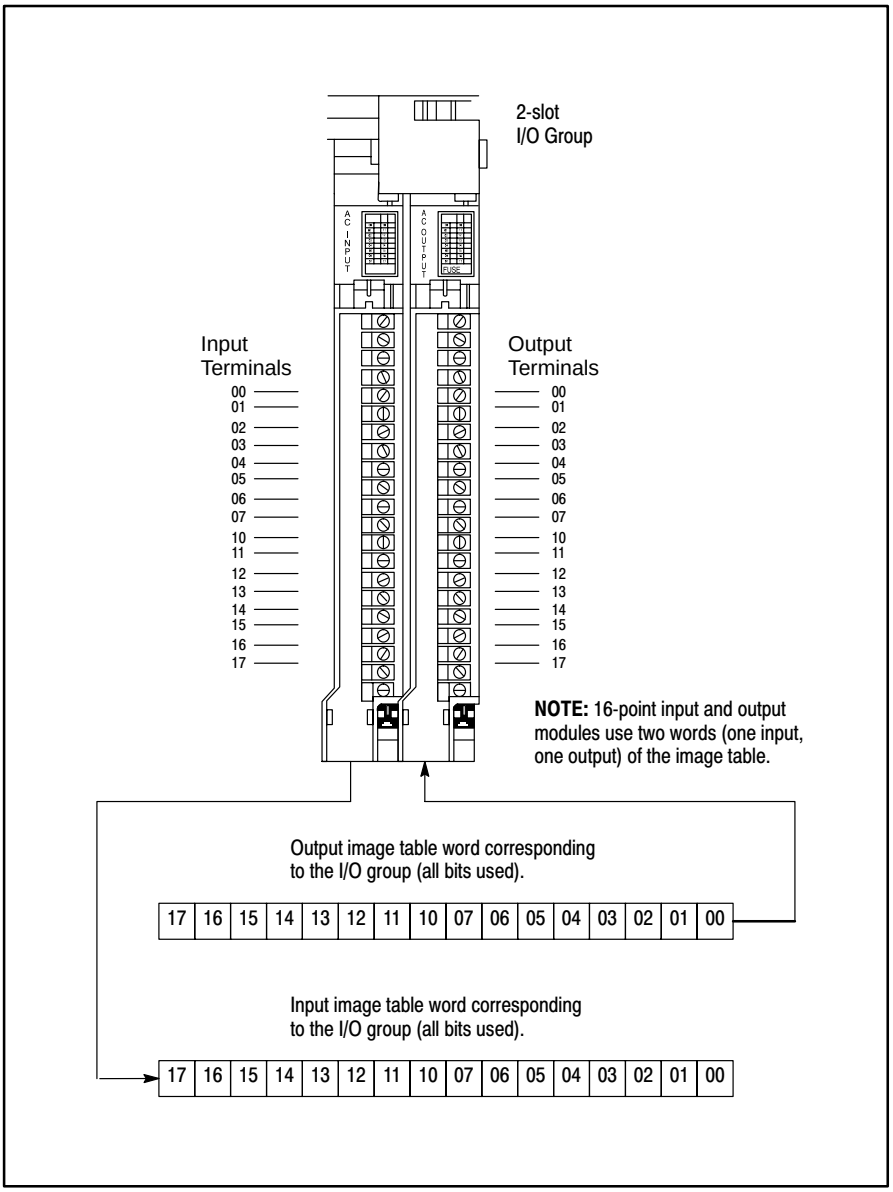


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Using 16-Point I/O Modules

High-Density (16-point) I/O modules provide 16 input terminals or 16 output terminals. 16-point I/O modules use a full word in the input or output image table. Two 16-point modules (one input and one output) can be used in a 2-slot I/O group (Figure A.4).

Figure A.4
Illustration of 2-slot Addressing with 16-point Input and Output Modules



Because these modules use a full word in the image table, the only type of module you can use in a 2-slot I/O group with a 16-point module is one

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

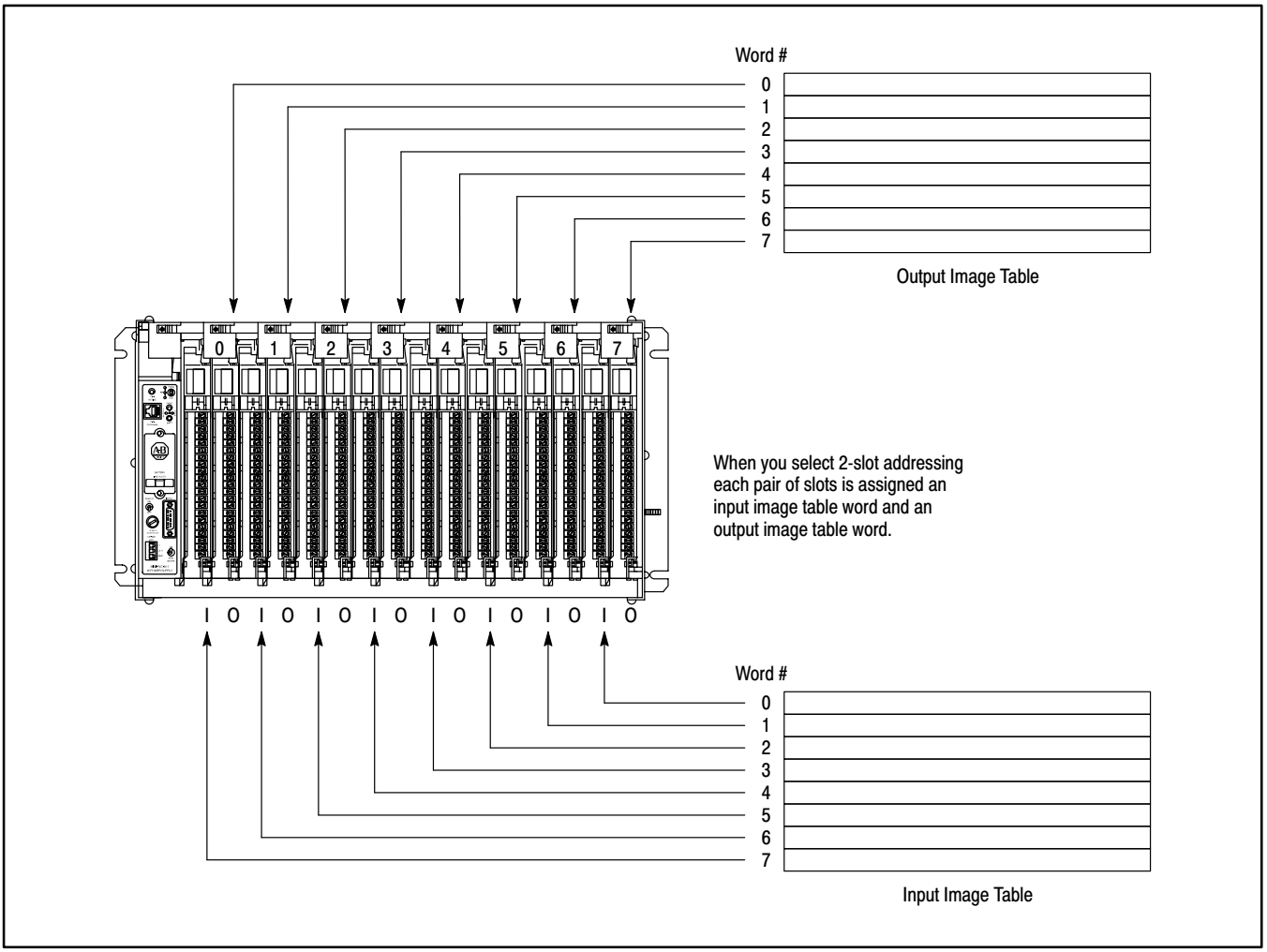
that performs the opposite (complementary) function; an input module complements an output module and vice-versa.

You can use an 8-point module with 16-point module in a 2-slot group; however, it too must perform the opposite function. In this arrangement, eight bits in the I/O image table are unused.

Assigning I/O Rack Numbers

When you select 2-slot addressing, each pair of slots (one I/O group) is assigned to the corresponding pair of words in the input and output image tables. You assign one I/O rack number to eight I/O groups (Figure A.5).

Figure A.5
I/O Table and Corresponding Hardware for One Assigned Rack Number For 2-slot Addressing



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

A.2.2 1-Slot Addressing

The processor (by way of the adapter) addresses one I/O module slot as one I/O group.

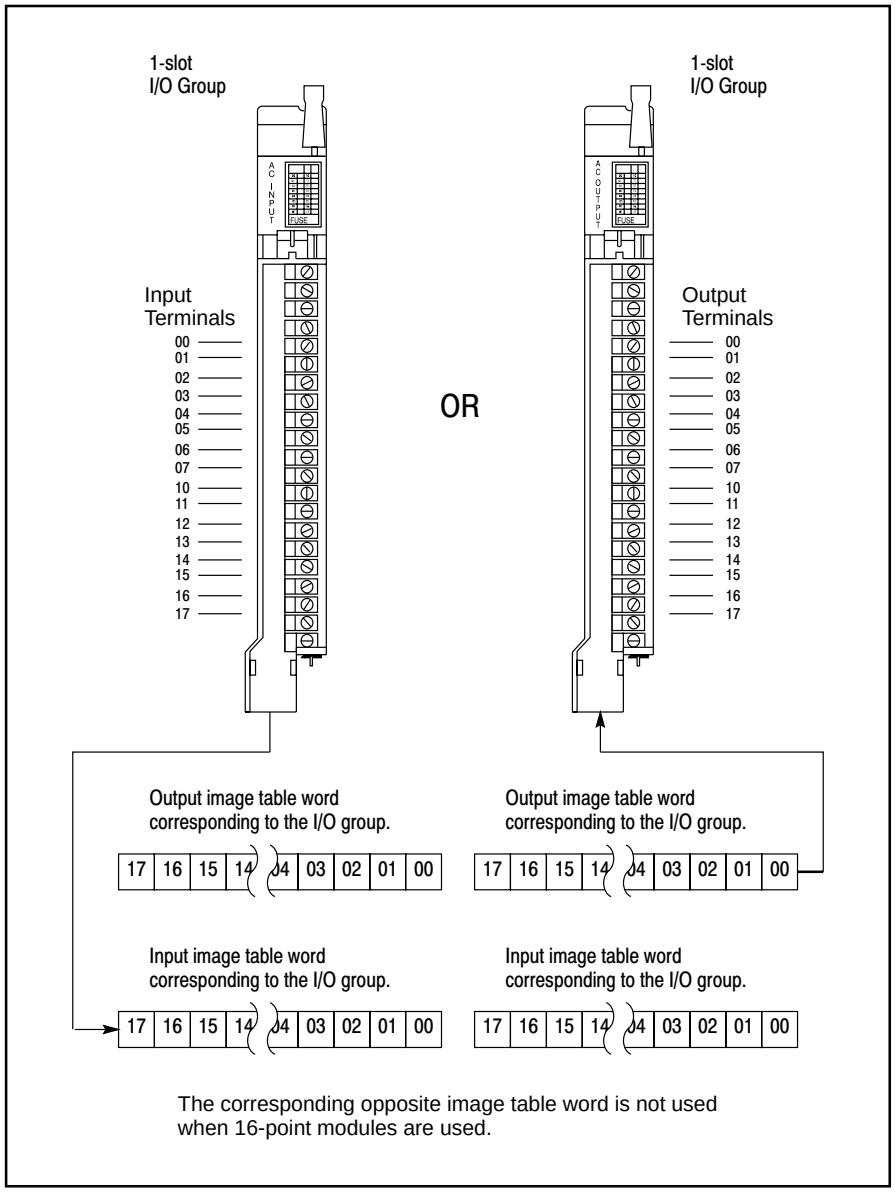
Each 1-slot I/O group is represented by a word in the input image table and a word in the output image table. You have 16 input bits and 16 output bits available for each slot. This lets you use any mix of 8 and 16-point I/O modules in the I/O chassis in any order. Thirty-two-point modules must be used in complementary arrangements.

You select 1-slot addressing by setting two switches in the I/O chassis backplane switch assembly. See your scanner's or adapter's users' manual for the specific switches and their settings.

The physical address of each I/O group corresponds to an input and an output image table word. The type of module you install (either 8-point or 16-point I/O) determines the number of bits in these words that are used. Figure A.6 (on the next page) illustrates the 1-slot I/O group concept with one 16-point I/O module. This module group uses an entire word of the image table. You can use an 8-point I/O module with 1-slot addressing, but the module uses only eight bits of the I/O image table word (8 bits in the I/O image table are unused).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.6
Illustration of 1-slot Addressing with 16-point I/O Modules

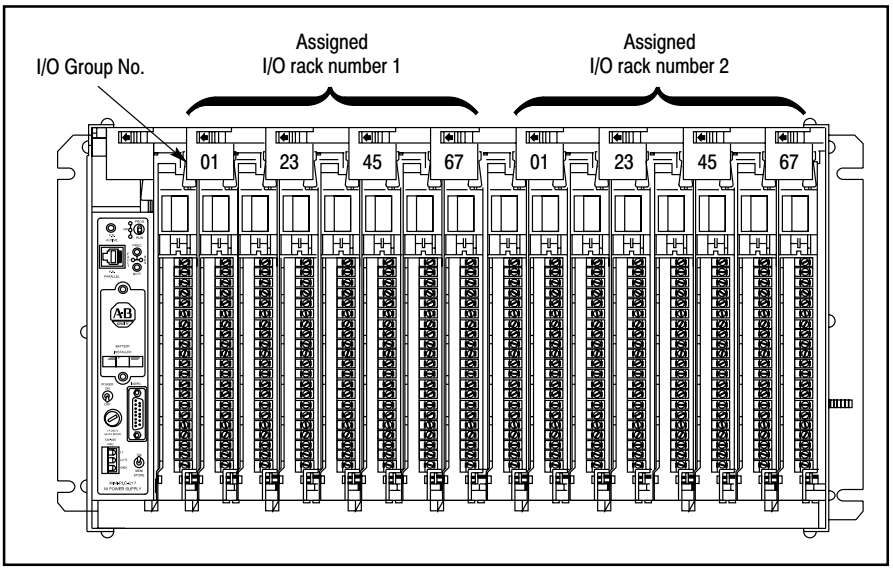


Assigning I/O Rack Numbers

When you select 1-slot addressing, each slot is an I/O group. You still assign one I/O rack number to eight I/O groups; therefore, in a 16-slot I/O chassis you now have two I/O racks (Figure A.7).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.7
Assigning I/O Rack Numbers with 1-slot Addressing

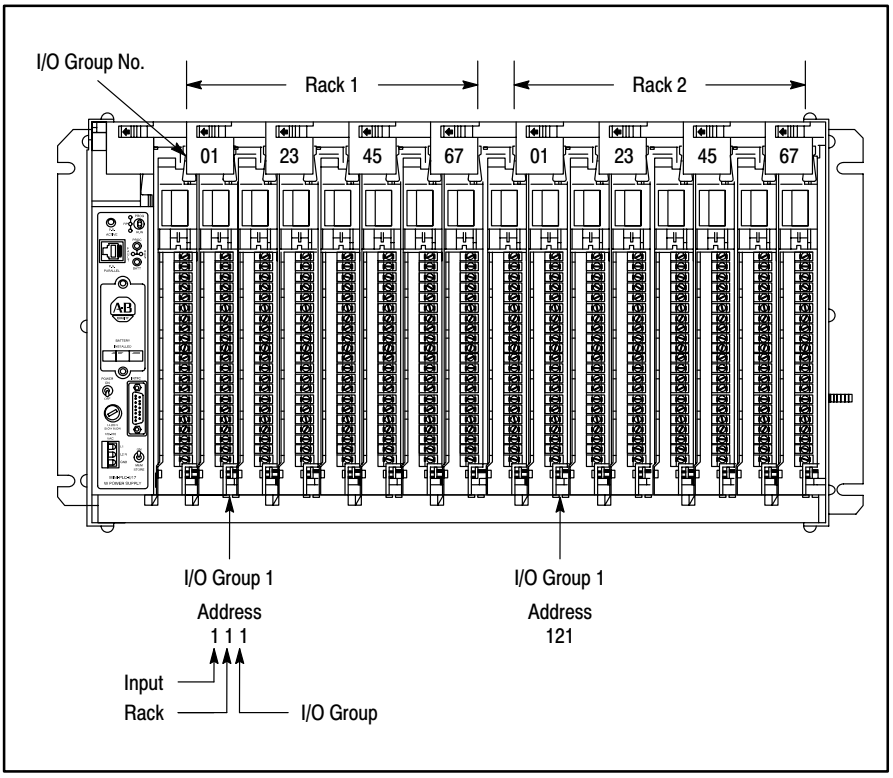


Earlier (Figure A.1), we showed how the 5-digit input or output instruction is associated with a particular I/O module terminal. Now, with two I/O racks you use the instruction address to identify which racks you are communicating with.

Figure A.8 illustrates addressing two modules, each in the same I/O group number but in different assigned racks of a single I/O chassis.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.8
Example of 1-slot Addressing



NOTE: When addressing a block transfer module, it must be addressed by the lowest group number that it occupies and at slot 0. For example, a two-slot block transfer module in rack 1, groups 2 and 3 would be addressed (by Rack-Group-Slot) at location 120.

Also, see the appropriate block transfer module user's manual. Block Transfer modules must be located in the same slot pair (i.e., slots 0/1, 2/3, 4/5, etc.) or they will not work. (Some two-slot B.T. modules use the lower slave bus on the I/O chassis backplane for intramodule communications.)

A.2.3 1/2-Slot Addressing

When you select 1/2-slot addressing, the processor (by way of the adapter) addresses one-half of an I/O module slot as one I/O group. The physical address of each I/O slot corresponds to two input and two output image table words. the type of module you install (8, 16 or 32 I/O pts.) determines the number of bits in these words that are used.

With 1/2-slot addressing, since 32 input bits are 32 output bits are set aside in the processor's image table for each slot (16 input image table bits and 16 output image table bits times 2 groups per slot = 32 of each), you may use any mix of I/O modules (8-, 16- or 32-point) in the I/O chassis.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

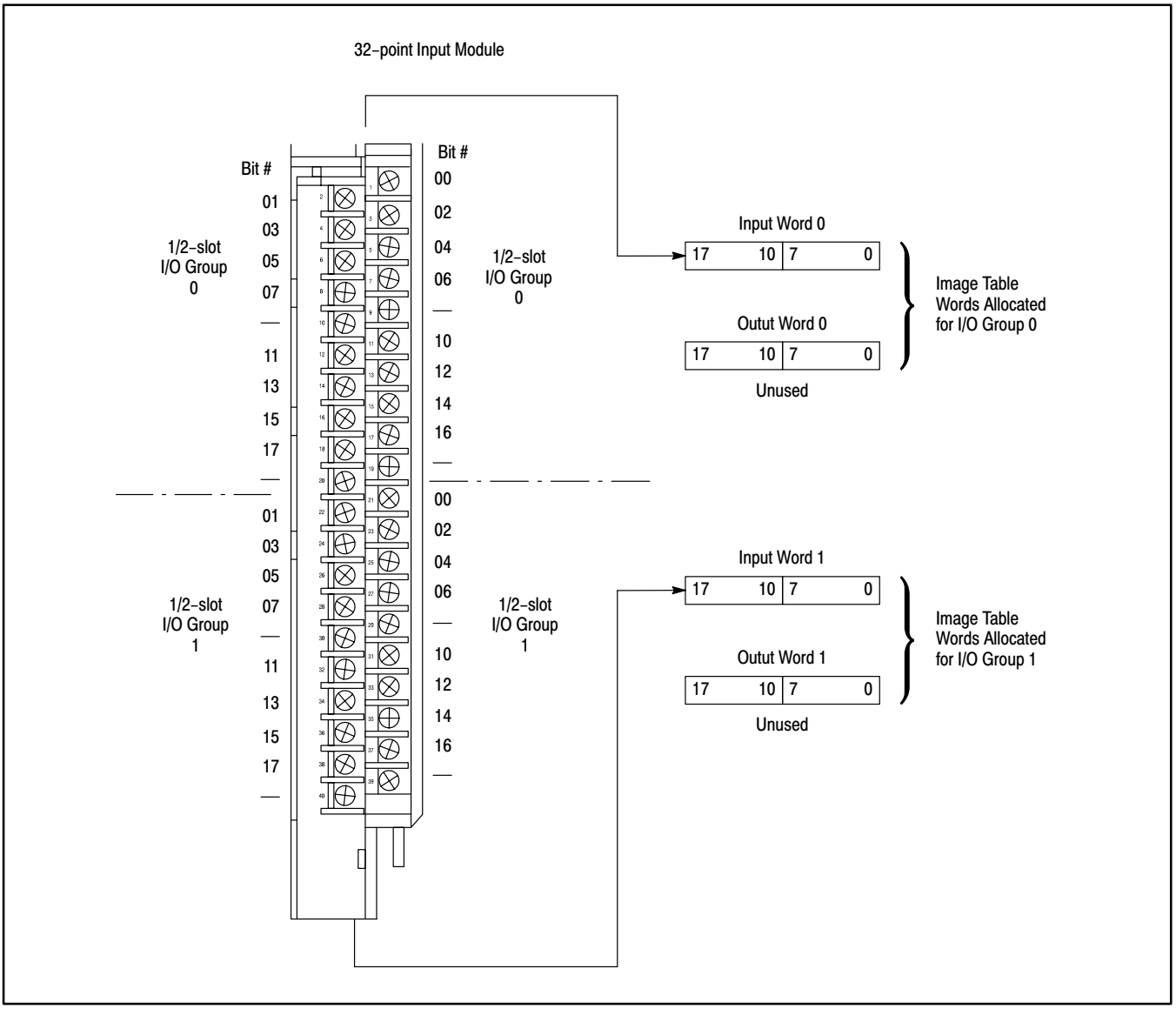
You select 1/2-slot addressing by setting two switches in the I/O chassis backplane switch assembly. See your scanner's or adapter's users' manual for the specific switches and their settings.

Figure A.9 illustrates the 1/2-slot addressing concept with a 32-point I/O module. A 32-point I/O module (two 1/2-slot I/O groups) uses two input or two output words of the image table. Module group 0 applies to the upper 16 points; module group 1 applies to the lower 16 points.

You can use 8-point and 16-point I/O modules with 1/2-slot addressing but the rest of the bits are unused. They may be addressed through either of the I/O module groups assigned to that chassis slot.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.9
Illustration of 1/3-slot Addressing Using a 32-point I/O Module

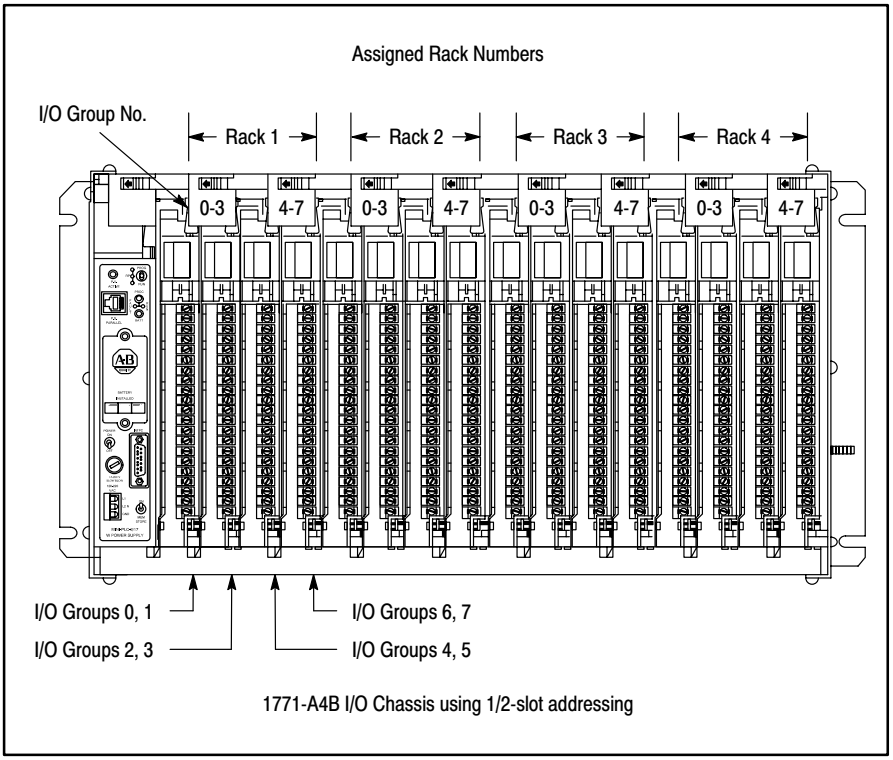


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Assigning I/O Rack Numbers

When you select 1/2-slot addressing, each slot corresponds to two I/O groups. You still assign one rack number to eight groups; however, with 1/2-slot addressing this requires only four slots. Thus, in a single 16 slot chassis, you now can have four I/O racks (Figure A.10).

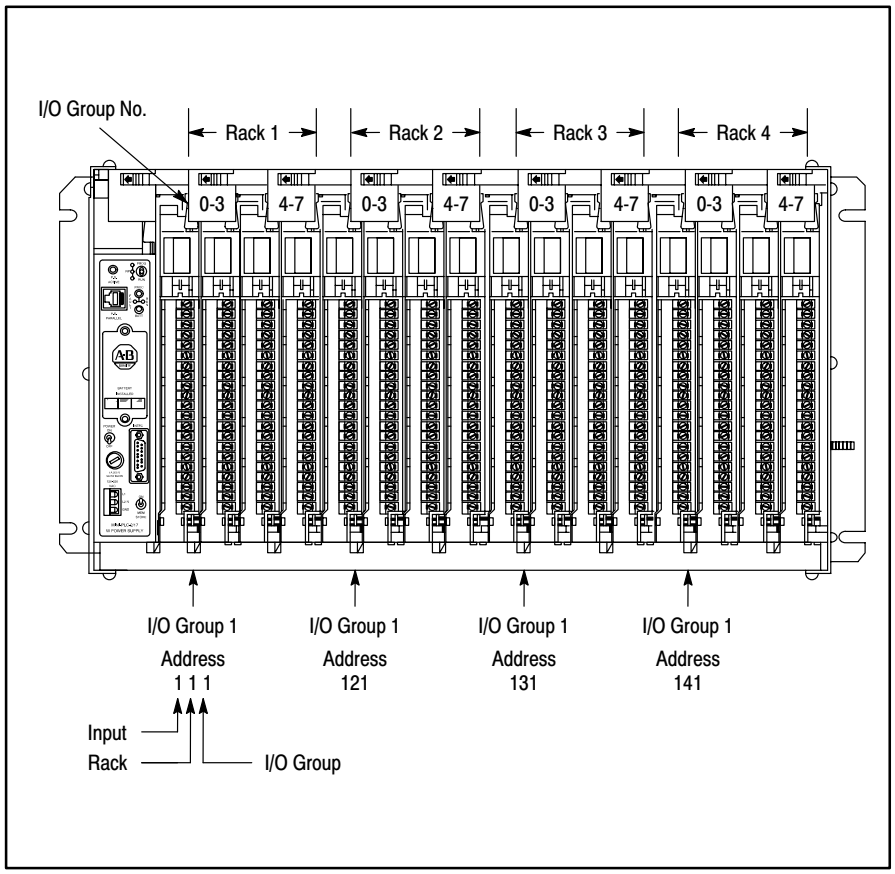
Figure A.10
Assigning I/O rack Numbers with 1/2-slot Addressing



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure A.11 illustrates addressing 4 modules, each with the same I/O group number, but in four different racks of a single I/O chassis. (This method is explained in Figure A.11.)

Figure A.11
Group Address of a Module in Four Different Racks



NOTE: When addressing a one-block transfer module, it must be addressed by the lowest group number that it occupies and at slot 0. For example, a one-slot block transfer module in rack 1, group 2 and 3 (chassis slot 2) would be addressed (by Rack-Group-Slot) at location 120.

NOTE: When addressing a two-slot block transfer module, it too must be addressed by the lowest group number that it occupies and at slot 0. For example, a two-slot block transfer module in rack 3, groups 4, 5, 6, and 7 (it occupies chassis slots 3 and 4) would be addressed (by Rack-Group-Slot) at location 340.

Also see the appropriate block transfer module user's manual. Block Transfer modules must be located in the same slot pair (i.e., slots 0/1, 2/3,

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

4/5, etc.) or they will not work. (Some two-slot B.T. modules use the lower slave bus on the I/O chassis backplane for intramodule communication.)

A.3 System Configurations

The PLC-2/30 processor can communicate with the local and remote I/O. Its addressing modes are dependent upon what it is addressing (local or remote I/O) and how it is communicating with its I/O modules.

- If you have a PLC-2/30 communicating with a local I/O chassis through a 1771-AL Local I/O Adapter module, you can only use 2-slot addressing.
- If your PLC-2/30 is communicating to a remote I/O chassis through a 1771-ASB (Series A) Remote I/O Adapter module (and the needed 1772-SD2 Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution panel), you can use 2-slot or 1-slot addressing. See publication no. 1772-2.18 for addressing information.
- If you are communicating with a remote chassis through a 1771-ASB (Series B) remote I/O Adapter module (and the needed 1772-SD2 Remote I/O Scanner/Distribution panel), you can use 2-slot, 1-slot or 1/2-slot addressing. See publication no. 1771-6.5.37 for detailed addressing information. There are two factors that determine or limit what addressing mode you may use. They are:
- The 1771 Universal I/O chassis series (A or B).
- The I/O Adapter (1771-AL, 1771-AS, 1771-ASB (Ser. A), 1771-ASB (Ser. B)

The following table presents the possible combinations of addressing with Series B 1771 Universal I/O chassis versus various I/O adapters.

With Series A chassis, only 8-point modules may be used. No 16- or 32-point can be used in any configuration.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table A.A
Series B, 1771 Universal I/O Chassis, Addressing Modes vs. I/O Adapters

I/O Adapter Cat. No.	I/O Points Per Module	Addressing Mode		
		2-slot	1-slot	1/2-slot
1771-AL	8 16 32	A * X	X X X	X X X
1771-AS	8 16 32	A C X	X X X	X X X
1771-ASB Series A	8 16 32	A C X	A A X	A X X
1771-ASB Series B	8 16 32	A C X	A A C	A A A

Legend:

A Any mix of modules in the respective “points-per-module“ category.

* Specific module placement with 16-point input module in one slot of a slot pair and 8-point output module in remaining slot.

C Conditional module placement: you must use an input module and an output module in two adjacent slots, beginning with slot 0 (i.e. 0 and 1, 2 and 3, etc.).

X Will not work.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Appendix **B**

Number Systems

B.0 General

There are four numbering systems used with programmable controllers. They are:

- Decimal
- Octal
- Binary
- Hexadecimal

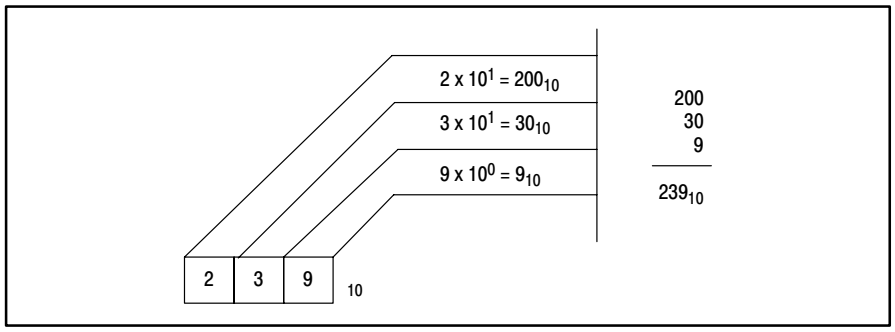
These numbering systems differ by their number sets and place values.

B.1 Decimal Numbering System

The decimal numbering system uses a number set made up of ten digits: the numbers 0 through 9. All decimal numbers are composed of these digits. The value of a decimal number depends on the digits used and the place value of each digit.

Each place value in a decimal number represents a power of ten (Figure B.1), starting with 100. The value of a decimal number is determined by multiplying each digit by its corresponding place value and adding these numbers together.

Figure B.1
Decimal Numbering System



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

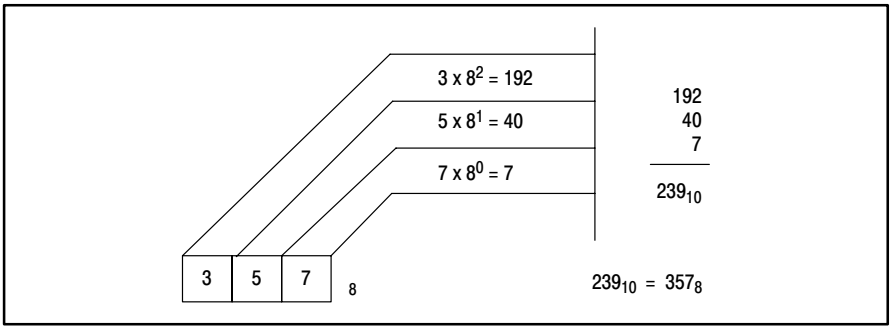
B.2
Octal Numbering System

The octal numbering system is used to address word and bit locations in the data table. Its number set is composed of eight digits: the numbers 0 through 7.

Just like all numbering systems, each digit in an otcal number has a certain place value, represented by a power of eight (Figure B.2).

The decimal value of an octal number is computed by multiplying each octal digit by its place value and adding these numbers together.

Figure B.2
Octal Numbering System



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

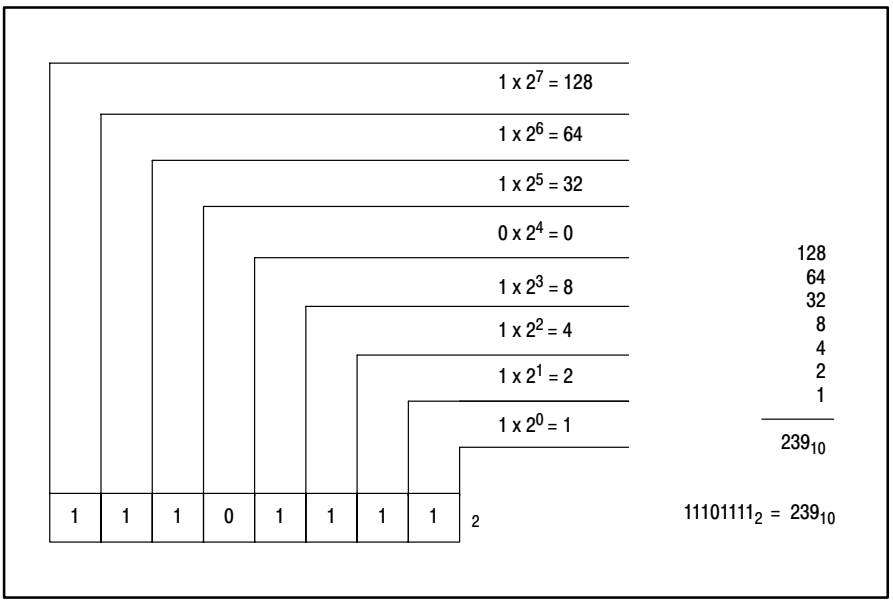
B.3
Binary Numbering System

The binary numbering system uses a number set that consists of two digits: the numbers 0 and 1. All information in memory is stored as an arrangement of 1 and 0.

Each digit in a binary number has a certain place value expressed as a power of two (Figure B.3). The decimal equivalent of a binary number is computed by multiplying each binary digit by its corresponding place value and adding these numbers together.

By grouping several binary digits together, values can be formed to represent decimal or octal numbers.

Figure B.3
Binary Numbering System

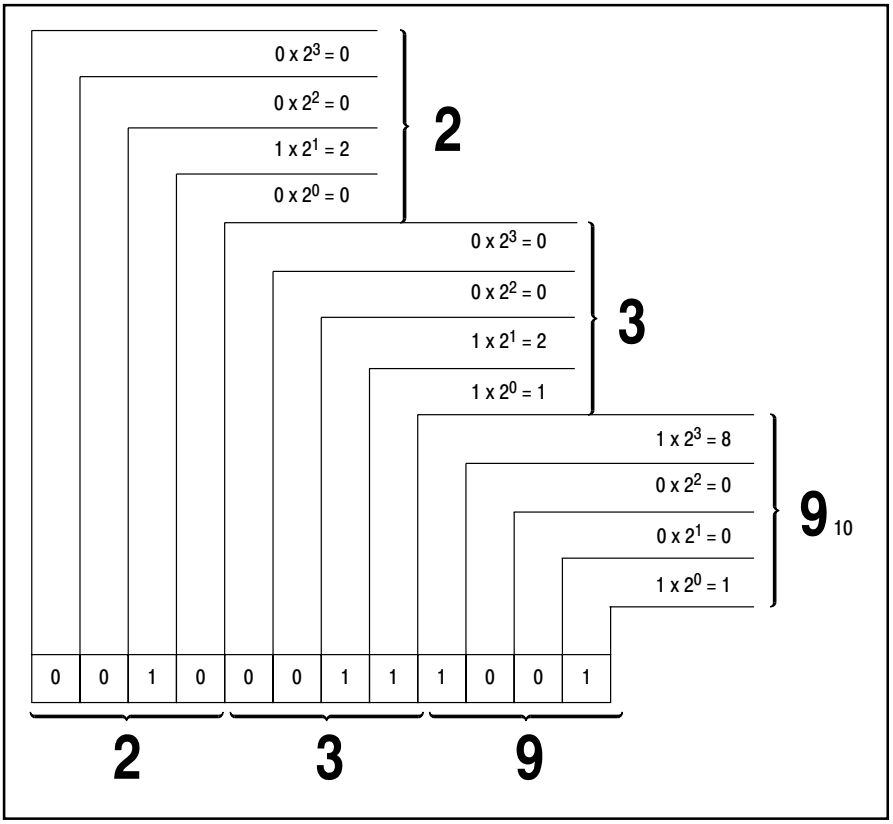


Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

B.3.1 Binary Coded Decimal

Binary coded decimal (BCD) uses an arrangement of 12 binary digits to represent a 3-digit decimal number from 000 to 999 (Figure B.4). Each group of 4 binary digits is used to represent a decimal number from 0 to 9. The place values for each group of 4 digits are 20, 21, 22 and 23 (Table B.A).

Figure B.4
Binary Coded Decimal



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table B.A
BCD Representation

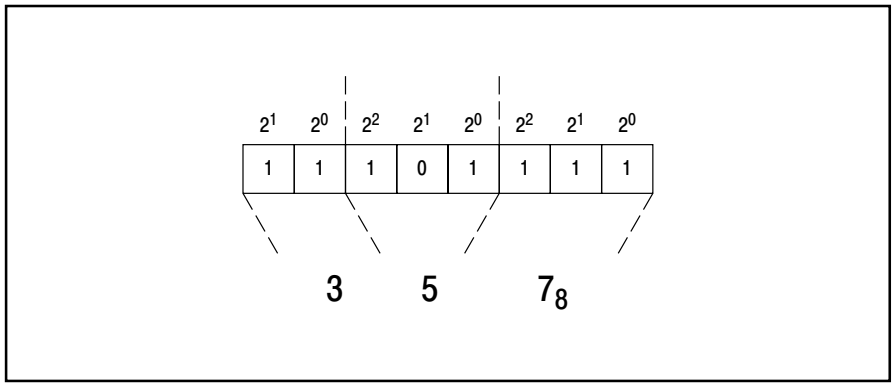
Place Value				Decimal Equivalent
2^3 (8)	2^2 (4)	2^1 (2)	2^0 (1)	
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	2
0	0	1	1	3
0	1	0	0	4
0	1	0	1	5
0	1	1	0	6
0	1	1	1	7
1	0	0	0	8
1	0	0	1	9

The decimal equivalent for a group of 4 binary digits is determined by multiplying the binary digit by its corresponding place value and adding these numbers.

B.3.2 Binary Coded Octal

Binary coded octal (BCO) uses an arrangement of 8 bits (one byte) to represent a 3-digit octal number from 000 to 377 (Figure B.5). The 8 bits are broken down into three groups: 2 bits, 3 bits and 3 bits.

Figure B.5
Binary Coded Octal



The octal number for each group of bits is determined by multiplying the binary digit by its corresponding place value and adding these numbers together (Table B.B).

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Table B.B
Octal Representation

Place Value			
2^2 (4)	2^1 (2)	2^0 (1)	Octal Equivalent
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	2
0	1	1	3
1	0	0	4
1	0	1	5
1	1	0	6
1	1	1	7

B.4 Hexadecimal Numbering System

The hexadecimal numbering system has a number set of 16 digits: the numbers 0-9 and the letters A-F (Table B.C). The letters A-F represent the decimal numbers 10-15 respectively.

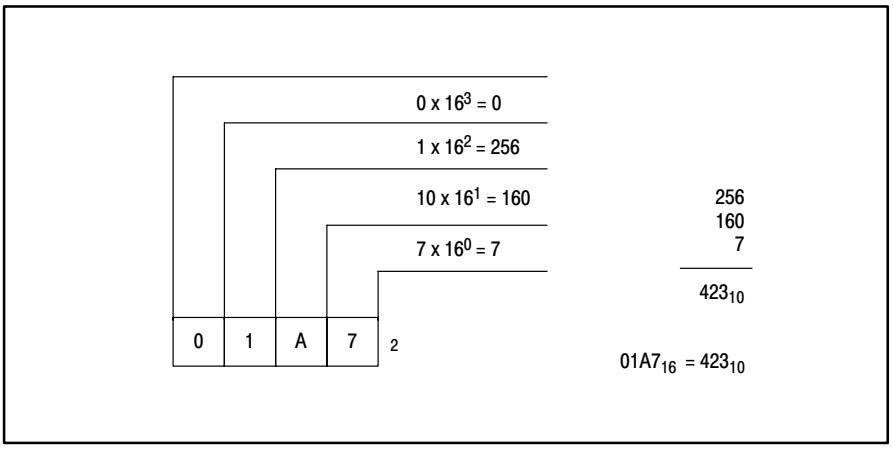
Table B.C
Numbering System Conversion Chart

Hexadecimal	Binary	Decimal	Octal
0	0000	0	000
1	0001	1	001
2	0010	2	002
3	0011	3	003
4	0100	4	004
5	0101	5	005
6	0110	6	006
7	0111	7	007
8	1000	8	010
9	1001	9	011
A	1010	10	012
B	1011	11	013
C	1100	12	014
D	1101	13	015
E	1110	14	016
F	1111	15	017

A hexadecimal number can be converted to a decimal number by multiplying the hexadecimal digit by its corresponding place value (Figure B.6).

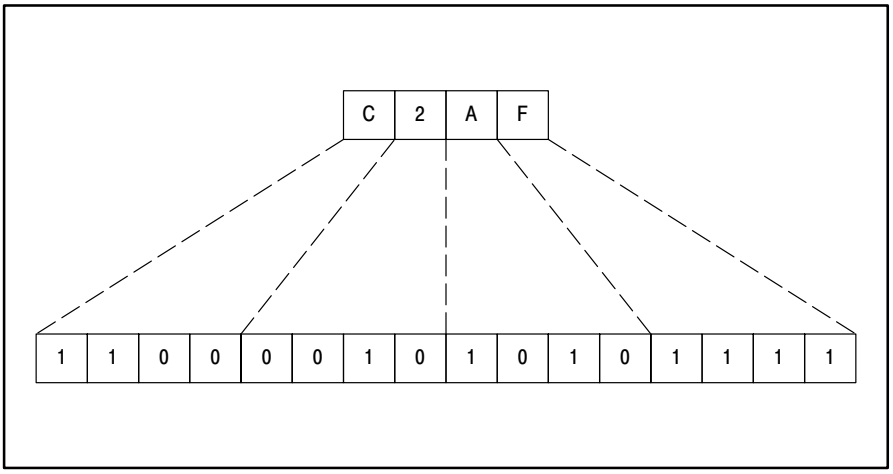
Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure B.6
Hexadecimal-to-Decimal Conversion



Because each hexadecimal digit represents 4 binary digits, it is easy to convert a hexadecimal number to a binary number. This is done by writing out the 4-bit pattern for each hexadecimal digit (Figure B.7).

Figure B.7
Hexadecimal-to-Binary Conversion



Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Appendix C

Programming .01-Second Timers

C.0 Introduction

The bulletin 1772 Mini-PLC-2 Programmable Controller permits you to enter On Delay Timer (TON), Off Delay Timer (TOF), and Retentive Timer (RTO) instructions[1] with a 0.01-second time base. These are also referred to as 10-millisecond (10-msec) timers.

Timers with a 10-msec time base provide you with greater timing resolution and accuracy than is possible with a 0.1-second time base. Ten-msec timers are used when time delays from 0.02 to 9.99 seconds are required.

C.1 Time Base Selection

When you enter a timer instruction into a program, you must specify the following:

- Timer word address
- Time base
- Preset value
- Accumulated value (for RTO only)

Note that your selection of preset value and time base is closely related. The processor executes the time-delay functions by incrementing the timer accumulated values one unit for each time base unit that elapses. In other words, the preset value represents a specific number of increments of the time base.

Note, however, that the preset value is **not** an absolute length of time. For example, if the preset value is 010, the time delay will be:

- 10 seconds if a 1.0-second time base is selected
- 1.0 second if a 0.1-second time base is selected
- 0.10 second if a 0.01-second (10-msec) time base is selected

The smaller the time base, the larger the preset value must be to obtain the same time delay. For example, to obtain a 5-second time delay, the program would contain:

- 005 in preset for a 1.0-second time base
- 050 in preset for a 0.1-second time base
- 500 in preset for a 0.01-second time base

[1] In order to enter these instructions, a Series B or later Bulletin 1772-PLC-2 Program Panel must be used. Alternatively, a Series B or later Bulletin 1772-PLC/PLC-2 Program Panel adapter **and** a Series C or later Bulletin 1774-PLC Program Panel may be used.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

C.2 Timer Accuracy

Given any preset value, a Mini-PLC-2 controller timer is accurate to within one interval of its time base (and this is generally true for any type of timer). Specifically, the timed interval does not exceed the preset interval, but it may be as much as 1 time-base unit shorter than the preset. Let's illustrate this with the following examples:

- **TON:** Time base = 1.0 second; preset value = 100. This time interval will be greater than 99 seconds and less than or equal to 100 seconds, as shown below:
  99 seconds < TON timed out < = 100 seconds

- **TON:** Time base = 0.1 second; preset value = 100. This time interval will be greater than 9.9 seconds and less than or equal to 10 seconds, as shown below:
  9.9 seconds < TON timed out < = 10.0 seconds

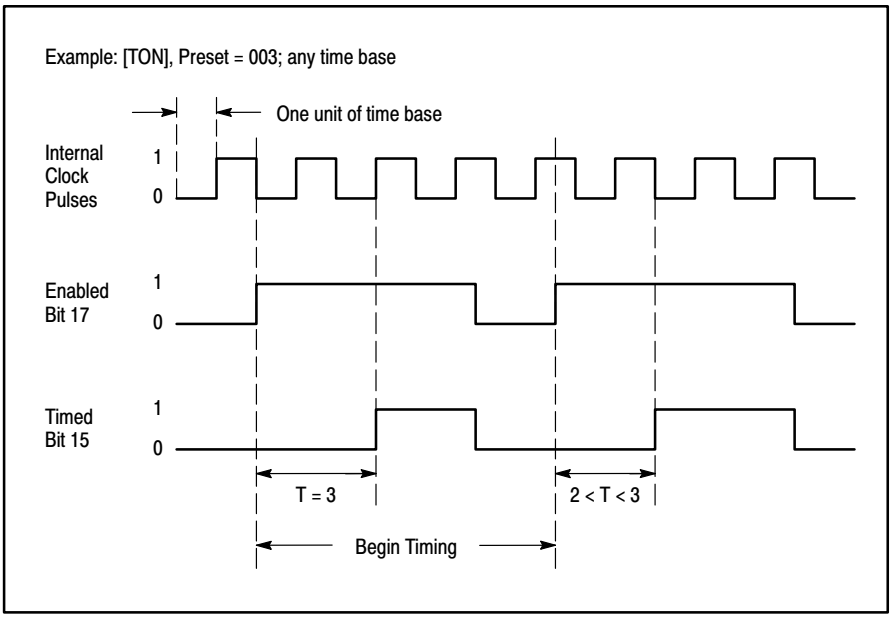
- **TON:** Time base = 0.01 second; preset value = 100. This time interval will be greater than 0.99 seconds and less than or equal to 1 second, as shown below:
  0.99 seconds < TON timed out < = 1.0 second

Note that special programming techniques are required to use the 10-msec timer in a program. These techniques are discussed later.

Programmed timers examine internal pulses of the Mini-Processor (refer to figure C.1). A change in the state of this internal clock causes the timer to increment its accumulated value. Note, however, that the timing pulses are continuous and are only examined by the Mini-Processor when a timer instruction is being executed in the program. As Figure C.1 shows, when the Mini-Processor **initially** examines this internal clock, the clock may have just changed state or may be just about to change state. It is this variable that makes possible the inaccuracy of up to 1 time-base increment.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure C.1
Timing Diagram



Note, too, that these timing accuracies refer only to internal Mini-Processor operation. That is, these intervals refer to the length of time which occurs between the moment that a timer is initialized (bit 17 set) and the moment that the timed interval is complete (bit 15 set). Other factors add to this timer inaccuracy. Chief among these are the response time of the actual hardware devices controlled and monitored by the Mini-Processor controller. (Refer to the section concerning Hardware and Mini-Processor considerations, later on.)

You are urged not to overspecify timing accuracy. In many applications, timing within 0.1 second will provide accuracy comparable to, or better than, typical electromechanical timing relays. In general, you may apply these rules:

- for delays of 99 to 999 seconds, use the 1.0-second time base
- for delays of 2.00 to 99.9 seconds, use a 0.1-second time base
- for delays of 0.02 to 2.00 seconds, use the 10-msec time base

As an observation: when time delays are incorporated in a program to provide a warmup or initializing period, or to prevent the simultaneous application of power to high-current devices, inaccuracies on the order of 50 to 250-msec are probably insignificant. For these uses, the 1.0- or 0.1-second time bases are more than adequate. Applications for the 10-msec timer are discussed on the next page.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

C.3
10-Msec Timers – Typical Applications

In general, 10-msec timers are used for these functions:

- monitor events on a high-speed assembly or transfer line, such as that used in canning and bottling machines
- generate short-duration pulses for accurate positioning control.

For example, on a bottling or canning line, photoelectric sensors or electromagnetic proximity switches can be used to detect the movement of bottles/cans. Each time a bottle passes a detector, an On Delay or Off Delay timer can be started. The next bottle down the line will turn the sensor on (or off), thereby resetting the timer. Once the second bottle is past the sensor, the timer is started again. If the bottles are moving too slowly, or if a bottle is missing, the timer will time out. The timed bit in the Data Table of the Mini-Processor controller can be programmed to set off an alarm, or to stop the machine until the problem is corrected.

With the high speeds encountered on a typical high-speed bottling machine, a timer with a 0.1-second time base would probably be too slow for this application. By computing the minimum bottle travel speed, the maximum time between bottles could be determined. The time, in 10-msec increments, could then be entered as the timer preset.

As another typical example 10-msec timers could also be used to operate sorting mechanisms for high-speed machines. Two methods can be used:

Method 1 — The sort mechanism could be energized, for example, 60 msec after a reject is sensed by a particular sensor.

Method 2 — The reject sense switch could immediately apply a 40-msec pulse to the sort mechanism. In this case, the pulse is just long enough for the mechanism to pull only one rejected bottle off the line.

Yet another example for the generating of short-duration pulses can also be found in machine tools and similar applications requiring accurate positioning control. Typically, 10-msec timers are used to generate one short duration pulse, or a series of pulses, when a limit switch or proximity switch detects end of travel, depth reached, or similar data. Detection that machining depth has been reached could, for example, generate a 130-msec pulse to the motor reverse circuit, thus plugging or braking the spindle with great accuracy.

Programmable control offers additional advantages in these applications. For example, consider a bottling machine capable of filling and capping 12-ounce and 16-ounce bottles. The larger bottles may move more slowly, or the spacing between bottles may be different. Detection of 16-ounce bottles could cause the Mini-Processor to GET different timer preset values and PUT them into monitoring and sorting timers, such as those discussed above.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Changing the timer presets in this manner also enables you to fine-tune the system without physically adjusting the locations of detection devices.

C.4 Hardware/Processor Considerations

When considering use of the 10-msec timer, you must consider other timing factors, both within the programmable controller and in the hardware devices. Several examples are:

- Every input device requires a length of time to change state. Photoelectric devices and electromagnetic proximity switches typically operate in the range of 3 to 50 msec. Mechanical switches and magnetic control relays can require longer times for operation.
- Some input modules may provide a slight delay resulting from the input filter time constant: typically 10-25 msec.
- The execution of each program instruction requires a certain length of time. Instruction execution times are discussed later, in relation to program scan-time computation.
- Scan time (I/O scan + program scan) depends on the number and type of instructions, as discussed below. Incorporation of Immediate Input and Immediate Output instructions can compensate for the length of scan time.
- DC Output modules typically require from 1 to 5 msec for response; AC Output modules require 3 to 10 msec for response, depending on the instantaneous value of the AC wave when the turn-on signal is applied.
- Your output devices may take 50 to 100 msec or longer to operate after current is applied. Inductive loads, or devices with substantial surge suppression circuitry, may also have longer response time.

Each of the items discussed above will have an impact on the actual time delay obtained from a programmable timer. Selection of fast-response input devices is your responsibility and is beyond the scope of this document. For selection of suitable I/O modules, contact your local Allen-Bradley representative for further assistance.

C.5 10-Msec Timers – Programming Techniques

The remainder of this Appendix discusses programming techniques which you must use to effectively program 10-msec timers. The required programming is based on two concepts:

- Scan time
- Sequential program scan

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

C.5.1 Scan Time

The Mini-PLC-2 Processor performs an I/O scan and then a program scan, in sequence. Scan time is the sum of the times required for both of these scans. (Note that the processor does not scan unused memory, nor does it scan that portion of the memory used to store messages.)

During an I/O scan, the processor examines Output Image table bits[2] and updates or corrects the ON/OFF signals applied to the output modules. It also examines the ON/OFF signals from the input modules and updates the ON/OFF status of the corresponding input image table bits.

During a program scan, the processor scans each instruction in the program, one at a time. It executes output instructions only if the rung is true. The sequential nature of this scan is discussed further in the next section.

Scan time cannot be specified exactly for all processors because each user program is different. The length of the scan time depends on both the number and the type of instructions the program contains. (Actual scan-time computation is discussed in a separate section.) For purposes of discussion, scan time is generally assumed to be about 25 msec, though in practice, it will range from about 15 to 50 msec, or more, in extreme cases.

C.5.2 Program Execution

The second consideration for 10-msec timer programming is the sequential nature of the program scan. The processor executes one program instruction at a time. After it executes an instruction, it cannot examine that instruction again until the next scan of memory. With respect to timer instructions, particularly, the processor cannot increment the accumulated value except when it is executing that instruction.

Furthermore, the only states of any memory bits that affect the execution of any single instruction are the states those bits have at the instant the processor executes the instruction. If a bit changes state after the instruction is executed, the change of state will not affect the instruction until it is executed the next time.

For example, suppose one program instruction is Examine On 110/13. If the device is open, the processor will detect an “off” signal from the input module during the I/O scan and will clear (reset to “0”) the corresponding input image table bit. After the I/O scan, the program scan begins.

Suppose, in this case, that the input device wired to a terminal at address 110/13 is closed when the program scan begins. The corresponding image table bit will remain “0” (device is open) until the next I/O scan after the current program scan is finished, or until the processor executes an Immediate Input instruction addressed to word 110.

[2] For a discussion of memory areas, refer to publication no. 1772-6.8.4, The Organization and Structure of the Mini-PLC-2 Memory.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

The processor can also update a timer only at the instant it is executing that timer instruction. Remember that an integral timing clock (see the preceding section, Timer Accuracy, on the previous page) puts out pulses for the 1.0-, 0.1- and 0.01-second timers. When the 1.0- and 0.1-second timers are used in a program, the timing pulses are always longer than the process or scan time. No special programming is required; these timers will not miss a timing pulse.

Timing pulses for the 10-msec time base, however, are usually **shorter** than the program scan time. Since the processor can only increment a timer while it is executing that instruction, the 10-msec timer could miss one or more timing pulses on each program scan. The solution is to instruct the processor to execute the timer instruction often enough that it will not miss a pulse.

C.5.3 Programming Compensation

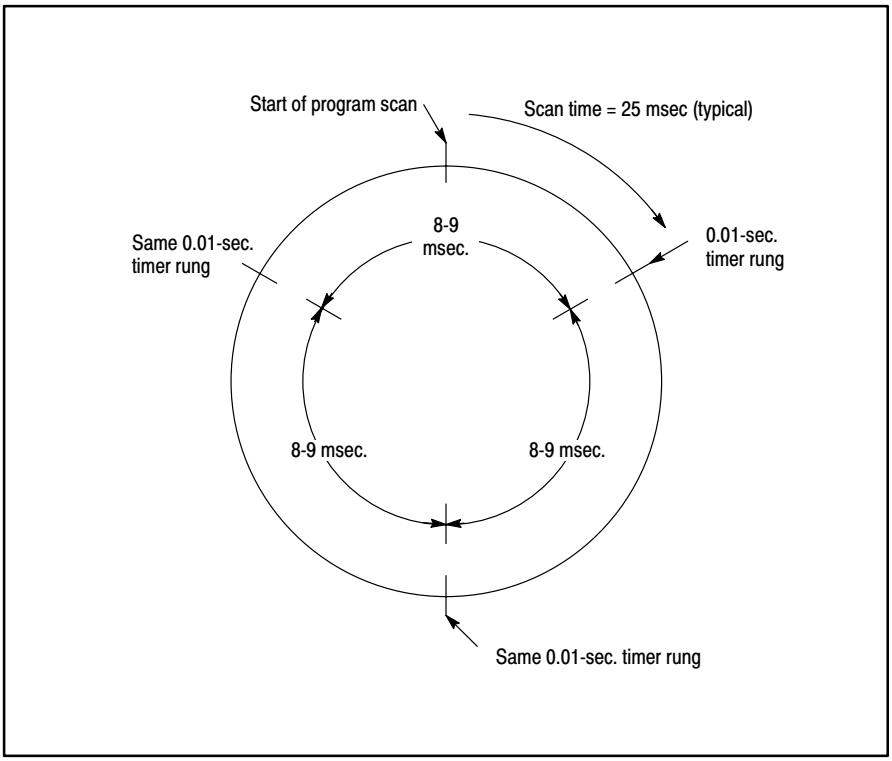
In order to compensate for the length of the scan time and to assure accurate timing, 10-msec timer programming must be repeated several places in the program.

A typical program using the total memory can nominally be assumed to have a scan time of less than 30 msec. (See Scan Time Computation, below.) In such a program, enter the **same timer rung** at 3 different places in the program: once near the beginning, once near the middle, and once near the end of the program. The processor will update the timer accumulated value each time it scans that timer instruction. Refer to Figure C.2 and note the following:

- The rung **must be identical each time** it is used: the same Examine instructions to condition the rung, the same timer word address, the same time base, and the same preset value.
- Again, this technique is required **only for 0.01-second timers.** (The program scan is fast enough to assure accurate operation of the 1.0- and 0.1-second timers with only one timer rung per program.)

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure C.2
Typical Timing Diagram for 0.01-Second Timer



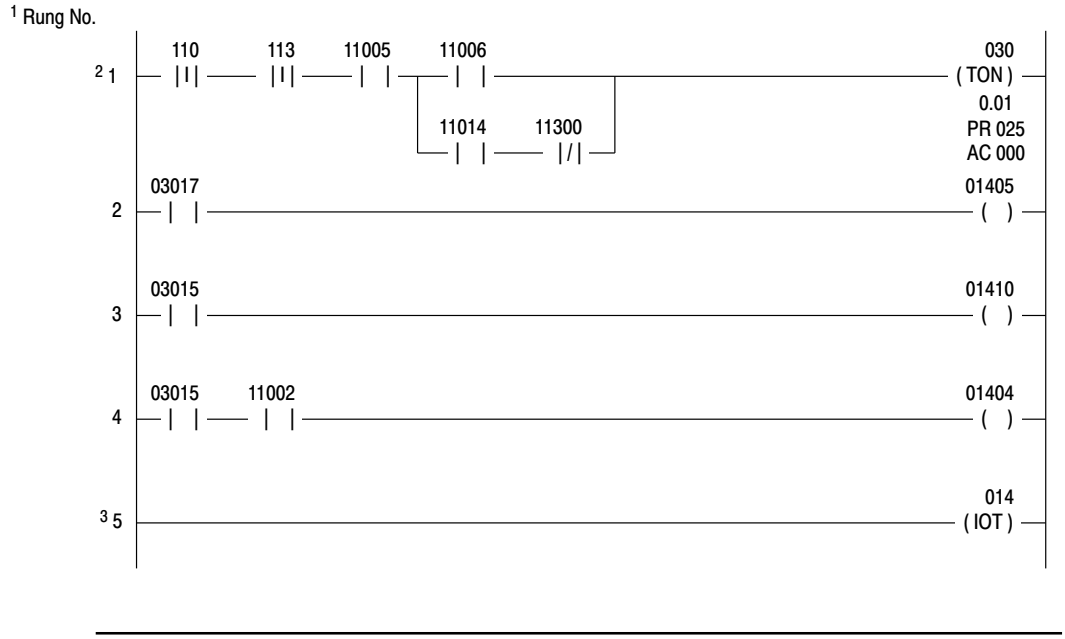
These multiple entries of the 0.01-second timer rung will help assure that the accuracy of the timer accumulated value is within the accuracy limits discussed above. Additional programming techniques can help to assure that output devices controlled by the timer are energized or de-energized after as precise a time delay as possible. You may want to include the following:

- Multiple entries of rungs which examine the timed bit of the timer to condition an Output Energize instruction.
- Immediate Input instructions to help assure that the timer is enabled as quickly as possible after the external event occurs.
- Immediate Output instructions to help assure that the output device is energized/de-energized as quickly as possible after the Mini-Processor sets the output image table bit to “1” or clears it to “0.”

Typical 10-msec timer rungs are shown in figure C.3. In Rung No. 1, Immediate Input instructions precede Examine instructions addressed to bits in input image table words 110 and 113. When used near the middle or end of a program, the Immediate Input instructions help to assure that the processor will be executing instructions based on accurate data.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Figure C.3
Typical 0.01-Second Timer Programming



Legend:

[1] Repeat these 5 rungs (typical) 3 or more places in the program.

[2] For rung No. 1, when used near the beginning of the program, [I] Instructions may be omitted.

[3] For rung No. 5, when used near the end of the program, (IOT) Instruction may be omitted.

In Rungs 2, 3, and 4, Output Energize instructions conditioned by timer bits should also be repeated in the program. When used near the beginning or middle of the program, the Immediate Output instruction addressed to output image table word 014 will help to assure that the output modules respond quickly to timer cycling.

By repeating the timer instructions and related rungs, you can assure that the processor will update timer accumulated values more frequently than the rate at which the timing pulses change state. As shown in Figure C.2, repetition within 8 or 9 msec will be adequate for this purpose.

C.6 Program Scan-Time Computation

In order to evaluate programming needs, you may wish to calculate approximate scan time. An exact computation is not practical, but a reasonable approximation can be obtained using the approximate execution times listed in table C.1. Enter the 10-msec timer rungs 3 times per 1K (1,024) words of program, then compute the scan time. A sample computation follows:

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Assume the processor is using a 128-word data table and has 1,024 words of memory. If all memory words are used, the program will contain 896 instructions. A program of this size might typically have the following distribution:

▪ 546 instructions x 18 µsec =	9.8 ms
▪ 306 instructions x 28 µsec =	8.6 ms
▪ 44 instructions x 83 µsec =	3.7 ms
Total (rounded)	22.0 ms

▪ The I/O scan time adds (approx.)	1.0 ms
▪ The program panel interaction requires about	3.0 ms
Grand Total	26.0 ms

Table C.A
Instruction Execution Times (Approximate)[1]

Instructions	Time
–| |– –| / |– RTR GET BYTE	18 µs
–( )– –(L)– –(U)– CTR GET MCR	28 µs
PUT EQU LES LIMIT TEST	28 µs
+	60 µs
TOF TON RTO CU CTD –	83 µs
IMMEDIATE I/O	105 µs
ZCL	130 µs

[1] These execution times are approximate, but are sufficient for the purpose of programming one or more 0.01-second timers.

To repeat: if a 10-msec timer is used in a program of this duration, the rung used to initialize the timer must occur at least 3 times in the program at evenly spaced intervals. For longer programs, it may be necessary to repeat the timer instruction and related rungs several more times to assure that timing is accurate.

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Numbers

1-slot addressing, A-8
1/2-slot addressing, A-11
10-msec timers
  programming techniques, C-5
  typical applications, C-4
1771-P2 auxiliary power supply, 2-10
1771-P3, -P4, and -P5 slot power supplies, 2-11
1771-P7 power supply, 2-11
1771-PSC power supply chassis, 2-11
1777-P2 auxiliary power supply, 2-11
2-slot addressing, A-3

A

accessing the data monitor mode, 12-21
add instruction, 6-12
additional messages, 9-13
additional publications, 1-5
addressing, 4-15, A-1
addressing modes, A-2
  1/2-slot addressing, A-11
  1-slot addressing, A-8
  2-slot addressing, A-3
addressing your hardware, A-1
arithmetic instructions, 6-11
automatic report generation, 9-12
auxiliary power supplies, 2-10

B

BCD to binary conversion, 6-16
bidirectional block transfer, 10-14
binary coded decimal, B-4
binary coded octal, B-5
binary numbering system, B-3
binary to BCD conversion, 6-18
bit manipulation, 18-2
bit manipulation and monitor, 18-2
bit monitor, 18-3
bit shifts, 14-1
  bit shift left, 14-1
  bit shift right, 14-5
block length, 10-5, 10-17
block transfer, 10-1
  basic operation, 10-1
block transfer instructions, 10-4
branch instructions, 4-9
buffering data, 10-12

C

capabilities, 1-3
cascading timers or counters, 5-14
clearing memory, 4-30
communication rate setting, 8-1
complementary I/O, 1-4
contact histogram, 8-2
control codes and special commands, 9-7
counter instructions, 5-8
counter reset instruction, 5-11
cursor controls, 12-25

D

data address and module address, 10-4, 10-17
data cartridge recorder, 8-6
data cartridge verification, 8-8
data comparison instructions, 6-4
data highway compatibility, 1-4
data manipulation, 6-1
data monitor display, 12-24
data monitor mode, 12-21
data monitoring procedures, 12-26
data storage assignments, 3-29
data table, 3-1
  bit assignments, 3-26
  documentation forms, 3-23
  map (128-word), 3-24
  word assignments (64-word), 3-25
  word map (1024-word), 3-23
data transfer file instructions, 12-1
data transfer instructions, 6-2
decimal numbering system, B-1
defining the block transfer data address area, 10-11

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

dependent programming, 7-12
digital cassette recorder, 8-4
displaying and locating errors, 8-6
divide instruction, 6-14
down-counter instruction, 5-12
dumping memory content onto data cartridge tape, 8-6
dumping memory content to cassette tape, 8-4

E

editing, 4-19
enable bit and done bit, 10-6
ending a program, 4-12
entering and changing data, 12-27
ERR message for an illegal OP code, 18-5
examine instructions, 4-3
  examine off shift bit, 14-6
  examine on shift bit, 14-8
example programming, 9-14

F

FIFO load and FIFO unload, 13-6
file
  address, 10-5, 10-17
  complement, 16-6
  concepts, 12-1
  definition, 12-1
  diagnostics, 17-4
  instruction run-time error, 12-12
  instructions, 12-2
  logic instructions, 16-1
  planning, 12-2
  search, 17-1
  search and diagnostic instructions, 17-1
file-to-file logic instructions, 16-1
  file-to-file AND, 16-2
  file-to-file move, 12-12
  file-to-file move and file complement, 5-22
  file-to-file OR, 16-4
  file-to-file XOR, 16-5
  file-to-word move, 12-15
force on and force off functions, 18-3
forced address display, 18-4
fundamental operation, 3-21

G

get byte – put instruction, 6-8
get byte and limit test instructions, 6-7
get instruction, 6-2

H

hardware addressing modes, 2-10
hardware considerations, 2-1
hardware/processor considerations, C-5
hardware/program interface, 3-17
help directories, 4-15
hexadecimal numbering system, B-6

I

I/O assignments, 3-28
I/O rack number, 2-6
I/O update times, 7-15
I/O updates, 7-3
image tables, 3-17
immediate input instruction, 7-5
immediate output instruction, 7-6
independent programming, 7-13
industrial terminal, 2-7
industrial terminal compatibility, 1-4
instruction address, 3-18
instruction execution time, 5-19
instruction notes for block transfer read and write instructions, 10-6
instruction overview, 15-6, 15-10, 15-14
introduction to this manual, 1-1

J

jump instruction, 11-1
jump instructions and subroutine programming, 11-1
jump to subroutine instruction, 11-7

L

label instruction, 11-6
ladder diagram dump, 8-8

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ladder diagram logic, 4-2
last state switch, 2-6
leading edge one-shot, 19-1
les and equ instructions, 6-4
loading memory from a data cartridge tape, 8-7
loading memory from cassette tape, 8-4
local system structure, 2-7
local systems, 7-15
local/remote system structure, 2-9
logic instructions, file-to-file AND, OR, XOR, 5-23

M

manually initiated report generation, 9-11
masking
  input data, 15-10
  output data, 15-5
memory
  organization, 3-2
  structure, 3-1
  write protect, 2-2
message
  control word file – MS, 0, 9-4
  delete – MD, 9-7
  index – MI, 9-7
  print – MP, 9-6
  report – MR, 9-7
  storage area, 3-17
  store – MS, 9-5
messages 1-6, 9-13
mode select switch, 2-1
multiple jumps to the same label, 11-3
multiple reads of different block lengths from one module, 10-8
multiply instruction, 6-14

N

nested subroutines, 11-11
notational conventions, 4-1
number systems, B-1

O

octal numbering system, B-2
on-line programming, 4-23
one shot, 19-1
operating instructions, 4-14
operation, 10-14
operation of the sequencer input instruction, 15-10
operation of the sequencer load instruction, 15-13
operation of the sequencer output instruction, 15-4
output instructions, 4-5
output override and I/O update instructions, 7-1
output overrides, 7-1

P

peripheral functions, 8-1
power-up recovery, 2-5
processor diagnostic indicators, 2-4
program execution, C-6
program for determining scan time, 5-18
program recommendations, 4-32
program scan time computation, C-9
program verification, 8-5
programming
  .01-second timers, C-1
  arithmetic instructions, 6-15
  bit shift left instruction, 14-3
  bit shift right instruction, 14-6
  block transfer read and write instructions, 10-6
  compensation, C-7
  considerations, 10-18
  data manipulation instructions, 6-9
  examine off shift bit instruction, 14-6
  examine on shift bit instruction, 14-8
  FIFO load and FIFO unload instruction, 13-8
  file instructions, 12-11
  file-to-file move instructions, 12-14
  file-to-word move instructions, 12-16
  immediate I/O instructions, 7-8
  jump/subroutine instructions, 11-3
  number conversion instructions
    BCD to binary, 6-17
    binary to BCD, 6-18
  relay-type instructions, 4-13
  remote fault zone, 7-9
  reset shift bit instruction, 14-11
  sequencer input instruction, 15-11
  sequencer load instruction, 15-14
  sequencer output instruction, 15-6
  set shift bit instruction, 14-9

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

shift file down instruction, 13-5
shift file up instruction, 13-3
special techniques, 19-1
timer and counter instructions, 5-14
word-to-file move instructions, 12-19
put instruction, 6-3

R

recursive subroutine (looping) calls, 11-12
relay-type instructions, 4-3–4-14
relay-type, timer, counter, data manipulations, arithmetic, output override and I/O update, jump, and subroutine instructions, 5-19
remote fault zone programming, 7-9
remote system structure, 2-8
remote systems, 7-15
report generation, 9-1
report generation commands, 9-3
reset shift bit, 14-10
retentive timer instruction, 5-6
retentive timer reset instruction, 5-8
return instruction, 11-14
run-time errors, 2-3
causes of, 10-6

S

scan counter instruction, 5-13
scan sequence, 7-3
scan time, 5-17, C-6
scan time and instruction execution times, 5-17
searching, 4-16
sequencer instructions, 15-1
input instruction, 15-10
load instruction, 15-13
output analogy, 15-3
output instruction, 15-3
sequencer table bit assignments, 3-27
set shift bit, 14-9
shift file down, 13-5
shift file up, 13-2
shift register instructions, 13-1
special programming techniques, 19-1
subroutine area, 11-10
subroutine programming considerations, 11-12
subtract instruction, 6-13
switch group assembly, 2-5
system configurations, A-16

T

temporary end instruction, 18-5
terms used in this manual, 1-6
time base selection, C-1
timer accuracy, C-2
timer accuracy for 10ms timers, 5-8
timer and counter instructions, 5-1
timer instructions, 5-2
off-delay instruction, 5-5
on-delay instruction, 5-3
timer/counter assignments, 3-29
total memory dump, 8-8
trailing edge one-shot, 19-2
troubleshooting aids, 18-1

U

up-counter instruction, 5-9
user program, 3-16

V

verification, 8-5

W

watch dog timer, 7-16
word-to-file logic instructions, 16-8
word-to-file AND, 16-9
word-to-file move, 12-18
word-to-file OR, 16-11
word-to-file XOR, 16-12
word-to-file, sequencers, FIFO, word and bit shifts, file diagnostic, file search, and block transfer instructions, 5-20

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

ALLEN-BRADLEY
A ROCKWELL INTERNATIONAL COMPANY

As a subsidiary of Rockwell International, one of the world's largest technology companies — Allen-Bradley meets today's challenges of industrial automation with over 85 years of practical plant-floor experience. More than 13,000 employees throughout the world design, manufacture and apply a wide range of control and automation products and supporting services to help our customers continuously improve quality, productivity and time to market. These products and services not only control individual machines but integrate the manufacturing process, while providing access to vital plant floor data that can be used to support decision-making throughout the enterprise.

With offices in major cities worldwide

WORLD HEADQUARTERS
Allen-Bradley
1201 South Second Street
Milwaukee, WI 53204 USA
Tel: (414) 382-2000
Telex: 43 11 016
FAX: (414) 382-4444

EUROPE/MIDDLE EAST/AFRICA HEADQUARTERS
Allen-Bradley Europa B.V.
Amsterdamseweg 15
1422 AC Uithoorn
The Netherlands
Tel: (31) 2975/60611
Telex: (844) 18042
FAX: (31) 2975/60222

ASIA/PACIFIC HEADQUARTERS
Allen-Bradley (Hong Kong) Limited
Room 1006, Block B, Sea View Estate
28 Watson Road
Hong Kong
Tel: (852) 887-4788
Telex: (780) 64347
FAX: (852) 510-9436

CANADA HEADQUARTERS
Allen-Bradley Canada Limited
135 Dundas Street
Cambridge, Ontario N1R 5X1
Canada
Tel: (519) 623-1810
FAX: (519) 623-8930

LATIN AMERICA HEADQUARTERS
Allen-Bradley
1201 South Second Street
Milwaukee, WI 53204 USA
Tel: (414) 382-2000
Telex: 43 11 016
FAX: (414) 382-2400

Publication 1772-6.8.3 – April, 1993
Supersedes Publication 1772-6.8.3 – April, 1988

PN 955102-22

Copyright 1992 Allen-Bradley Company, Inc. Printed in USA

Artisan Technology Group - Quality Instrumentation ... Guaranteed | (888) 88-SOURCE | www.artisantg.com

Artisan Technology Group is an independent supplier of quality pre-owned equipment

Gold-standard solutions

Extend the life of your critical industrial, commercial, and military systems with our superior service and support.

We buy equipment

Planning to upgrade your current equipment? Have surplus equipment taking up shelf space? We'll give it a new home.

Learn more!

Visit us at **artisantg.com** for more info on price quotes, drivers, technical specifications, manuals, and documentation.

Artisan Scientific Corporation dba Artisan Technology Group is not an affiliate, representative, or authorized distributor for any manufacturer listed herein.

We're here to make your life easier. How can we help you today?

(217) 352-9330 | sales@artisantg.com | artisantg.com

ARTISAN® TECHNOLOGY GROUP